Abstract

This is the MySQL Security Guide extract from the MySQL 5.7 Reference Manual.

For legal information, see the Legal Notices.

For help with using MySQL, please visit the MySQL Forums, where you can discuss your issues with other MySQL users.

Document generated on: 2019-09-09 (revision: 63414)
# Table of Contents

Preface and Legal Notices ........................................................................................................... v  
1 Security ....................................................................................................................................... 1  
2 General Security Issues ............................................................................................................... 3  
   2.1 Security Guidelines ................................................................................................................... 3  
   2.2 Keeping Passwords Secure ...................................................................................................... 4  
      2.2.1 End-User Guidelines for Password Security ........................................................................ 5  
      2.2.2 Administrator Guidelines for Password Security ............................................................... 6  
      2.2.3 Passwords and Logging ...................................................................................................... 6  
      2.2.4 Password Hashing in MySQL ............................................................................................. 7  
   2.3 Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers ............................................................................. 13  
   2.4 Security-Related mysqld Options and Variables .................................................................. 15  
   2.5 How to Run MySQL as a Normal User ................................................................................... 15  
   2.6 Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL ............................................................................ 16  
   2.7 Client Programming Security Guidelines .............................................................................. 17  
3 Postinstallation Setup and Testing .............................................................................................. 19  
   3.1 Initializing the Data Directory ................................................................................................ 19  
   3.2 Starting the Server ................................................................................................................ 25  
      3.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server ...................................................... 25  
   3.3 Testing the Server ................................................................................................................ 27  
   3.4 Securing the Initial MySQL Account .................................................................................... 29  
   3.5 Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically ........................................................................ 31  
4 Access Control and Account Management ............................................................................... 33  
   4.1 Account User Names and Passwords ..................................................................................... 34  
   4.2 Privileges Provided by MySQL ................................................................................................ 36  
   4.3 Grant Tables .......................................................................................................................... 42  
   4.4 Specifying Account Names .................................................................................................... 48  
   4.5 Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification ................................................................. 50  
   4.6 Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification ..................................................................... 53  
   4.7 Adding Accounts, Assigning Privileges, and Dropping Accounts ........................................ 54  
   4.8 Reserved Accounts .............................................................................................................. 57  
   4.9 When Privilege Changes Take Effect .................................................................................... 58  
   4.10 Assigning Account Passwords .............................................................................................. 58  
   4.11 Password Management ....................................................................................................... 60  
   4.12 Server Handling of Expired Passwords ............................................................................... 62  
   4.13 Pluggable Authentication ...................................................................................................... 64  
   4.14 Proxy Users ........................................................................................................................ 67  
   4.15 Account Locking .................................................................................................................. 74  
   4.16 Setting Account Resource Limits ........................................................................................ 75  
   4.17 Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL ............................................................... 77  
   4.18 SQL-Based Account Activity Auditing ................................................................................ 81  
5 Using Encrypted Connections .................................................................................................... 83  
   5.1 Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections ............................................................. 85  
   5.2 Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers ............................................................... 89  
   5.3 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys ....................................................................... 95  
      5.3.1 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL .......................................... 95  
      5.3.2 Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl ......................................................... 98  
      5.3.3 Creating RSA Keys Using openssl .................................................................................. 103  
   5.4 SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities .................................................................................... 103  
   5.5 Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH ................................................ 104  
6 Security Plugins ........................................................................................................................ 107  
   6.1 Authentication Plugins ........................................................................................................ 108  
      6.1.1 Native Pluggable Authentication .................................................................................... 108  
      6.1.2 Old Native Pluggable Authentication .............................................................................. 109  
      6.1.3 Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin  110
Preface and Legal Notices

This is the MySQL Security Guide extract from the MySQL 5.7 Reference Manual.

**Licensing information—MySQL 5.7.** This product may include third-party software, used under license. If you are using a Commercial release of MySQL 5.7, see the MySQL 5.7 Commercial Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Commercial release. If you are using a Community release of MySQL 5.7, see the MySQL 5.7 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Community release.

**Licensing information—MySQL NDB Cluster 7.5.** This product may include third-party software, used under license. If you are using a Commercial release of NDB Cluster 7.5, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.5 Commercial Release License Information User Manual for licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Commercial release. If you are using a Community release of NDB Cluster 7.5, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.5 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Community release.

**Licensing information—MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6.** If you are using a Commercial release of MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Commercial release. If you are using a Community release of MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6, see the MySQL NDB Cluster 7.6 Community Release License Information User Manual for licensing information, including licensing information relating to third-party software that may be included in this Community release.

**Legal Notices**

Copyright © 1997, 2019, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

**U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS:** Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and
other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any
damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be
trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC
trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC
International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or
registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content,
products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible
for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products,
and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle
Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to
your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable
agreement between you and Oracle.

This documentation is NOT distributed under a GPL license. Use of this documentation is subject to the
following terms:

You may create a printed copy of this documentation solely for your own personal use. Conversion
to other formats is allowed as long as the actual content is not altered or edited in any way. You shall
not publish or distribute this documentation in any form or on any media, except if you distribute the
documentation in a manner similar to how Oracle disseminates it (that is, electronically for download
on a Web site with the software) or on a CD-ROM or similar medium, provided however that the
documentation is disseminated together with the software on the same medium. Any other use, such
as any dissemination of printed copies or use of this documentation, in whole or in part, in another
publication, requires the prior written consent from an authorized representative of Oracle. Oracle and/
or its affiliates reserve any and all rights to this documentation not expressly granted above.

Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program
website at

Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers that have purchased support have access to electronic support through My Oracle
Support. For information, visit
ctx=acc&id=trs if you are hearing impaired.
Chapter 1 Security

When thinking about security within a MySQL installation, you should consider a wide range of possible topics and how they affect the security of your MySQL server and related applications:

- General factors that affect security. These include choosing good passwords, not granting unnecessary privileges to users, ensuring application security by preventing SQL injections and data corruption, and others. See Chapter 2, General Security Issues.

- Security of the installation itself. The data files, log files, and all the application files of your installation should be protected to ensure that they are not readable or writable by unauthorized parties. For more information, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

- Access control and security within the database system itself, including the users and databases granted with access to the databases, views and stored programs in use within the database. For more information, see Chapter 4, Access Control and Account Management.

- The features offered by security-related plugins. See Chapter 6, Security Plugins.

- Network security of MySQL and your system. The security is related to the grants for individual users, but you may also wish to restrict MySQL so that it is available only locally on the MySQL server host, or to a limited set of other hosts.

- Ensure that you have adequate and appropriate backups of your database files, configuration and log files. Also be sure that you have a recovery solution in place and test that you are able to successfully recover the information from your backups. See Backup and Recovery.
Chapter 2 General Security Issues

Table of Contents

2.1 Security Guidelines ......................................................... 3
2.2 Keeping Passwords Secure .................................................. 4
  2.2.1 End-User Guidelines for Password Security ....................... 5
  2.2.2 Administrator Guidelines for Password Security .................. 6
  2.2.3 Passwords and Logging ............................................... 6
  2.2.4 Password Hashing in MySQL ....................................... 7
2.3 Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers ................................ 13
2.4 Security-Related mysql Options and Variables ....................... 15
2.5 How to Run MySQL as a Normal User .................................. 15
2.6 Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL ................................ 16
2.7 Client Programming Security Guidelines .............................. 17

This section describes general security issues to be aware of and what you can do to make your MySQL installation more secure against attack or misuse. For information specifically about the access control system that MySQL uses for setting up user accounts and checking database access, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

For answers to some questions that are often asked about MySQL Server security issues, see Appendix A, MySQL 5.7 FAQ: Security.

2.1 Security Guidelines

Anyone using MySQL on a computer connected to the Internet should read this section to avoid the most common security mistakes.

In discussing security, it is necessary to consider fully protecting the entire server host (not just the MySQL server) against all types of applicable attacks: eavesdropping, altering, playback, and denial of service. We do not cover all aspects of availability and fault tolerance here.

MySQL uses security based on Access Control Lists (ACLs) for all connections, queries, and other operations that users can attempt to perform. There is also support for SSL-encrypted connections between MySQL clients and servers. Many of the concepts discussed here are not specific to MySQL at all; the same general ideas apply to almost all applications.

When running MySQL, follow these guidelines:

- **Do not ever give anyone (except MySQL root accounts) access to the user table in the mysql system database!** This is critical.

- **Learn how the MySQL access privilege system works** (see Chapter 4, Access Control and Account Management). Use the GRANT and REVOKE statements to control access to MySQL. Do not grant more privileges than necessary. Never grant privileges to all hosts.

  Checklist:

  - **Try `mysql -u root`**. If you are able to connect successfully to the server without being asked for a password, anyone can connect to your MySQL server as the MySQL root user with full privileges! Review the MySQL installation instructions, paying particular attention to the information about setting a root password. See Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

  - **Use the SHOW GRANTS statement** to check which accounts have access to what. Then use the REVOKE statement to remove those privileges that are not necessary.
• Do not store cleartext passwords in your database. If your computer becomes compromised, the intruder can take the full list of passwords and use them. Instead, use SHA2() or some other one-way hashing function and store the hash value.

To prevent password recovery using rainbow tables, do not use these functions on a plain password; instead, choose some string to be used as a salt, and use hash(hash(password)+salt) values.

• Do not choose passwords from dictionaries. Special programs exist to break passwords. Even passwords like “xfish98” are very bad. Much better is “duag98” which contains the same word “fish” but typed one key to the left on a standard QWERTY keyboard. Another method is to use a password that is taken from the first characters of each word in a sentence (for example, “Four score and seven years ago” results in a password of “Fsasya”). The password is easy to remember and type, but difficult to guess for someone who does not know the sentence. In this case, you can additionally substitute digits for the number words to obtain the phrase “4 score and 7 years ago”, yielding the password “4sa7ya” which is even more difficult to guess.

• Invest in a firewall. This protects you from at least 50% of all types of exploits in any software. Put MySQL behind the firewall or in a demilitarized zone (DMZ).

Checklist:

• Try to scan your ports from the Internet using a tool such as nmap. MySQL uses port 3306 by default. This port should not be accessible from untrusted hosts. As a simple way to check whether your MySQL port is open, try the following command from some remote machine, where server_host is the host name or IP address of the host on which your MySQL server runs:

```
shell> telnet server_host 3306
```

If telnet hangs or the connection is refused, the port is blocked, which is how you want it to be. If you get a connection and some garbage characters, the port is open, and should be closed on your firewall or router, unless you really have a good reason to keep it open.

• Applications that access MySQL should not trust any data entered by users, and should be written using proper defensive programming techniques. See Section 2.7, “Client Programming Security Guidelines”.

• Do not transmit plain (unencrypted) data over the Internet. This information is accessible to everyone who has the time and ability to intercept it and use it for their own purposes. Instead, use an encrypted protocol such as SSL or SSH. MySQL supports internal SSL connections. Another technique is to use SSH port-forwarding to create an encrypted (and compressed) tunnel for the communication.

• Learn to use the tcpdump and strings utilities. In most cases, you can check whether MySQL data streams are unencrypted by issuing a command like the following:

```
shell> tcpdump -l -i eth0 -w - src or dst port 3306 | strings
```

This works under Linux and should work with small modifications under other systems.

**Warning**

If you do not see cleartext data, this does not always mean that the information actually is encrypted. If you need high security, consult with a security expert.

2.2 Keeping Passwords Secure

Passwords occur in several contexts within MySQL. The following sections provide guidelines that enable end users and administrators to keep these passwords secure and avoid exposing them. There
is also a discussion of how MySQL uses password hashing internally and of a plugin that you can use to enforce stricter passwords.

### 2.2.1 End-User Guidelines for Password Security

MySQL users should use the following guidelines to keep passwords secure.

When you run a client program to connect to the MySQL server, it is inadvisable to specify your password in a way that exposes it to discovery by other users. The methods you can use to specify your password when you run client programs are listed here, along with an assessment of the risks of each method. In short, the safest methods are to have the client program prompt for the password or to specify the password in a properly protected option file.

- **Use the `mysql_config_editor` utility**, which enables you to store authentication credentials in an encrypted login path file named `.mylogin.cnf`. The file can be read later by MySQL client programs to obtain authentication credentials for connecting to MySQL Server. See `mysql_config_editor — MySQL Configuration Utility`.

- **Use a `--password=password` or `-p password` option** on the command line. For example:

  ```shell
  mysql -u francis -pfrank db_name
  ```

  *Warning*
  
  This is convenient but **insecure**. On some systems, your password becomes visible to system status programs such as `ps` that may be invoked by other users to display command lines. MySQL clients typically overwrite the command-line password argument with zeros during their initialization sequence. However, there is still a brief interval during which the value is visible. Also, on some systems this overwriting strategy is ineffective and the password remains visible to `ps`. (SystemV Unix systems and perhaps others are subject to this problem.)

  If your operating environment is set up to display your current command in the title bar of your terminal window, the password remains visible as long as the command is running, even if the command has scrolled out of view in the window content area.

- **Use the `--password` or `-p` option** on the command line with no password value specified. In this case, the client program solicits the password interactively:

  ```shell
  mysql -u francis -p db_name
  Enter password: ********
  ```

  The * characters indicate where you enter your password. The password is not displayed as you enter it.

  It is more secure to enter your password this way than to specify it on the command line because it is not visible to other users. However, this method of entering a password is suitable only for programs that you run interactively. If you want to invoke a client from a script that runs noninteractively, there is no opportunity to enter the password from the keyboard. On some systems, you may even find that the first line of your script is read and interpreted (incorrectly) as your password.

- **Store your password in an option file**. For example, on Unix, you can list your password in the `[client]` section of the `.my.cnf` file in your home directory:

  ```
  [client]
  password=password
  ```

  To keep the password safe, the file should not be accessible to anyone but yourself. To ensure this, set the file access mode to 400 or 600. For example:
To name from the command line a specific option file containing the password, use the --defaults-file=file_name option, where file_name is the full path name to the file. For example:

```
shell> mysql --defaults-file=/home/francis/mysql-opts
```

Using Option Files, discusses option files in more detail.

- Store your password in the MYSQL_PWD environment variable. See MySQL Environment Variables.

This method of specifying your MySQL password must be considered extremely insecure and should not be used. Some versions of ps include an option to display the environment of running processes. On some systems, if you set MYSQL_PWD, your password is exposed to any other user who runs ps. Even on systems without such a version of ps, it is unwise to assume that there are no other methods by which users can examine process environments.

On Unix, the mysql client writes a record of executed statements to a history file (see mysql Client Logging). By default, this file is named .mysql_history and is created in your home directory. Passwords can be written as plain text in SQL statements such as CREATE USER and ALTER USER, so if you use these statements, they are logged in the history file. To keep this file safe, use a restrictive access mode, the same way as described earlier for the .my.cnf file.

If your command interpreter is configured to maintain a history, any file in which the commands are saved will contain MySQL passwords entered on the command line. For example, bash uses ~/.bash_history. Any such file should have a restrictive access mode.

2.2.2 Administrator Guidelines for Password Security

Database administrators should use the following guidelines to keep passwords secure.

MySQL stores passwords for user accounts in the mysql.user system table. Access to this table should never be granted to any nonadministrative accounts.

Account passwords can be expired so that users must reset them. See Section 4.11, “Password Management”, and Section 4.12, “Server Handling of Expired Passwords”.

The validate_password plugin can be used to enforce a policy on acceptable password. See Section 6.3, “The Password Validation Plugin”.

A user who has access to modify the plugin directory (the value of the plugin_dir system variable) or the my.cnf file that specifies the plugin directory location can replace plugins and modify the capabilities provided by plugins, including authentication plugins.

Files such as log files to which passwords might be written should be protected. See Section 2.2.3, “Passwords and Logging”.

2.2.3 Passwords and Logging

Passwords can be written as plain text in SQL statements such as CREATE USER, GRANT, SET PASSWORD, and statements that invoke the PASSWORD() function. If such statements are logged by the MySQL server as written, passwords in them become visible to anyone with access to the logs.

Statement logging avoids writing passwords as cleartext for the following statements:
CREATE USER ... IDENTIFIED BY ...
ALTER USER ... IDENTIFIED BY ...
GRANT ... IDENTIFIED BY ...
SET PASSWORD ...
SLAVE START ... PASSWORD = ...
CREATE SERVER ... OPTIONS(... PASSWORD ...)  
ALTER SERVER ... OPTIONS(... PASSWORD ...)  

Passwords in those statements are rewritten to not appear literally in statement text written to the general query log, slow query log, and binary log. Rewriting does not apply to other statements. In particular, INSERT or UPDATE statements for the mysql.user system table that refer to literal passwords are logged as is, so you should avoid such statements. (Direct modification of grant tables is discouraged, anyway.)

For the general query log, password rewriting can be suppressed by starting the server with the --log-raw option. For security reasons, this option is not recommended for production use. For diagnostic purposes, it may be useful to see the exact text of statements as received by the server.

Contents of the audit log file produced by the audit log plugin are not encrypted. For security reasons, this file should be written to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and users with a legitimate reason to view the log. See Section 6.5.3, “MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations”.

Statements received by the server may be rewritten if a query rewrite plugin is installed (see Query Rewrite Plugins). In this case, the --log-raw option affects statement logging as follows:

- Without --log-raw, the server logs the statement returned by the query rewrite plugin. This may differ from the statement as received.
- With --log-raw, the server logs the original statement as received.

An implication of password rewriting is that statements that cannot be parsed (due, for example, to syntax errors) are not written to the general query log because they cannot be known to be password free. Use cases that require logging of all statements including those with errors should use the --log-raw option, bearing in mind that this also bypasses password rewriting.

Password rewriting occurs only when plain text passwords are expected. For statements with syntax that expect a password hash value, no rewriting occurs. If a plain text password is supplied erroneously for such syntax, the password is logged as given, without rewriting. For example, the following statement is logged as shown because a password hash value is expected:

```
CREATE USER 'user1'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY PASSWORD 'not-so-secret';
```

To guard log files against unwarranted exposure, locate them in a directory that restricts access to the server and the database administrator. If the server logs to tables in the mysql database, grant access to those tables only to the database administrator.

Replication slaves store the password for the replication master in the master info repository, which can be either a file or a table (see Replication Relay and Status Logs). Ensure that the repository can be accessed only by the database administrator. An alternative to storing the password in a file is to use the START SLAVE statement to specify credentials for connecting to the master.

Use a restricted access mode to protect database backups that include log tables or log files containing passwords.

### 2.2.4 Password Hashing in MySQL

**Note**
The information in this section applies fully only before MySQL 5.7.5, and only for accounts that use the mysql_native_password or mysql_old_password authentication plugins. Support for pre-4.1
password hashes was removed in MySQL 5.7.5. This includes removal of the mysql_old_password authentication plugin and the OLD_PASSWORD() function. Also, secure_auth cannot be disabled, and old_passwords cannot be set to 1.

As of MySQL 5.7.5, only the information about 4.1 password hashes and the mysql_native_password authentication plugin remains relevant.

MySQL lists user accounts in the user table of the mysql database. Each MySQL account can be assigned a password, although the user table does not store the cleartext version of the password, but a hash value computed from it.

MySQL uses passwords in two phases of client/server communication:

- When a client attempts to connect to the server, there is an initial authentication step in which the client must present a password that has a hash value matching the hash value stored in the user table for the account the client wants to use.
- After the client connects, it can (if it has sufficient privileges) set or change the password hash for accounts listed in the user table. The client can do this by using the PASSWORD() function to generate a password hash, or by using a password-generating statement (CREATE USER, GRANT, or SET PASSWORD).

In other words, the server checks hash values during authentication when a client first attempts to connect. The server generates hash values if a connected client invokes the PASSWORD() function or uses a password-generating statement to set or change a password.

Password hashing methods in MySQL have the history described following. These changes are illustrated by changes in the result from the PASSWORD() function that computes password hash values and in the structure of the user table where passwords are stored.

**The Original (Pre-4.1) Hashing Method**

The original hashing method produced a 16-byte string. Such hashes look like this:

```
mysql> SELECT PASSWORD('mypass');
+------------------------+
|                       |
| 6f8c114b58f2ce9e       |
+------------------------+
```

To store account passwords, the Password column of the user table was at this point 16 bytes long.

**The 4.1 Hashing Method**

MySQL 4.1 introduced password hashing that provided better security and reduced the risk of passwords being intercepted. There were several aspects to this change:

- Different format of password values produced by the PASSWORD() function
- Widening of the Password column
- Control over the default hashing method
- Control over the permitted hashing methods for clients attempting to connect to the server

The changes in MySQL 4.1 took place in two stages:

- MySQL 4.1.0 used a preliminary version of the 4.1 hashing method. This method was short lived and the following discussion says nothing more about it.
• In MySQL 4.1.1, the hashing method was modified to produce a longer 41-byte hash value:

```
mysql> SELECT PASSWORD('mypass');
+-------------------------------------------+
| PASSWORD('mypass')                        |
+-------------------------------------------+
| *6C8989366EAF75BB670AD8EA7A7FC1176A95CEF4 |
+-------------------------------------------+
```

The longer password hash format has better cryptographic properties, and client authentication based on long hashes is more secure than that based on the older short hashes.

To accommodate longer password hashes, the `Password` column in the `user` table was changed at this point to be 41 bytes, its current length.

A widened `Password` column can store password hashes in both the pre-4.1 and 4.1 formats. The format of any given hash value can be determined two ways:

• The length: 4.1 and pre-4.1 hashes are 41 and 16 bytes, respectively.
• Password hashes in the 4.1 format always begin with a * character, whereas passwords in the pre-4.1 format never do.

To permit explicit generation of pre-4.1 password hashes, two additional changes were made:

• The `OLD_PASSWORD()` function was added, which returns hash values in the 16-byte format.
• For compatibility purposes, the `old_passwords` system variable was added, to enable DBAs and applications control over the hashing method. The default `old_passwords` value of 0 causes hashing to use the 4.1 method (41-byte hash values), but setting `old_passwords=1` causes hashing to use the pre-4.1 method. In this case, `PASSWORD()` produces 16-byte values and is equivalent to `OLD_PASSWORD()`

To permit DBAs control over how clients are permitted to connect, the `secure_auth` system variable was added. Starting the server with this variable disabled or enabled permits or prohibits clients to connect using the older pre-4.1 password hashing method. Before MySQL 5.6.5, `secure_auth` is disabled by default. As of 5.6.5, `secure_auth` is enabled by default to promote a more secure default configuration DBAs can disable it at their discretion, but this is not recommended, and pre-4.1 password hashes are deprecated and should be avoided. (For account upgrade instructions, see Section 6.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the `mysql_old_password` Plugin”.)

In addition, the `mysql` client supports a `--secure-auth` option that is analogous to `secure_auth`, but from the client side. It can be used to prevent connections to less secure accounts that use pre-4.1 password hashing. This option is disabled by default before MySQL 5.6.7, enabled thereafter.

### Compatibility Issues Related to Hashing Methods

The widening of the `Password` column in MySQL 4.1 from 16 bytes to 41 bytes affects installation or upgrade operations as follows:

• If you perform a new installation of MySQL, the `Password` column is made 41 bytes long automatically.

• Upgrades from MySQL 4.1 or later to current versions of MySQL should not give rise to any issues in regard to the `Password` column because both versions use the same column length and password hashing method.

• For upgrades from a pre-4.1 release to 4.1 or later, you must upgrade the system tables after upgrading. (See `mysql_upgrade` — Check and Upgrade MySQL Tables.)
The 4.1 hashing method is understood only by MySQL 4.1 (and higher) servers and clients, which can result in some compatibility problems. A 4.1 or higher client can connect to a pre-4.1 server, because the client understands both the pre-4.1 and 4.1 password hashing methods. However, a pre-4.1 client that attempts to connect to a 4.1 or higher server may run into difficulties. For example, a 4.0 mysql client may fail with the following error message:

```
shell> mysql -h localhost -u root
Client does not support authentication protocol requested by server; consider upgrading MySQL client
```

This phenomenon also occurs for attempts to use the older PHP mysql extension after upgrading to MySQL 4.1 or higher. (See Common Problems with MySQL and PHP.)

The following discussion describes the differences between the pre-4.1 and 4.1 hashing methods, and what you should do if you upgrade your server but need to maintain backward compatibility with pre-4.1 clients. (However, permitting connections by old clients is not recommended and should be avoided if possible.) This information is of particular importance to PHP programmers migrating MySQL databases from versions older than 4.1 to 4.1 or higher.

The differences between short and long password hashes are relevant both for how the server uses passwords during authentication and for how it generates password hashes for connected clients that perform password-changing operations.

The way in which the server uses password hashes during authentication is affected by the width of the `Password` column:

- If the column is short, only short-hash authentication is used.
- If the column is long, it can hold either short or long hashes, and the server can use either format:
  - Pre-4.1 clients can connect, but because they know only about the pre-4.1 hashing method, they can authenticate only using accounts that have short hashes.
  - 4.1 and later clients can authenticate using accounts that have short or long hashes.

Even for short-hash accounts, the authentication process is actually a bit more secure for 4.1 and later clients than for older clients. In terms of security, the gradient from least to most secure is:

- Pre-4.1 client authenticating with short password hash
- 4.1 or later client authenticating with short password hash
- 4.1 or later client authenticating with long password hash

The way in which the server generates password hashes for connected clients is affected by the width of the `Password` column and by the `old_passwords` system variable. A 4.1 or later server generates long hashes only if certain conditions are met: The `Password` column must be wide enough to hold long values and `old_passwords` must not be set to 1.

Those conditions apply as follows:

- The `Password` column must be wide enough to hold long hashes (41 bytes). If the column has not been updated and still has the pre-4.1 width of 16 bytes, the server notices that long hashes cannot fit into it and generates only short hashes when a client performs password-changing operations using the `PASSWORD()` function or a password-generating statement. This is the behavior that occurs if you have upgraded from a version of MySQL older than 4.1 to 4.1 or later but have not yet run the `mysql_upgrade` program to widen the `Password` column.
- If the `Password` column is wide, it can store either short or long password hashes. In this case, the `PASSWORD()` function and password-generating statements generate long hashes unless the server...
was started with the `old_passwords` system variable set to 1 to force the server to generate short password hashes instead.

The purpose of the `old_passwords` system variable is to permit backward compatibility with pre-4.1 clients under circumstances where the server would otherwise generate long password hashes. The option does not affect authentication (4.1 and later clients can still use accounts that have long password hashes), but it does prevent creation of a long password hash in the `user` table as the result of a password-changing operation. Were that permitted to occur, the account could no longer be used by pre-4.1 clients. With `old_passwords` disabled, the following undesirable scenario is possible:

- An old pre-4.1 client connects to an account that has a short password hash.
- The client changes its own password. With `old_passwords` disabled, this results in the account having a long password hash.
- The next time the old client attempts to connect to the account, it cannot, because the account has a long password hash that requires the 4.1 hashing method during authentication. (Once an account has a long password hash in the user table, only 4.1 and later clients can authenticate for it because pre-4.1 clients do not understand long hashes.)

This scenario illustrates that, if you must support older pre-4.1 clients, it is problematic to run a 4.1 or higher server without `old_passwords` set to 1. By running the server with `old_passwords=1`, password-changing operations do not generate long password hashes and thus do not cause accounts to become inaccessible to older clients. (Those clients cannot inadvertently lock themselves out by changing their password and ending up with a long password hash.)

The downside of `old_passwords=1` is that any passwords created or changed use short hashes, even for 4.1 or later clients. Thus, you lose the additional security provided by long password hashes. To create an account that has a long hash (for example, for use by 4.1 clients) or to change an existing account to use a long password hash, an administrator can set the session value of `old_passwords` set to 0 while leaving the global value set to 1:

```sql
mysql> SET @@SESSION.old_passwords = 0;
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
mysql> SELECT @@SESSION.old_passwords, @@GLOBAL.old_passwords;
+-------------------------+------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>@@SESSION.old_passwords</th>
<th>@@GLOBAL.old_passwords</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-------------------------+------------------------+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
mysql> CREATE USER 'newuser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'newpass';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.03 sec)
mysql> SET PASSWORD FOR 'existinguser'@'localhost' = PASSWORD('existingpass');
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.00 sec)
```

The following scenarios are possible in MySQL 4.1 or later. The factors are whether the `Password` column is short or long, and, if long, whether the server is started with `old_passwords` enabled or disabled.

**Scenario 1**: Short `Password` column in user table:

- Only short hashes can be stored in the `Password` column.
- The server uses only short hashes during client authentication.
- For connected clients, password hash-generating operations involving the `PASSWORD()` function or password-generating statements use short hashes exclusively. Any change to an account's password results in that account having a short password hash.
- The value of `old_passwords` is irrelevant because with a short `Password` column, the server generates only short password hashes anyway.
This scenario occurs when a pre-4.1 MySQL installation has been upgraded to 4.1 or later but `mysql_upgrade` has not been run to upgrade the system tables in the `mysql` database. (This is not a recommended configuration because it does not permit use of more secure 4.1 password hashing.)

**Scenario 2:** Long `Password` column; server started with `old_passwords=1`:

- Short or long hashes can be stored in the `Password` column.
- 4.1 and later clients can authenticate for accounts that have short or long hashes.
- Pre-4.1 clients can authenticate only for accounts that have short hashes.
- For connected clients, password hash-generating operations involving the `PASSWORD()` function or password-generating statements use short hashes exclusively. Any change to an account's password results in that account having a short password hash.

In this scenario, newly created accounts have short password hashes because `old_passwords=1` prevents generation of long hashes. Also, if you create an account with a long hash before setting `old_passwords` to 1, changing the account's password while `old_passwords=1` results in the account being given a short password, causing it to lose the security benefits of a longer hash.

To create a new account that has a long password hash, or to change the password of any existing account to use a long hash, first set the session value of `old_passwords` set to 0 while leaving the global value set to 1, as described previously.

In this scenario, the server has an up to date `Password` column, but is running with the default password hashing method set to generate pre-4.1 hash values. This is not a recommended configuration but may be useful during a transitional period in which pre-4.1 clients and passwords are upgraded to 4.1 or later. When that has been done, it is preferable to run the server with `old_passwords=0` and `secure_auth=1`.

**Scenario 3:** Long `Password` column; server started with `old_passwords=0`:

- Short or long hashes can be stored in the `Password` column.
- 4.1 and later clients can authenticate using accounts that have short or long hashes.
- Pre-4.1 clients can authenticate only using accounts that have short hashes.
- For connected clients, password hash-generating operations involving the `PASSWORD()` function or password-generating statements use long hashes exclusively. A change to an account's password results in that account having a long password hash.

As indicated earlier, a danger in this scenario is that it is possible for accounts that have a short password hash to become inaccessible to pre-4.1 clients. A change to such an account's password made using the `PASSWORD()` function or a password-generating statement results in the account being given a long password hash. From that point on, no pre-4.1 client can connect to the server using that account. The client must upgrade to 4.1 or later.

If this is a problem, you can change a password in a special way. For example, normally you use `SET PASSWORD` as follows to change an account password:

```sql
SET PASSWORD FOR 'some_user'@'some_host' = PASSWORD('password');
```

To change the password but create a short hash, use the `OLD_PASSWORD()` function instead:

```sql
SET PASSWORD FOR 'some_user'@'some_host' = OLD_PASSWORD('password');
```

`OLD_PASSWORD()` is useful for situations in which you explicitly want to generate a short hash.

The disadvantages for each of the preceding scenarios may be summarized as follows:
In scenario 1, you cannot take advantage of longer hashes that provide more secure authentication.

In scenario 2, `old_passwords=1` prevents accounts with short hashes from becoming inaccessible, but password-changing operations cause accounts with long hashes to revert to short hashes unless you take care to change the session value of `old_passwords` to 0 first.

In scenario 3, accounts with short hashes become inaccessible to pre-4.1 clients if you change their passwords without explicitly using `OLD_PASSWORD()`.

The best way to avoid compatibility problems related to short password hashes is to not use them:

- Upgrade all client programs to MySQL 4.1 or later.
- Run the server with `old_passwords=0`.
- Reset the password for any account with a short password hash to use a long password hash.
- For additional security, run the server with `secure_auth=1`.

### 2.3 Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers

When you connect to a MySQL server, you should use a password. The password is not transmitted as cleartext over the connection. Password handling during the client connection sequence was upgraded in MySQL 4.1.1 to be very secure. If you are still using pre-4.1.1-style passwords, the encryption algorithm is not as strong as the newer algorithm. With some effort, a clever attacker who can sniff the traffic between the client and the server can crack the password. (See Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”, for a discussion of the different password handling methods.)

All other information is transferred as text, and can be read by anyone who is able to watch the connection. If the connection between the client and the server goes through an untrusted network, and you are concerned about this, you can use the compressed protocol to make traffic much more difficult to decipher. You can also use MySQL's internal SSL support to make the connection even more secure. See Chapter 5, Using Encrypted Connections. Alternatively, use SSH to get an encrypted TCP/IP connection between a MySQL server and a MySQL client. You can find an Open Source SSH client at http://www.openssh.org/, and a comparison of both Open Source and Commercial SSH clients at http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_SSH_clients.

To make a MySQL system secure, you should strongly consider the following suggestions:

- Require all MySQL accounts to have a password. A client program does not necessarily know the identity of the person running it. It is common for client/server applications that the user can specify any user name to the client program. For example, anyone can use the `mysql` program to connect as any other person simply by invoking it as `mysql -u other_user db_name` if `other_user` has no password. If all accounts have a password, connecting using another user's account becomes much more difficult.

For a discussion of methods for setting passwords, see Section 4.10, “Assigning Account Passwords”.

- Make sure that the only Unix user account with read or write privileges in the database directories is the account that is used for running `mysqld`.

- Never run the MySQL server as the Unix `root` user. This is extremely dangerous, because any user with the `FILE` privilege is able to cause the server to create files as `root` (for example, `~root/.bashrc`). To prevent this, `mysqld` refuses to run as `root` unless that is specified explicitly using the `--user=root` option.

  `mysqld` can (and should) be run as an ordinary, unprivileged user instead. You can create a separate Unix account named `mysql` to make everything even more secure. Use this account only for administering MySQL. To start `mysqld` as a different Unix user, add a `user` option that specifies
the user name in the `[mysqld]` group of the `my.cnf` option file where you specify server options. For example:

```
[mysqld]
user=mysql
```

This causes the server to start as the designated user whether you start it manually or by using `mysqld_safe` or `mysql.server`. For more details, see Section 2.5, “How to Run MySQL as a Normal User”.

Running `mysqld` as a Unix user other than `root` does not mean that you need to change the `root` user name in the `user` table. User names for MySQL accounts have nothing to do with user names for Unix accounts.

- Do not grant the `FILE` privilege to nonadministrative users. Any user that has this privilege can write a file anywhere in the file system with the privileges of the `mysqld` daemon. This includes the server's data directory containing the files that implement the privilege tables. To make `FILE`-privilege operations a bit safer, files generated with `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` do not overwrite existing files and are writable by everyone.

  The `FILE` privilege may also be used to read any file that is world-readable or accessible to the Unix user that the server runs as. With this privilege, you can read any file into a database table. This could be abused, for example, by using `LOAD DATA` to load `/etc/passwd` into a table, which then can be displayed with `SELECT`.

  To limit the location in which files can be read and written, set the `secure_file_priv` system to a specific directory. See Server System Variables.

- Do not grant the `PROCESS` or `SUPER` privilege to nonadministrative users. The output of `mysqladmin processlist` and `SHOW PROCESSLIST` shows the text of any statements currently being executed, so any user who is permitted to see the server process list might be able to see statements issued by other users such as `UPDATE user SET password=PASSWORD('not_secure')`.

  `mysqld` reserves an extra connection for users who have the `SUPER` privilege, so that a MySQL `root` user can log in and check server activity even if all normal connections are in use.

  The `SUPER` privilege can be used to terminate client connections, change server operation by changing the value of system variables, and control replication servers.

- Do not permit the use of symlinks to tables. (This capability can be disabled with the `--skip-symbolic-links` option.) This is especially important if you run `mysqld` as `root`, because anyone that has write access to the server’s data directory then could delete any file in the system! See Using Symbolic Links for MyISAM Tables on Unix.

- Stored programs and views should be written using the security guidelines discussed in Stored Object Access Control.

- If you do not trust your DNS, you should use IP addresses rather than host names in the grant tables. In any case, you should be very careful about creating grant table entries using host name values that contain wildcards.

- If you want to restrict the number of connections permitted to a single account, you can do so by setting the `max_user_connections` variable in `mysqld`. The `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER` statements also support resource control options for limiting the extent of server use permitted to an account. See CREATE USER Syntax, and ALTER USER Syntax.

- If the plugin directory is writable by the server, it may be possible for a user to write executable code to a file in the directory using `SELECT ... INTO DUMPFILE`. This can be prevented by making `plugin_dir` read only to the server or by setting `secure_file_priv` to a directory where `SELECT` writes can be made safely.
2.4 Security-Related mysqld Options and Variables

The following table shows `mysqld` options and system variables that affect security. For descriptions of each of these, see Server Command Options, and Server System Variables.

Table 2.1 Security Option and Variable Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dyn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>allow-suspicious-udfs</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automatic_sp_privileges</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chroot</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>des-key-file</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>local_infile</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old_passwords</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>safe-user-create</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secure-auth</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable: secure_auth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secure_file_priv</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-grant-tables</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-name-resolve</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable: skip_name_resolve</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-networking</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable: skip_networking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skip-show-database</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Variable: skip_show_database</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.5 How to Run MySQL as a Normal User

On Windows, you can run the server as a Windows service using a normal user account.

On Linux, for installations performed using a MySQL repository, RPM packages, or Debian packages, the MySQL server `mysqld` should be started by the local `mysql` operating system user. Starting by another operating system user is not supported by the init scripts that are included as part of the installation.

On Unix (or Linux for installations performed using `tar` or `tar.gz` packages), the MySQL server `mysqld` can be started and run by any user. However, you should avoid running the server as the Unix `root` user for security reasons. To change `mysqld` to run as a normal unprivileged Unix user `user_name`, you must do the following:

1. Stop the server if it is running (use `mysqladmin shutdown`).
2. Change the database directories and files so that `user_name` has privileges to read and write files in them (you might need to do this as the Unix `root` user):

   ```bash
   shell> chown -R user_name /path/to/mysql/datadir
   ```

   If you do not do this, the server will not be able to access databases or tables when it runs as `user_name`. 
If directories or files within the MySQL data directory are symbolic links, `chown -R` might not follow symbolic links for you. If it does not, you will also need to follow those links and change the directories and files they point to.

3. Start the server as user `user_name`. Another alternative is to start `mysqld` as the Unix `root` user and use the `--user=user_name` option. `mysqld` starts, then switches to run as the Unix user `user_name` before accepting any connections.

4. To start the server as the given user automatically at system startup time, specify the user name by adding a `user` option to the `[mysqld]` group of the `/etc/my.cnf` option file or the `my.cnf` option file in the server’s data directory. For example:

```
[mysqld]
user=user_name
```

If your Unix machine itself is not secured, you should assign passwords to the MySQL `root` account in the grant tables. Otherwise, any user with a login account on that machine can run the `mysql` client with a `--user=root` option and perform any operation. (It is a good idea to assign passwords to MySQL accounts in any case, but especially so when other login accounts exist on the server host.) See Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

2.6 Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL

The `LOAD DATA` statement can load a file located on the server host, or, if the `LOCAL` keyword is specified, on the client host.

There are two potential security issues with the `LOCAL` version of `LOAD DATA`:

- The transfer of the file from the client host to the server host is initiated by the MySQL server. In theory, a patched server could be built that would tell the client program to transfer a file of the server’s choosing rather than the file named by the client in the `LOAD DATA` statement. Such a server could access any file on the client host to which the client user has read access. (A patched server could in fact reply with a file-transfer request to any statement, not just `LOAD DATA LOCAL`, so a more fundamental issue is that clients should not connect to untrusted servers.)

- In a Web environment where the clients are connecting from a Web server, a user could use `LOAD DATA LOCAL` to read any files that the Web server process has read access to (assuming that a user could run any statement against the SQL server). In this environment, the client with respect to the MySQL server actually is the Web server, not a remote program being run by users who connect to the Web server.

To avoid `LOAD DATA` issues, clients should avoid using `LOCAL`. To avoid connecting to untrusted servers, clients can establish a secure connection and verify the server identity by connecting using the `--ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY` option and the appropriate CA certificate.

To enable administrators and applications to manage the local data loading capability, `LOCAL` configuration works like this:

- On the server side:
  - The `local_infile` system variable controls server-side `LOCAL` capability. Depending on the `local_infile` setting, the server refuses or permits local data loading by clients that have `LOCAL` enabled on the client side. By default, `local_infile` is enabled.
  - To explicitly cause the server to refuse or permit `LOAD DATA LOCAL` statements (regardless of how client programs and libraries are configured at build time or runtime), start `mysqld` with `local_infile` disabled or enabled, respectively. `local_infile` can also be set at runtime.

- On the client side:
• The **ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE** CMake option controls the compiled-in default **LOCAL** capability for the MySQL client library. Clients that make no explicit arrangements therefore have **LOCAL** capability disabled or enabled according to the **ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE** setting specified at MySQL build time.

By default, the client library in MySQL binary distributions is compiled with **ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE** enabled. If you compile MySQL from source, configure it with **ENABLED_LOCAL_INFILE** disabled or enabled based on whether clients that make no explicit arrangements should have **LOCAL** capability disabled or enabled, respectively.

• Client programs that use the C API can control load data loading explicitly by invoking `mysql_options()` to disable or enable the **MYSQL_OPT_LOCAL_INFILE** option. See `mysql_options()`.

• For the **mysql** client, local data loading is disabled by default. To disable or enable it explicitly, use the `--local-infile=0` or `--local-infile=1` option.

• For the **mysqlimport** client, local data loading is disabled by default. To disable or enable it explicitly, use the `--local=0` or `--local=1` option.

• If you use **LOAD DATA LOCAL** in Perl scripts or other programs that read the [client] group from option files, you can add a **local-infile** option setting to that group. To prevent problems for programs that do not understand this option, specify it using the `loose-` prefix:

```
[client]
loose-local-infile=0
```

or:

```
[client]
loose-local-infile=1
```

• In all cases, successful use of a **LOCAL** load operation by a client also requires that the server permits it.

If **LOCAL** capability is disabled, on either the server or client side, a client that attempts to issue a **LOAD DATA LOCAL** statement receives the following error message:

```
ERROR 1148: The used command is not allowed with this MySQL version
```

## 2.7 Client Programming Security Guidelines

Applications that access MySQL should not trust any data entered by users, who can try to trick your code by entering special or escaped character sequences in Web forms, URLs, or whatever application you have built. Be sure that your application remains secure if a user enters something like `DROP DATABASE mysql;`. This is an extreme example, but large security leaks and data loss might occur as a result of hackers using similar techniques, if you do not prepare for them.

A common mistake is to protect only string data values. Remember to check numeric data as well. If an application generates a query such as `SELECT * FROM table WHERE ID=234` when a user enters the value `234`, the user can enter the value `234 OR 1=1` to cause the application to generate the query `SELECT * FROM table WHERE ID=234 OR 1=1`. As a result, the server retrieves every row in the table. This exposes every row and causes excessive server load. The simplest way to protect from this type of attack is to use single quotation marks around the numeric constants: `SELECT * FROM table WHERE ID='234'`. If the user enters extra information, it all becomes part of the string. In a numeric context, MySQL automatically converts this string to a number and strips any trailing nonnumeric characters from it.
Sometimes people think that if a database contains only publicly available data, it need not be protected. This is incorrect. Even if it is permissible to display any row in the database, you should still protect against denial of service attacks (for example, those that are based on the technique in the preceding paragraph that causes the server to waste resources). Otherwise, your server becomes unresponsive to legitimate users.

Checklist:

• Enable strict SQL mode to tell the server to be more restrictive of what data values it accepts. See Server SQL Modes.

• Try to enter single and double quotation marks (‘ and ”) in all of your Web forms. If you get any kind of MySQL error, investigate the problem right away.

• Try to modify dynamic URLs by adding %22 ("), %23 (#), and %27 (‘) to them.

• Try to modify data types in dynamic URLs from numeric to character types using the characters shown in the previous examples. Your application should be safe against these and similar attacks.

• Try to enter characters, spaces, and special symbols rather than numbers in numeric fields. Your application should remove them before passing them to MySQL or else generate an error. Passing unchecked values to MySQL is very dangerous!

• Check the size of data before passing it to MySQL.

• Have your application connect to the database using a user name different from the one you use for administrative purposes. Do not give your applications any access privileges they do not need.

Many application programming interfaces provide a means of escaping special characters in data values. Properly used, this prevents application users from entering values that cause the application to generate statements that have a different effect than you intend:

• MySQL C API: Use the mysql_real_escape_string_quote() API call.

• MySQL++: Use the escape and quote modifiers for query streams.

• PHP: Use either the mysqli or pdo_mysql extensions, and not the older ext/mysql extension. The preferred API's support the improved MySQL authentication protocol and passwords, as well as prepared statements with placeholders. See also Choosing an API.

If the older ext/mysql extension must be used, then for escaping use the mysql_real_escape_string_quote() function and not mysqli_escape_string() or addslashes() because only mysql_real_escape_string_quote() is character set-aware; the other functions can be “bypassed” when using (invalid) multibyte character sets.

• Perl DBI: Use placeholders or the quote() method.

• Ruby DBI: Use placeholders or the quote() method.

• Java JDBC: Use a PreparedStatement object and placeholders.

Other programming interfaces might have similar capabilities.
Chapter 3 Postinstallation Setup and Testing

Table of Contents

3.1 Initializing the Data Directory ................................................................. 19
3.2 Starting the Server ........................................................................... 25
  3.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server ...................... 25
3.3 Testing the Server ........................................................................... 27
3.4 Securing the Initial MySQL Account ..................................................... 29
3.5 Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically ........................................ 31

This section discusses tasks that you should perform after installing MySQL:

• If necessary, initialize the data directory and create the MySQL grant tables. For some MySQL installation methods, data directory initialization may be done for you automatically:
  • Windows installation operations performed by MySQL Installer.
  • Installation on Linux using a server RPM or Debian distribution from Oracle.
  • Installation using the native packaging system on many platforms, including Debian Linux, Ubuntu Linux, Gentoo Linux, and others.
  • Installation on OS X using a DMG distribution.

For other platforms and installation types, you must initialize the data directory manually. These include installation from generic binary and source distributions on Unix and Unix-like systems, and installation from a ZIP Archive package on Windows. For instructions, see Section 3.1, “Initializing the Data Directory”.

• Start the server and make sure that it can be accessed. For instructions, see Section 3.2, “Starting the Server”, and Section 3.3, “Testing the Server”.

• Assign passwords to the initial root account in the grant tables, if that was not already done during data directory initialization. Passwords prevent unauthorized access to the MySQL server. For instructions, see Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

• Optionally, arrange for the server to start and stop automatically when your system starts and stops. For instructions, see Section 3.5, “Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically”.

• Optionally, populate time zone tables to enable recognition of named time zones. For instructions, see MySQL Server Time Zone Support.

When you are ready to create additional user accounts, you can find information on the MySQL access control system and account management in Chapter 4, Access Control and Account Management.

3.1 Initializing the Data Directory

After MySQL is installed, the data directory must be initialized, including the tables in the mysql system database:

• For some MySQL installation methods, data directory initialization is automatic, as described in Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

• For other installation methods, you must initialize the data directory manually. These include installation from generic binary and source distributions on Unix and Unix-like systems, and installation from a ZIP Archive package on Windows.
This section describes how to initialize the data directory manually for MySQL installation methods for which data directory initialization is not automatic. For some suggested commands that enable testing whether the server is accessible and working properly, see Section 3.3, “Testing the Server”.

- Data Directory Initialization Overview
- Data Directory Initialization Procedure
- Server Actions During Data Directory Initialization
- Post-Initialization root Password Assignment

Data Directory Initialization Overview

In the examples shown here, the server is intended to run under the user ID of the `mysql` login account. Either create the account if it does not exist (see Create a mysql User and Group), or substitute the name of a different existing login account that you plan to use for running the server.

1. Change location to the top-level directory of your MySQL installation, which is typically `/usr/local/mysql` (adjust the path name for your system as necessary):

   ```bash
cd /usr/local/mysql
   ```

   Within the directory you will find several files and subdirectories, including the `bin` subdirectory that contains the server as well as client and utility programs.

2. The `secure_file_priv` system variable limits import and export operations to a specific directory. Create a directory whose location can be specified as the value of that variable:

   ```bash
   mkdir mysql-files
   ```

   Grant directory user and group ownership to the `mysql` user and `mysql` group, and set the directory permissions appropriately:

   ```bash
   chown mysql:mysql mysql-files
   chmod 750 mysql-files
   ```

3. Use the server to initialize the data directory, including the `mysql` database containing the initial MySQL grant tables that determine how users are permitted to connect to the server. For example:

   ```bash
   bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql
   ```

   For important information about the command, especially regarding command options you might use, see Data Directory Initialization Procedure. For details about how the server performs initialization, see Server Actions During Data Directory Initialization.

   Typically, data directory initialization need be done only after you first install MySQL. (For upgrades to an existing installation, perform the upgrade procedure instead; see Upgrading MySQL.) However, the command that initializes the data directory does not overwrite any existing `mysql` database tables, so it is safe to run in any circumstances.

Note

Initialization of the data directory might fail if required system libraries are missing. For example, you might see an error like this:

```bash
bin/mysqld: error while loading shared libraries:
libnuma.so.1: cannot open shared object file:
No such file or directory
```
Data Directory Initialization Procedure

If this happens, you must install the missing libraries manually or with your system's package manager. Then retry the data directory initialization command.

4. If you want to deploy the server with automatic support for secure connections, use the mysql_ssl_rsa_setup utility to create default SSL and RSA files:

```bash
bin/mysql_ssl_rsa_setup
```

For more information, see `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup — Create SSL/RSA Files`.

5. In the absence of any option files, the server starts with its default settings. (See Server Configuration Defaults.) To explicitly specify options that the MySQL server should use at startup, put them in an option file such as `/etc/my.cnf` or `/etc/mysql/my.cnf`. (See Using Option Files.) For example, you can use an option file to set the `secure_file_priv` system variable.

6. To arrange for MySQL to start without manual intervention at system boot time, see Section 3.5, “Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically”.

7. Data directory initialization creates time zone tables in the `mysql` database but does not populate them. To do so, use the instructions in MySQL Server Time Zone Support.

Data Directory Initialization Procedure

Change location to the top-level directory of your MySQL installation, which is typically `usr/local/mysql` (adjust the path name for your system as necessary):

```bash
 cd /usr/local/mysql
```

To initialize the data directory, invoke `mysqld` with the `--initialize` or `--initialize-insecure` option, depending on whether you want the server to generate a random initial password for the `root`"localhost" account, or to create that account with no password:

- Use `--initialize` for “secure by default” installation (that is, including generation of a random initial root password). In this case, the password is marked as expired and you will need to choose a new one.

- With `--initialize-insecure`, no root password is generated. This is insecure; it is assumed that you will assign a password to the account in timely fashion before putting the server into production use.

For instructions on assigning a new `root"localhost"` password, see Post-Initialization root Password Assignment.

**Note**

The server writes any messages (including any initial password) to its standard error output. This may be redirected to the error log, so look there if you do not see the messages on your screen. For information about the error log, including where it is located, see The Error Log.

On Windows, use the `--console` option to direct messages to the console.

On Unix and Unix-like systems, it is important for the database directories and files to be owned by the `mysql` login account so that the server has read and write access to them when you run it later. To ensure this, start `mysqld` from the system root account and include the `--user` option as shown here:
Server Actions During Data Directory Initialization

Bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql
Bin/mysqld --initialize-insecure --user=mysql

Alternatively, execute mysqld while logged in as mysql, in which case you can omit the --user option from the command.

On Windows, use one of these commands:

Bin/mysqld --initialize --console
Bin/mysqld --initialize-insecure --console

It might be necessary to specify other options such as --basedir or --datadir if mysqld cannot identify the correct locations for the installation directory or data directory. For example (enter the command on a single line):

Bin/mysqld --initialize --user=mysql
--basedir=/opt/mysql/mysql
--datadir=/opt/mysql/mysql/data

Alternatively, put the relevant option settings in an option file and pass the name of that file to mysqld. For Unix and Unix-like systems, suppose that the option file name is /opt/mysql/mysql/etc/my.cnf. Put these lines in the file:

[mysqld]
basedir=/opt/mysql/mysql
datadir=/opt/mysql/mysql/data

Then invoke mysqld as follows (enter the command on a single line with the --defaults-file option first):

Bin/mysqld --defaults-file=/opt/mysql/mysql/etc/my.cnf
--initialize --user=mysql

On Windows, suppose that C:\my.ini contains these lines:

[mysqld]
basedir=C:\Program Files\MySQL\MySQL Server 5.7
datadir=D:\MySQLdata

Then invoke mysqld as follows (enter the command on a single line with the --defaults-file option first):

Bin/mysqld --defaults-file=C:\my.ini
--initialize --console

Server Actions During Data Directory Initialization

Note
The data directory initialization sequence performed by the server does not substitute for the actions performed by mysql_secure_installation and mysql_ssl_rsa_setup. See mysql_secure_installation — Improve MySQL Installation Security, and mysql_ssl_rsa_setup — Create SSL/RSA Files.

When invoked with the --initialize or --initialize-insecure option, mysqld performs the following actions during the data directory initialization sequence:

1. The server checks for the existence of the data directory as follows:
Server Actions During Data Directory Initialization

- If no data directory exists, the server creates it.
- If the data directory exists but is not empty (that is, it contains files or subdirectories), the server exits after producing an error message:

```
[ERROR] --initialize specified but the data directory exists. Aborting.
```

In this case, remove or rename the data directory and try again.

As of MySQL 5.7.11, an existing data directory is permitted to be nonempty if every entry either has a name that begins with a period (.) or is named using an `--ignore-db-dir` option.

**Note**
Avoid the use of the `--ignore-db-dir` option, which has been deprecated since MySQL 5.7.16.

2. Within the data directory, the server creates the `mysql` system database and its tables, including the grant tables, time zone tables, and server-side help tables. See The `mysql` System Database.

3. The server initializes the system tablespace and related data structures needed to manage InnoDB tables.

**Note**
After `mysqld` sets up the InnoDB system tablespace, certain changes to tablespace characteristics require setting up a whole new instance. Qualifying changes include the file name of the first file in the system tablespace and the number of undo logs. If you do not want to use the default values, make sure that the settings for the `innodb_data_file_path` and `innodb_log_file_size` configuration parameters are in place in the MySQL configuration file before running `mysqld`. Also make sure to specify as necessary other parameters that affect the creation and location of InnoDB files, such as `innodb_data_home_dir` and `innodb_log_group_home_dir`.

If those options are in your configuration file but that file is not in a location that MySQL reads by default, specify the file location using the `--defaults-extra-file` option when you run `mysqld`.

4. The server creates a `root'@'localhost` superuser account and other reserved accounts (see Section 4.8, “Reserved Accounts”). Some reserved accounts are locked and cannot be used by clients, but `root'@'localhost` is intended for administrative use and you should assign it a password.

Server actions with respect to a password for the `root'@'localhost` account depend on how you invoke it:

- With `--initialize` but not `--initialize-insecure`, the server generates a random password, marks it as expired, and writes a message displaying the password:

```
[Warning] A temporary password is generated for root@localhost:
          iTag*AfrH5ej
```

- With `--initialize-insecure`, (either with or without `--initialize` because `--initialize-insecure` implies `--initialize`), the server does not generate a password or mark it expired, and writes a warning message:
Post-Initialization root Password Assignment

For instructions on assigning a new 'root'@'localhost' password, see Post-Initialization root Password Assignment.

5. The server populates the server-side help tables used for the `HELP` statement (see HELP Syntax). The server does not populate the time zone tables. To do so manually, see MySQL Server Time Zone Support.

6. If the `init_file` system variable was given to name a file of SQL statements, the server executes the statements in the file. This option enables you to perform custom bootstrapping sequences.

When the server operates in bootstrap mode, some functionality is unavailable that limits the statements permitted in the file. These include statements that relate to account management (such as `CREATE USER` or `GRANT`), replication, and global transaction identifiers.

7. The server exits.

Post-Initialization root Password Assignment

After you initialize the data directory by starting the server with `--initialize` or `--initialize-insecure`, start the server normally (that is, without either of those options) and assign the 'root'@'localhost' account a new password:

1. Start the server. For instructions, see Section 3.2, “Starting the Server”.

2. Connect to the server:

   • If you used `--initialize` but not `--initialize-insecure` to initialize the data directory, connect to the server as `root`:

     ```
     mysql -u root -p
     ```

     Then, at the password prompt, enter the random password that the server generated during the initialization sequence:

     ```
     Enter password: (enter the random root password here)
     ```

     Look in the server error log if you do not know this password.

   • If you used `--initialize-insecure` to initialize the data directory, connect to the server as `root` without a password:

     ```
     mysql -u root --skip-password
     ```

3. After connecting, use an `ALTER USER` statement to assign a new `root` password:

   ```
   ALTER USER 'root'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'root-password';
   ```

See also Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

Note

Attempts to connect to the host `127.0.0.1` normally resolve to the `localhost` account. However, this fails if the server is run with the `--skip-name-resolve` option. If you plan to do that, make sure that an account exists that can accept a connection. For example, to be able to connect as `root` using `--host=127.0.0.1` or `--host=::1`, create these accounts:
It is possible to put those statements in a file to be executed using the \texttt{init\_file} system variable, as discussed in Server Actions During Data Directory Initialization.

3.2 Starting the Server

This section describes how to start the server on Unix and Unix-like systems. (For Windows, see Starting the Server for the First Time.) For some suggested commands that you can use to test whether the server is accessible and working properly, see Section 3.3, “Testing the Server”.

Start the MySQL server like this if your installation includes \texttt{mysqld\_safe}:

\begin{verbatim}
shell> bin/mysqld\_safe --user=mysql &
\end{verbatim}

\textbf{Note}

For Linux systems on which MySQL is installed using RPM packages, server startup and shutdown is managed using systemd rather than \texttt{mysqld\_safe}, and \texttt{mysqld\_safe} is not installed. See Managing MySQL Server with systemd.

Start the server like this if your installation includes systemd support:

\begin{verbatim}
shell> systemctl start mysqld
\end{verbatim}

Substitute the appropriate service name if it differs from \texttt{mysqld} (for example, \texttt{mysql} on SLES systems).

It is important that the MySQL server be run using an unprivileged (non-root) login account. To ensure this, run \texttt{mysqld\_safe} as root and include the --user option as shown. Otherwise, you should execute the program while logged in as mysql, in which case you can omit the --user option from the command.

For further instructions for running MySQL as an unprivileged user, see Section 2.5, “How to Run MySQL as a Normal User”.

If the command fails immediately and prints \texttt{mysqld\_ended}, look for information in the error log (which by default is the host\_name.err file in the data directory).

If the server is unable to access the data directory it starts or read the grant tables in the mysql database, it writes a message to its error log. Such problems can occur if you neglected to create the grant tables by initializing the data directory before proceeding to this step, or if you ran the command that initializes the data directory without the --user option. Remove the data directory and run the command with the --user option.

If you have other problems starting the server, see Section 3.2.1, “Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server”. For more information about \texttt{mysqld\_safe}, see \texttt{mysqld\_safe} — MySQL Server Startup Script. For more information about systemd support, see Managing MySQL Server with systemd.

3.2.1 Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server

This section provides troubleshooting suggestions for problems starting the server. For additional suggestions for Windows systems, see Troubleshooting a Microsoft Windows MySQL Server Installation.
Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server

If you have problems starting the server, here are some things to try:

• Check the error log to see why the server does not start. Log files are located in the data directory (typically C:\Program Files\MySQL\MySQL Server 5.7\data on Windows, /usr/local/mysql/data for a Unix/Linux binary distribution, and /usr/local/var for a Unix/Linux source distribution). Look in the data directory for files with names of the form `host_name.err` and `host_name.log`, where `host_name` is the name of your server host. Then examine the last few lines of these files. Use `tail` to display them:

```
shell> tail host_name.err
shell> tail host_name.log
```

• Specify any special options needed by the storage engines you are using. You can create a `my.cnf` file and specify startup options for the engines that you plan to use. If you are going to use storage engines that support transactional tables (InnoDB, NDB), be sure that you have them configured the way you want before starting the server. If you are using InnoDB tables, see InnoDB Configuration for guidelines and InnoDB Startup Options and System Variables for option syntax.

Although storage engines use default values for options that you omit, Oracle recommends that you review the available options and specify explicit values for any options whose defaults are not appropriate for your installation.

• Make sure that the server knows where to find the data directory. The `mysqld` server uses this directory as its current directory. This is where it expects to find databases and where it expects to write log files. The server also writes the pid (process ID) file in the data directory. The default data directory location is hardcoded when the server is compiled. To determine what the default path settings are, invoke `mysqld` with the `--verbose` and `--help` options. If the data directory is located somewhere else on your system, specify that location with the `--datadir` option to `mysqld` or `mysqld_safe`, on the command line or in an option file. Otherwise, the server will not work properly. As an alternative to the `--datadir` option, you can specify `mysqld` the location of the base directory under which MySQL is installed with the `--basedir`, and `mysqld` looks for the data directory there.

To check the effect of specifying path options, invoke `mysqld` with those options followed by the `--verbose` and `--help` options. For example, if you change location to the directory where `mysqld` is installed and then run the following command, it shows the effect of starting the server with a base directory of `/usr/local`:

```
shell> ./mysqld --basedir=/usr/local --verbose --help
```

You can specify other options such as `--datadir` as well, but `--verbose` and `--help` must be the last options.

Once you determine the path settings you want, start the server without `--verbose` and `--help`. If `mysqld` is currently running, you can find out what path settings it is using by executing this command:

```
shell> mysqladmin variables
```

Or:

```
shell> mysqladmin -h host_name variables
```

`host_name` is the name of the MySQL server host.

• Make sure that the server can access the data directory. The ownership and permissions of the data directory and its contents must allow the server to read and modify them.
If you get **Errcode 13** (which means **Permission denied**) when starting **mysqld**, this means that the privileges of the data directory or its contents do not permit server access. In this case, you change the permissions for the involved files and directories so that the server has the right to use them. You can also start the server as **root**, but this raises security issues and should be avoided.

Change location to the data directory and check the ownership of the data directory and its contents to make sure the server has access. For example, if the data directory is `/usr/local/mysql/var`, use this command:

```
shell> ls -la /usr/local/mysql/var
```

If the data directory or its files or subdirectories are not owned by the login account that you use for running the server, change their ownership to that account. If the account is named **mysql**, use these commands:

```
shell> chown -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/var
shell> chgrp -R mysql /usr/local/mysql/var
```

Even with correct ownership, MySQL might fail to start up if there is other security software running on your system that manages application access to various parts of the file system. In this case, reconfigure that software to enable **mysql** to access the directories it uses during normal operation.

- Verify that the network interfaces the server wants to use are available.

If either of the following errors occur, it means that some other program (perhaps another **mysql** server) is using the TCP/IP port or Unix socket file that **mysql** is trying to use:

```
Can't start server: Bind on TCP/IP port: Address already in use
Can't start server: Bind on unix socket...
```

Use **ps** to determine whether you have another **mysql** server running. If so, shut down the server before starting **mysql** again. (If another server is running, and you really want to run multiple servers, you can find information about how to do so in Running Multiple MySQL Instances on One Machine.)

If no other server is running, execute the command `telnet your_host_name tcp_ip_port_number`. (The default MySQL port number is 3306.) Then press Enter a couple of times. If you do not get an error message like `telnet: Unable to connect to remote host: Connection refused`, some other program is using the TCP/IP port that **mysql** is trying to use. Track down what program this is and disable it, or tell **mysql** to listen to a different port with the **--port** option. In this case, specify the same non-default port number for client programs when connecting to the server using TCP/IP.

Another reason the port might be inaccessible is that you have a firewall running that blocks connections to it. If so, modify the firewall settings to permit access to the port.

If the server starts but you cannot connect to it, make sure that you have an entry in `/etc/hosts` that looks like this:

```
127.0.0.1 localhost
```

- If you cannot get **mysql** to start, try to make a trace file to find the problem by using the **--debug** option. See The DBUG Package.

### 3.3 Testing the Server

After the data directory is initialized and you have started the server, perform some simple tests to make sure that it works satisfactorily. This section assumes that your current location is the MySQL
Testing the Server

installation directory and that it has a bin subdirectory containing the MySQL programs used here. If that is not true, adjust the command path names accordingly.

Alternatively, add the bin directory to your PATH environment variable setting. That enables your shell (command interpreter) to find MySQL programs properly, so that you can run a program by typing only its name, not its path name. See Setting Environment Variables.

Use mysqladmin to verify that the server is running. The following commands provide simple tests to check whether the server is up and responding to connections:

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin version
shell> bin/mysqladmin variables
```

If you cannot connect to the server, specify a -u root option to connect as root. If you have assigned a password for the root account already, you’ll also need to specify -p on the command line and enter the password when prompted. For example:

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin -u root -p version
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

The output from mysqladmin version varies slightly depending on your platform and version of MySQL, but should be similar to that shown here:

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin version
mysqladmin Ver 14.12 Distrib 5.7.29, for pc-linux-gnu on i686 ...
Server version 5.7.29
Protocol version 10
Connection Localhost via UNIX socket
UNIX socket /var/lib/mysql/mysql.sock
Uptime: 14 days 5 hours 5 min 21 sec
Threads: 1 Questions: 366 Slow queries: 0
Opens: 0 Flush tables: 1 Open tables: 19
Queries per second avg: 0.000
```

To see what else you can do with mysqladmin, invoke it with the --help option.

Verify that you can shut down the server (include a -p option if the root account has a password already):

```
shell> bin/mysqladmin -u root shutdown
```

Verify that you can start the server again. Do this by using mysqld_safe or by invoking mysqld directly. For example:

```
shell> bin/mysqld_safe --user=mysql &
```

If mysqld_safe fails, see Section 3.2.1, “Troubleshooting Problems Starting the MySQL Server”.

Run some simple tests to verify that you can retrieve information from the server. The output should be similar to that shown here.

Use mysqlshow to see what databases exist:

```
shell> bin/mysqlshow
+--------------------+
|     Databases      |
+--------------------+
| information_schema |
```
The list of installed databases may vary, but always includes at least `mysql` and `information_schema`.

If you specify a database name, `mysqlshow` displays a list of the tables within the database:

```shell
bin/mysqlshow mysql
```

```
+---------------------------+
|          Tables           |
+---------------------------+
| columns_priv              |
| db                        |
| engine_cost               |
| event                     |
| func                      |
| general_log               |
| gtid_executed             |
| help_category             |
| help_keyword              |
| help_relation             |
| help_topic                |
| innodb_index_stats        |
| innodb_table_stats        |
| ndb_binlog_index          |
| plugin                    |
| proc                      |
| procs_priv                |
| proxies_priv              |
| server_cost               |
| servers                   |
| slave_master_info         |
| slave_relay_log_info      |
| slave_worker_info         |
| slow_log                  |
| tables_priv               |
| time_zone                 |
| time_zone_leap_second     |
| time_zone_name            |
| time_zone_transition      |
| time_zone_transition_type |
| user                      |
```

Use the `mysql` program to select information from a table in the `mysql` database:

```shell
bin/mysql -e "SELECT User, Host, plugin FROM mysql.user" mysql
```

```
+------+-----------+-----------------------+
| User | Host      | plugin                |
+------+-----------+-----------------------+
| root | localhost | mysql_native_password |
```

At this point, your server is running and you can access it. To tighten security if you have not yet assigned a password to the initial account, follow the instructions in Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”.

For more information about `mysql`, `mysqladmin`, and `mysqlshow`, see `mysql — The MySQL Command-Line Client`, `mysqladmin — Client for Administering a MySQL Server`, and `mysqlshow — Display Database, Table, and Column Information`.

### 3.4 Securing the Initial MySQL Account
Securing the Initial MySQL Account

The MySQL installation process involves initializing the data directory, including the grant tables in the `mysql` system database that define MySQL accounts. For details, see Section 3.1, “Initializing the Data Directory”.

This section describes how to assign a password to the initial `root` account created during the MySQL installation procedure, if you have not already done so.

**Note**

Alternative means for performing the process described in this section:

- On Windows, you can perform the process during installation with MySQL Installer (see MySQL Installer for Windows).
- On all platforms, the MySQL distribution includes `mysql_secure_installation`, a command-line utility that automates much of the process of securing a MySQL installation.
- On all platforms, MySQL Workbench is available and offers the ability to manage user accounts (see MySQL Workbench).

A password may already be assigned to the initial account under these circumstances:

- On Windows, installations performed using MySQL Installer give you the option of assigning a password.
- Installation using the macOS installer generates an initial random password, which the installer displays to the user in a dialog box.
- Installation using RPM packages generates an initial random password, which is written to the server error log.
- Installations using Debian packages give you the option of assigning a password.
- For data directory initialization performed manually using `mysqld --initialize`, `mysqld` generates an initial random password, marks it expired, and writes it to the server error log. See Section 3.1, “Initializing the Data Directory”.

The `mysql.user` grant table defines the initial MySQL user account and its access privileges.

Installation of MySQL creates only a `root'@'localhost` superuser account that has all privileges and can do anything. If the `root` account has an empty password, your MySQL installation is unprotected: Anyone can connect to the MySQL server as `root` without a password and be granted all privileges.

The `root'@'localhost` account also has a row in the `mysql.proxies_priv` table that enables granting the `PROXY` privilege for `'@'`, that is, for all users and all hosts. This enables `root` to set up proxy users, as well as to delegate to other accounts the authority to set up proxy users. See Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

To assign a password for the initial MySQL `root` account, use the following procedure. Replace `root-password` in the examples with the password that you want to use.

Start the server if it is not running. For instructions, see Section 3.2, “Starting the Server”.

The initial `root` account may or may not have a password. Choose whichever of the following procedures applies:

- If the `root` account exists with an initial random password that has been expired, connect to the server as `root` using that password, then choose a new password. This is the case if the data directory was initialized using `mysqld --initialize`, either manually or using an installer that does not give you the option of specifying a password during the install operation. Because the
password exists, you must use it to connect to the server. But because the password is expired, you cannot use the account for any purpose other than to choose a new password, until you do choose one.

1. If you do not know the initial random password, look in the server error log.

2. Connect to the server as root using the password:

```shell
shell> mysql -u root -p
Enter password: (enter the random root password here)
```

3. Choose a new password to replace the random password:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'root'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'root-password';
```

- If the root account exists but has no password, connect to the server as root using no password, then assign a password. This is the case if you initialized the data directory using `mysqld --initialize-insecure`.

1. Connect to the server as root using no password:

```shell
shell> mysql -u root --skip-password
```

2. Assign a password:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'root'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'root-password';
```

After assigning the root account a password, you must supply that password whenever you connect to the server using the account. For example, to connect to the server using the `mysql` client, use this command:

```shell
shell> mysql -u root -p
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

To shut down the server with `mysqladmin`, use this command:

```shell
shell> mysqladmin -u root -p shutdown
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

**Note**

For additional information about setting passwords, see Section 4.10, “Assigning Account Passwords”. If you forget your root password after setting it, see How to Reset the Root Password.

To set up additional accounts, see Section 4.7, “Adding Accounts, Assigning Privileges, and Dropping Accounts”.

### 3.5 Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically

This section discusses methods for starting and stopping the MySQL server.

Generally, you start the `mysqld` server in one of these ways:

- **Invoke mysqld directly.** This works on any platform.
- **On Windows**, you can set up a MySQL service that runs automatically when Windows starts. See Starting MySQL as a Windows Service.
Starting and Stopping MySQL Automatically

- On Unix and Unix-like systems, you can invoke `mysqld_safe`, which tries to determine the proper options for `mysqld` and then runs it with those options. See `mysqld_safe — MySQL Server Startup Script`.

- On Linux systems that support systemd, you can use it to control the server. See `Managing MySQL Server with systemd`.

- On systems that use System V-style run directories (that is, `/etc/init.d` and run-level specific directories), invoke `mysql.server`. This script is used primarily at system startup and shutdown. It usually is installed under the name `mysql`. The `mysql.server` script starts the server by invoking `mysqld_safe`. See `mysql.server — MySQL Server Startup Script`.

- On OS X, install a launchd daemon to enable automatic MySQL startup at system startup. The daemon starts the server by invoking `mysqld_safe`. For details, see `Installing a MySQL Launch Daemon`. A MySQL Preference Pane also provides control for starting and stopping MySQL through the System Preferences. See `Installing and Using the MySQL Preference Pane`.

- On Solaris, use the service management framework (SMF) system to initiate and control MySQL startup.

systemd, the `mysqld_safe` and `mysql.server` scripts, Solaris SMF, and the OS X Startup Item (or MySQL Preference Pane) can be used to start the server manually, or automatically at system startup time. systemd, `mysql.server`, and the Startup Item also can be used to stop the server.

The following table shows which option groups the server and startup scripts read from option files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Script</th>
<th>Option Groups</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>mysqld</code></td>
<td><code>[mysqld], [server], [mysqld-major_version]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mysqld_safe</code></td>
<td><code>[mysqld], [server], [mysqld_safe]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>mysql.server</code></td>
<td><code>[mysqld], [mysql.server], [server]</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`[mysqld-major_version]` means that groups with names like `[mysqld-5.6]` and `[mysqld-5.7]` are read by servers having versions 5.6.x, 5.7.x, and so forth. This feature can be used to specify options that can be read only by servers within a given release series.

For backward compatibility, `mysql.server` also reads the `[mysql_server]` group and `mysqld_safe` also reads the `[safe_mysqld]` group. To be current, you should update your option files to use the `[mysql.server]` and `[mysqld_safe]` groups instead.

For more information on MySQL configuration files and their structure and contents, see `Using Option Files`.
Chapter 4 Access Control and Account Management

Table of Contents

4.1 Account User Names and Passwords ................................................................. 34
4.2 Privileges Provided by MySQL ........................................................................... 36
4.3 Grant Tables ....................................................................................................... 42
4.4 Specifying Account Names ................................................................................ 48
4.5 Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification ............................................ 50
4.6 Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification .................................................. 53
4.7 Adding Accounts, Assigning Privileges, and Dropping Accounts ....................... 54
4.8 Reserved Accounts ............................................................................................. 57
4.9 When Privilege Changes Take Effect ................................................................... 58
4.10 Assigning Account Passwords ........................................................................... 58
4.11 Password Management ...................................................................................... 60
4.12 Server Handling of Expired Passwords ............................................................. 62
4.13 Pluggable Authentication .................................................................................. 64
4.14 Proxy Users ....................................................................................................... 67
4.15 Account Locking ................................................................................................ 74
4.16 Setting Account Resource Limits ...................................................................... 75
4.17 Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL .......................................... 77
4.18 SQL-Based Account Activity Auditing ................................................................. 81

MySQL enables the creation of accounts that permit client users to connect to the server and access data managed by the server. The primary function of the MySQL privilege system is to authenticate a user who connects from a given host and to associate that user with privileges on a database such as SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. Additional functionality includes the ability to grant privileges for administrative operations.

To control which users can connect, each account can be assigned authentication credentials such as a password. The user interface to MySQL accounts consists of SQL statements such as CREATE USER, GRANT, and REVOKE. See Account Management Statements.

The MySQL privilege system ensures that all users may perform only the operations permitted to them. As a user, when you connect to a MySQL server, your identity is determined by the host from which you connect and the user name you specify. When you issue requests after connecting, the system grants privileges according to your identity and what you want to do.

MySQL considers both your host name and user name in identifying you because there is no reason to assume that a given user name belongs to the same person on all hosts. For example, the user joe who connects from office.example.com need not be the same person as the user joe who connects from home.example.com. MySQL handles this by enabling you to distinguish users on different hosts that happen to have the same name: You can grant one set of privileges for connections by joe from office.example.com, and a different set of privileges for connections by joe from home.example.com. To see what privileges a given account has, use the SHOW GRANTS statement. For example:

SHOW GRANTS FOR 'joe'@'office.example.com';
SHOW GRANTS FOR 'joe'@'home.example.com';

Internally, the server stores privilege information in the grant tables of the mysql system database. The MySQL server reads the contents of these tables into memory when it starts and bases access-control decisions on the in-memory copies of the grant tables.

MySQL access control involves two stages when you run a client program that connects to the server:

Stage 1: The server accepts or rejects the connection based on your identity and whether you can verify your identity by supplying the correct password.
Stage 2: Assuming that you can connect, the server checks each statement you issue to determine whether you have sufficient privileges to perform it. For example, if you try to select rows from a table in a database or drop a table from the database, the server verifies that you have the `SELECT` privilege for the table or the `DROP` privilege for the database.

For a more detailed description of what happens during each stage, see Section 4.5, “Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification”, and Section 4.6, “Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification”. For help in diagnosing privilege-related problems, see Section 4.17, “Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL”.

If your privileges are changed (either by yourself or someone else) while you are connected, those changes do not necessarily take effect immediately for the next statement that you issue. For details about the conditions under which the server reloads the grant tables, see Section 4.9, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”.

There are some things that you cannot do with the MySQL privilege system:

- You cannot explicitly specify that a given user should be denied access. That is, you cannot explicitly match a user and then refuse the connection.
- You cannot specify that a user has privileges to create or drop tables in a database but not to create or drop the database itself.
- A password applies globally to an account. You cannot associate a password with a specific object such as a database, table, or routine.

4.1 Account User Names and Passwords

MySQL stores accounts in the `user` table of the `mysql` system database. An account is defined in terms of a user name and the client host or hosts from which the user can connect to the server. For information about account representation in the `user` table, see Section 4.3, “Grant Tables”.

An account may also have authentication credentials such as a password. The credentials are handled by the account authentication plugin. MySQL supports multiple authentication plugins. Some of them use built-in authentication methods, whereas others enable authentication using external authentication methods. See Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

There are several distinctions between the way user names and passwords are used by MySQL and your operating system:

- User names, as used by MySQL for authentication purposes, have nothing to do with user names (login names) as used by Windows or Unix. On Unix, most MySQL clients by default try to log in using the current Unix user name as the MySQL user name, but that is for convenience only. The default can be overridden easily, because client programs permit any user name to be specified with a `-u` or `--user` option. This means that anyone can attempt to connect to the server using any user name, so you cannot make a database secure in any way unless all MySQL accounts have passwords. Anyone who specifies a user name for an account that has no password can connect successfully to the server.

- MySQL user names are up to 32 characters long. Operating system user names may have a different maximum length.

**Warning**

The MySQL user name length limit is hardcoded in MySQL servers and clients, and trying to circumvent it by modifying the definitions of the tables in the `mysql` database does not work.

You should never alter the structure of tables in the `mysql` database in any manner whatsoever except by means of the procedure that is described in Upgrading MySQL. Attempting to redefine MySQL’s system tables in any
other fashion results in undefined and unsupported behavior. The server is free to ignore rows that become malformed as a result of such modifications.

- To authenticate client connections for accounts that use built-in authentication methods, the server uses passwords stored in the `user` table. These passwords are distinct from passwords for logging in to your operating system. There is no necessary connection between the “external” password you use to log in to a Windows or Unix machine and the password you use to access the MySQL server on that machine.

If the server authenticates a client using some other plugin, the authentication method that the plugin implements may or may not use a password stored in the `user` table. In this case, it is possible that an external password is also used to authenticate to the MySQL server.

- Passwords stored in the `user` table are encrypted using plugin-specific algorithms. For information about MySQL native password hashing, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.

- If the user name and password contain only ASCII characters, it is possible to connect to the server regardless of character set settings. To enable connections when the user name or password contain non-ASCII characters, client applications should call the `mysql_options()` C API function with the `MYSQL_SET_CHARSET_NAME` option and appropriate character set name as arguments. This causes authentication to take place using the specified character set. Otherwise, authentication fails unless the server default character set is the same as the encoding in the authentication defaults.

Standard MySQL client programs support a `--default-character-set` option that causes `mysql_options()` to be called as just described. In addition, character set autodetection is supported as described in Connection Character Sets and Collations. For programs that use a connector that is not based on the C API, the connector may provide an equivalent to `mysql_options()` that can be used instead. Check the connector documentation.

The preceding notes do not apply for `ucs2`, `utf16`, and `utf32`, which are not permitted as client character sets.

The MySQL installation process populates the grant tables with an initial `root` account, as described in Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account”, which also discusses how to assign a password to it. Thereafter, you normally set up, modify, and remove MySQL accounts using statements such as `CREATE USER`, `DROP USER`, `GRANT`, and `REVOKE`. See Section 4.7, “Adding Accounts, Assigning Privileges, and Dropping Accounts”, and Account Management Statements.

To connect to a MySQL server with a command-line client, specify user name and password options as necessary for the account that you want to use:

```
shell> mysql --user=finley --password db_name
```

If you prefer short options, the command looks like this:

```
shell> mysql -u finley -p db_name
```

If you omit the password value following the `--password` or `-p` option on the command line (as just shown), the client prompts for one. Alternatively, the password can be specified on the command line:

```
shell> mysql --user=finley --password=password db_name
shell> mysql -u finley -p password db_name
```

If you use the `-p` option, there must be no space between `-p` and the following password value.

Specifying a password on the command line should be considered insecure. See Section 2.2.1, “End-User Guidelines for Password Security”. To avoid giving the password on the command line, use an option file or a login path file. See Using Option Files, and `mysql_config_editor — MySQL Configuration Utility`. 
For additional information about specifying user names, passwords, and other connection parameters, see Connecting to the MySQL Server Using Command Options.

### 4.2 Privileges Provided by MySQL

The privileges granted to a MySQL account determine which operations the account can perform. MySQL privileges differ in the contexts in which they apply and at different levels of operation:

- Administrative privileges enable users to manage operation of the MySQL server. These privileges are global because they are not specific to a particular database.

- Database privileges apply to a database and to all objects within it. These privileges can be granted for specific databases, or globally so that they apply to all databases.

- Privileges for database objects such as tables, indexes, views, and stored routines can be granted for specific objects within a database, for all objects of a given type within a database (for example, all tables in a database), or globally for all objects of a given type in all databases.

Information about account privileges is stored in the grant tables in the `mysql` system database. For a description of the structure and contents of these tables, see Section 4.3, “Grant Tables”. The MySQL server reads the contents of the grant tables into memory when it starts, and reloads them under the circumstances indicated in Section 4.9, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”. The server bases access-control decisions on the in-memory copies of the grant tables.

#### Important

Some MySQL releases introduce changes to the grant tables to add new privileges or features. To make sure that you can take advantage of any new capabilities, update your grant tables to the current structure whenever you upgrade MySQL. See Upgrading MySQL.

The following sections summarize the available privileges, provide more detailed descriptions of each privilege, and offer usage guidelines.

- Summary of Available Privileges
- Privilege Descriptions
- Privilege-Granting Guidelines

### Summary of Available Privileges

The following table shows the privilege names used in `GRANT` and `REVOKE` statements, along with the column name associated with each privilege in the grant tables and the context in which the privilege applies.

#### Table 4.1 Permissible Privileges for GRANT and REVOKE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege</th>
<th>Grant Table Column</th>
<th>Context</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL [PRIVILEGES]</td>
<td>Synonym for “all privileges”</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER</td>
<td>Alter_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTER ROUTINE</td>
<td>Alter_routine_priv</td>
<td>Stored routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE</td>
<td>Create_priv</td>
<td>Databases, tables, or indexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE ROUTINE</td>
<td>Create_routine_priv</td>
<td>Stored routines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TABLESPACE</td>
<td>Create_tablespace_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE TEMPORARY TABLES</td>
<td>Create_tmp_table_priv</td>
<td>Tables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CREATE USER</td>
<td>Create_user_priv</td>
<td>Server administration</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Privilege Descriptions

The following list provides general descriptions of each privilege available in MySQL. Particular SQL statements might have more specific privilege requirements than indicated here. If so, the description for the statement in question provides the details.

- **ALL, ALL PRIVILEGES**
  These privilege specifiers are shorthand for “all privileges available at a given privilege level” (except GRANT OPTION). For example, granting **ALL** at the global or table level grants all global privileges or all table-level privileges, respectively.

- **ALTER**
  Enables use of the `ALTER TABLE` statement to change the structure of tables. `ALTER TABLE` also requires the `CREATE` and `INSERT` privileges. Renaming a table requires `ALTER` and `DROP` on the old table, `CREATE`, and `INSERT` on the new table.

- **ALTER ROUTINE**
  Enables use of statements that alter or drop stored routines (stored procedures and functions).

- **CREATE**
  Enables use of statements that create new databases and tables.
Privilege Descriptions

- **CREATE ROUTINE**
  Enables use of statements that create stored routines (stored procedures and functions).

- **CREATE TABLESPACE**
  Enables use of statements that create, alter, or drop tablespaces and log file groups.

- **CREATE TEMPORARY TABLES**
  Enables the creation of temporary tables using the `CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE` statement.
  After a session has created a temporary table, the server performs no further privilege checks on the table. The creating session can perform any operation on the table, such as `DROP TABLE`, `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `SELECT`. For more information, see [CREATE TEMPORARY TABLE Syntax](#).

- **CREATE USER**
  Enables use of the `ALTER USER`, `CREATE USER`, `DROP USER`, `RENAME USER`, and `REVOKE ALL PRIVILEGES` statements.

- **CREATE VIEW**
  Enables use of the `CREATE VIEW` statement.

- **DELETE**
  Enables rows to be deleted from tables in a database.

- **DROP**
  Enables use of statements that drop (remove) existing databases, tables, and views. The `DROP` privilege is required to use the `ALTER TABLE ... DROP PARTITION` statement on a partitioned table. The `DROP` privilege is also required for `TRUNCATE TABLE`.

- **EVENT**
  Enables use of statements that create, alter, drop, or display events for the Event Scheduler.

- **EXECUTE**
  Enables use of statements that execute stored routines (stored procedures and functions).

- **FILE**
  Affects the following operations and server behaviors:
  - Enables reading and writing files on the server host using the `LOAD DATA` and `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` statements and the `LOAD_FILE()` function. A user who has the `FILE` privilege can read any file on the server host that is either world-readable or readable by the MySQL server. (This implies the user can read any file in any database directory, because the server can access any of those files.)
  - Enables creating new files in any directory where the MySQL server has write access. This includes the server's data directory containing the files that implement the privilege tables.
  - As of MySQL 5.7.17, enables use of the `DATA DIRECTORY` or `INDEX DIRECTORY` table option for the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

  As a security measure, the server does not overwrite existing files.

  To limit the location in which files can be read and written, set the `secure_file_priv` system variable to a specific directory. See [Server System Variables](#).
• **GRANT OPTION**

  Enables you to grant to or revoke from other users those privileges that you yourself possess.

• **INDEX**

  Enables use of statements that create or drop (remove) indexes. **INDEX** applies to existing tables. If you have the **CREATE** privilege for a table, you can include index definitions in the **CREATE TABLE** statement.

• **INSERT**

  Enables rows to be inserted into tables in a database. **INSERT** is also required for the **ANALYZE TABLE**, **OPTIMIZE TABLE**, and **REPAIR TABLE** table-maintenance statements.

• **LOCK TABLES**

  Enables use of explicit **LOCK TABLES** statements to lock tables for which you have the **SELECT** privilege. This includes use of write locks, which prevents other sessions from reading the locked table.

• **PROCESS**

  Enables display of information about the threads executing within the server (that is, information about the statements being executed by sessions). The privilege enables use of **SHOW PROCESSLIST** or **mysqladmin processlist** to see threads belonging to other accounts; you can always see your own threads. The **PROCESS** privilege also enables use of **SHOW ENGINE**.

• **PROXY**

  Enables one user to impersonate or become known as another user. See Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

• **REFERENCES**

  Creation of a foreign key constraint requires the **REFERENCES** privilege for the parent table.

• **RELOAD**

  Enables use of the **FLUSH** statement. It also enables **mysqladmin** commands that are equivalent to **FLUSH** operations: **flush-hosts**, **flush-logs**, **flush-privileges**, **flush-status**, **flush-tables**, **flush-threads**, **refresh**, and **reload**.

  The **reload** command tells the server to reload the grant tables into memory. **flush-privileges** is a synonym for **reload**. The **refresh** command closes and reopens the log files and flushes all tables. The other **flush-xxx** commands perform functions similar to **refresh**, but are more specific and may be preferable in some instances. For example, if you want to flush just the log files, **flush-logs** is a better choice than **refresh**.

  The **RELOAD** privilege also enables use of the **RESET MASTER** and **RESET SLAVE** statements.

• **REPLICATION CLIENT**

  Enables use of the **SHOW MASTER STATUS**, **SHOW SLAVE STATUS**, and **SHOW BINARY LOGS** statements. Grant this privilege to accounts that are used by slave servers to connect to the current server as their master.

• **REPLICATION SLAVE**

  Enables the account to request updates that have been made to databases on the master server, using the **SHOW SLAVE HOSTS**, **SHOW RELAYLOG EVENTS**, and **SHOW BINLOG EVENTS** statements. This privilege is also required to use the **mysqlbinlog** options --read-from-
remote-server (−R) and --read-from-remote-master. Grant this privilege to accounts that are used by slave servers to connect to the current server as their master.

• **SELECT**

Enables rows to be selected from tables in a database. SELECT statements require the SELECT privilege only if they actually access tables. Some SELECT statements do not access tables and can be executed without permission for any database. For example, you can use SELECT as a simple calculator to evaluate expressions that make no reference to tables:

```sql
SELECT 1+1;
SELECT PI()*2;
```

The SELECT privilege is also needed for other statements that read column values. For example, SELECT is needed for columns referenced on the right hand side of `col_name=expr` assignment in UPDATE statements or for columns named in the WHERE clause of DELETE or UPDATE statements.

The SELECT privilege is needed for tables or views used with EXPLAIN, including any underlying tables in view definitions.

• **SHOW DATABASES**

Enables the account to see database names by issuing the SHOW DATABASE statement. Accounts that do not have this privilege see only databases for which they have some privileges, and cannot use the statement at all if the server was started with the --skip-show-database option.

Caution

Because a global privilege is considered a privilege for all databases, any global privilege enables a user to see all database names with SHOW DATABASES or by examining the INFORMATION_SCHEMA SCHEMATA table.

• **SHOW VIEW**

Enables use of the SHOW CREATE VIEW statement. This privilege is also needed for views used with EXPLAIN.

• **SHUTDOWN**

Enables use of the SHUTDOWN statement, the mysqladmin shutdown command, and the mysql_shutdown() C API function.

• **SUPER**

Affects the following operations and server behaviors:

- Enables server configuration changes by modifying global system variables. For some system variables, setting the session value also requires the SUPER privilege. If a system variable is restricted and requires a special privilege to set the session value, the variable description indicates that restriction. Examples include `binlog_format`, `sql_log_bin`, and `sql_log_off`. See also System Variable Privileges.

- Enables changes to global transaction characteristics (see SET TRANSACTION Syntax).

- Enables the account to start and stop replication, including Group Replication.

- Enables use of the CHANGE MASTER TO and CHANGE REPLICATION FILTER statements.

- Enables binary log control by means of the PURGE BINARY LOGS and BINLOG statements.

- Enables setting the effective authorization ID when executing a view or stored program. A user with this privilege can specify any account in the DEFINER attribute of a view or stored program.
Privilege-Granting Guidelines

• Enables use of the `CREATE SERVER`, `ALTER SERVER`, and `DROP SERVER` statements.

• Enables use of the `mysqladmin debug` command.

• Enables InnoDB encryption key rotation.

• Enables reading the DES key file by the `DES_ENCRYPT()` function.

• Enables execution of Version Tokens user-defined functions.

• Enables control over client connections not permitted to non-SUPER accounts:
  • Enables use of the `KILL` statement or `mysqladmin kill` command to kill threads belonging to other accounts. (An account can always kill its own threads.)
  • The server does not execute `init_connect` system variable content when SUPER clients connect.
  • The server accepts one connection from a SUPER client even if the connection limit configured by the `max_connections` system variable is reached.
  • A server in offline mode (offline_mode enabled) does not terminate SUPER client connections at the next client request, and accepts new connections from SUPER clients.
  • Updates can be performed even when the `read_only` system variable is enabled. This applies to explicit table updates, and to use of account-management statements such as `GRANT` and `REVOKE` that update tables implicitly.

You may also need the SUPER privilege to create or alter stored functions if binary logging is enabled, as described in Stored Program Binary Logging.

• TRIGGER

Enables trigger operations. You must have this privilege for a table to create, drop, execute, or display triggers for that table.

When a trigger is activated (by a user who has privileges to execute `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statements for the table associated with the trigger), trigger execution requires that the user who defined the trigger still have the TRIGGER privilege for the table.

• UPDATE

Enables rows to be updated in tables in a database.

• USAGE

This privilege specifier stands for “no privileges.” It is used at the global level with `GRANT` to modify account attributes such as resource limits or SSL characteristics without naming specific account privileges in the privilege list. `SHOW GRANTS` displays USAGE to indicate that an account has no privileges at a privilege level.

Privilege-Granting Guidelines

It is a good idea to grant to an account only those privileges that it needs. You should exercise particular caution in granting the FILE and administrative privileges:

• FILE can be abused to read into a database table any files that the MySQL server can read on the server host. This includes all world-readable files and files in the server’s data directory. The table can then be accessed using `SELECT` to transfer its contents to the client host.
• **GRANT OPTION** enables users to give their privileges to other users. Two users that have different privileges and with the **GRANT OPTION** privilege are able to combine privileges.

• **ALTER** may be used to subvert the privilege system by renaming tables.

• **SHUTDOWN** can be abused to deny service to other users entirely by terminating the server.

• **PROCESS** can be used to view the plain text of currently executing statements, including statements that set or change passwords.

• **SUPER** can be used to terminate other sessions or change how the server operates.

• Privileges granted for the **mysql** system database itself can be used to change passwords and other access privilege information:

  • Passwords are stored encrypted, so a malicious user cannot simply read them to know the plain text password. However, a user with write access to the **mysql.user** system table **authentication_string** column can change an account's password, and then connect to the MySQL server using that account.

  • **INSERT** or **UPDATE** granted for the **mysql** system database enable a user to add privileges or modify existing privileges, respectively.

  • **DROP** for the **mysql** system database enables a user to remote privilege tables, or even the database itself.

### 4.3 Grant Tables

The **mysql** system database includes several grant tables that contain information about user accounts and the privileges held by them. This section describes those tables. For information about other tables in the system database, see The **mysql** System Database.

The discussion here describes the underlying structure of the grant tables and how the server uses their contents when interacting with clients. However, normally you do not modify the grant tables directly. Modifications occur indirectly when you use account-management statements such as **CREATE USER, GRANT, and REVOKE** to set up accounts and control the privileges available to each one. See Account Management Statements. When you use such statements to perform account manipulations, the server modifies the grant tables on your behalf.

#### Note

Direct modification of grant tables using statements such as **INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE** is discouraged and done at your own risk. The server is free to ignore rows that become malformed as a result of such modifications.

As of MySQL 5.7.18, for any operation that modifies a grant table, the server checks whether the table has the expected structure and produces an error if not. To update the tables to the expected structure, perform the MySQL upgrade procedure. See Upgrading MySQL.

• **Grant Table Overview**

• **The user and db Grant Tables**

• **The tables_priv and columns_priv Grant Tables**

• **The procs_priv Grant Table**

• **The proxies_priv Grant Table**

• **Grant Table Scope Column Properties**

• **Grant Table Privilege Column Properties**
Grant Table Overview

These MySQL database tables contain grant information:

- **user**: User accounts, global privileges, and other non-privilege columns.
- **db**: Database-level privileges.
- **tables_priv**: Table-level privileges.
- **columns_priv**: Column-level privileges.
- **procs_priv**: Stored procedure and function privileges.
- **proxies_priv**: Proxy-user privileges.

Each grant table contains scope columns and privilege columns:

- **Scope columns** determine the scope of each row in the tables; that is, the context in which the row applies. For example, a `user` table row with `Host` and `User` values of `'h1.example.net'` and `'bob'` applies to authenticating connections made to the server from the host `h1.example.net` by a client that specifies a user name of `bob`. Similarly, a `db` table row with `Host`, `User`, and `Db` column values of `'h1.example.net'`, `'bob'` and `'reports'` applies when `bob` connects from the host `h1.example.net` to access the `reports` database. The `tables_priv` and `columns_priv` tables contain scope columns indicating tables or table/column combinations to which each row applies. The `procs_priv` scope columns indicate the stored routine to which each row applies.

- **Privilege columns** indicate which privileges a table row grants; that is, which operations it permits to be performed. The server combines the information in the various grant tables to form a complete description of a user's privileges. Section 4.6, "Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification", describes the rules for this.

In addition, a grant table may contain columns used for purposes other than scope or privilege assessment.

The server uses the grant tables in the following manner:

- The `user` table scope columns determine whether to reject or permit incoming connections. For permitted connections, any privileges granted in the `user` table indicate the user's global privileges. Any privileges granted in this table apply to all databases on the server.

  **Caution**

  Because a global privilege is considered a privilege for all databases, any global privilege enables a user to see all database names with `SHOW DATABASES` or by examining the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.SCHEMATA` table.

- The `db` table scope columns determine which users can access which databases from which hosts. The privilege columns determine the permitted operations. A privilege granted at the database level applies to the database and to all objects in the database, such as tables and stored programs.

- The `tables_priv` and `columns_priv` tables are similar to the `db` table, but are more fine-grained: They apply at the table and column levels rather than at the database level. A privilege granted at the table level applies to the table and to all its columns. A privilege granted at the column level applies only to a specific column.

- The `procs_priv` table applies to stored routines (stored procedures and functions). A privilege granted at the routine level applies only to a single procedure or function.

- The `proxies_priv` table indicates which users can act as proxies for other users and whether a user can grant the `PROXY` privilege to other users.

The server reads the contents of the grant tables into memory when it starts. You can tell it to reload the tables by issuing a `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement or executing a `mysqladmin flush-
privileges or mysqladmin reload command. Changes to the grant tables take effect as indicated in Section 4.9, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”.

When you modify an account, it is a good idea to verify that your changes have the intended effect. To check the privileges for a given account, use the SHOW GRANTS statement. For example, to determine the privileges that are granted to an account with user name and host name values of bob and pc84.example.com, use this statement:

```
SHOW GRANTS FOR 'bob'@'pc84.example.com';
```

To display nonprivilege properties of an account, use SHOW CREATE USER:

```
SHOW CREATE USER 'bob'@'pc84.example.com';
```

### The user and db Grant Tables

The server uses the user and db tables in the mysql database at both the first and second stages of access control (see Chapter 4, Access Control and Account Management). The columns in the user and db tables are shown here.

#### Table 4.2 user and db Table Columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>user</th>
<th>db</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope columns</strong></td>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
<td>Db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Privilege columns</strong></td>
<td>Select_priv</td>
<td>Select_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Insert_priv</td>
<td>Insert_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Update_priv</td>
<td>Update_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delete_priv</td>
<td>Delete_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index_priv</td>
<td>Index_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alter_priv</td>
<td>Alter_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create_priv</td>
<td>Create_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drop_priv</td>
<td>Drop_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grant_priv</td>
<td>Grant_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create_view_priv</td>
<td>Create_view_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Show_view_priv</td>
<td>Show_view_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create_routine_priv</td>
<td>Create_routine_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alter_routine_priv</td>
<td>Alter_routine_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Execute_priv</td>
<td>Execute_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trigger_priv</td>
<td>Trigger_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Event_priv</td>
<td>Event_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Create_tmp_table_priv</td>
<td>Create_tmp_table_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lock_tables_priv</td>
<td>Lock_tables_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>References_priv</td>
<td>References_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reload_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Shutdown_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Process_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The user and db Grant Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>user</th>
<th>db</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Show_db_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Super_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repl_slave_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repl_client_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_user_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Create_tablespace_priv</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Security columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ssl_type</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ssl_cipher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x509_issuer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>x509_subject</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>plugin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>authentication_string</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>password_expired</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>password_last_changed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>password_lifetime</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>account_locked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Resource control columns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>max_questions</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>max_updates</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>max_connections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>max_user_connections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The user table plugin and authentication_string columns store authentication plugin and credential information.

The server uses the plugin named in the plugin column of an account row to authenticate connection attempts for the account.

The plugin column must be nonempty. At startup, and at runtime when FLUSH PRIVILEGES is executed, the server checks user table rows. For any row with an empty plugin column, the server writes a warning to the error log of this form:

```
[Warning] User entry 'user_name'@'host_name' has an empty plugin value. The user will be ignored and no one can login with this user anymore.
```

To address this problem, see Section 6.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin”.

The password_expired column permits DBAs to expire account passwords and require users to reset their password. The default password_expired value is 'N', but can be set to 'Y' with the ALTER USER statement. After an account's password has been expired, all operations performed by the account in subsequent connections to the server result in an error until the user issues an ALTER USER statement to establish a new account password.

**Note**

Although it is possible to “reset” an expired password by setting it to its current value, it is preferable, as a matter of good policy, to choose a different password.
password_last_changed is a TIMESTAMP column indicating when the password was last changed. The value is non-NULL only for accounts that use MySQL built-in authentication methods (accounts that use an authentication plugin of mysql_native_password or sha256_password). The value is NULL for other accounts, such as those authenticated using an external authentication system.

password_last_changed is updated by the CREATE USER, ALTER USER, and SET PASSWORD statements, and by GRANT statements that create an account or change an account password.

password_lifetime indicates the account password lifetime, in days. If the password is past its lifetime (assessed using the password_last_changed column), the server considers the password expired when clients connect using the account. A value of \( N \) greater than zero means that the password must be changed every \( N \) days. A value of 0 disables automatic password expiration. If the value is NULL (the default), the global expiration policy applies, as defined by the default_password_lifetime system variable.

account_locked indicates whether the account is locked (see Section 4.15, “Account Locking”).

The tables_priv and columns_priv Grant Tables

During the second stage of access control, the server performs request verification to ensure that each client has sufficient privileges for each request that it issues. In addition to the user and db grant tables, the server may also consult the tables_priv and columns_priv tables for requests that involve tables. The latter tables provide finer privilege control at the table and column levels. They have the columns shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>tables_priv</th>
<th>columns_priv</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope columns</td>
<td>Host</td>
<td>Host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Db</td>
<td>Db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User</td>
<td>User</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Table_name</td>
<td>Table_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege columns</td>
<td>Table_priv</td>
<td>Column_priv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Column_priv</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other columns</td>
<td>Timestamp</td>
<td>Timestamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grantor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Timestamp and Grantor columns are set to the current timestamp and the CURRENT_USER value, respectively, but are otherwise unused.

The procs_priv Grant Table

For verification of requests that involve stored routines, the server may consult the procs_priv table, which has the columns shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>procs_priv</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope columns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine_name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine_type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege columns</td>
<td>Proc_priv</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The proxies_priv Grant Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>procs_priv</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Other columns</td>
<td>Timestamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Grantor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `Routine_type` column is an `ENUM` column with values of 'FUNCTION' or 'PROCEDURE' to indicate the type of routine the row refers to. This column enables privileges to be granted separately for a function and a procedure with the same name.

The `Timestamp` and `Grantor` columns are unused.

The proxies_priv Grant Table

The `proxies_priv` table records information about proxy accounts. It has these columns:

- **Host, User**: The proxy account; that is, the account that has the `PROXY` privilege for the proxied account.
- **Proxied_host, Proxied_user**: The proxied account.
- **Grantor, Timestamp**: Unused.
- **With_grant**: Whether the proxy account can grant the `PROXY` privilege to other accounts.

For an account to be able to grant the `PROXY` privilege to other accounts, it must have a row in the `proxies_priv` table with `With_grant` set to 1 and `Proxied_host` and `Proxied_user` set to indicate the account or accounts for which the privilege can be granted. For example, the `'root'@'localhost'` account created during MySQL installation has a row in the `proxies_priv` table that enables granting the `PROXY` privilege for `'@'`, that is, for all users and all hosts. This enables `root` to set up proxy users, as well as to delegate to other accounts the authority to set up proxy users. See Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

Grant Table Scope Column Properties

Scope columns in the grant tables contain strings. The default value for each is the empty string. The following table shows the number of characters permitted in each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Maximum Permitted Characters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Host, Proxied_host</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User, Proxied_user</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Db</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table_name</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column_name</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Routine_name</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`Host` and `Proxied_host` values are converted to lowercase before being stored in the grant tables.

For access-checking purposes, comparisons of `User, Proxied_user, Password, authentication_string, Db, and Table_name` values are case-sensitive. Comparisons of `Host, Proxied_host, Column_name, and Routine_name` values are not case-sensitive.

Grant Table Privilege Column Properties

The `user` and `db` tables list each privilege in a separate column that is declared as `ENUM('N', 'Y') DEFAULT 'N'`. In other words, each privilege can be disabled or enabled, with the default being disabled.
The `tables_priv`, `columns_priv`, and `procs_priv` tables declare the privilege columns as SET columns. Values in these columns can contain any combination of the privileges controlled by the table. Only those privileges listed in the column value are enabled.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table Name</th>
<th>Column Name</th>
<th>Possible Set Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>tables_priv</code></td>
<td><code>Table_priv</code></td>
<td>'Select', 'Insert', 'Update', 'Delete', 'Create', 'Drop', 'Grant', 'References', 'Index', 'Alter', 'Create View', 'Show view', 'Trigger'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tables_priv</code></td>
<td><code>Column_priv</code></td>
<td>'Select', 'Insert', 'Update', 'References'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>columns_priv</code></td>
<td><code>Column_priv</code></td>
<td>'Select', 'Insert', 'Update', 'References'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>procs_priv</code></td>
<td><code>Proc_priv</code></td>
<td>'Execute', 'Alter Routine', 'Grant'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Only the `user` table specifies administrative privileges, such as `RELOAD` and `SHUTDOWN`. Administrative operations are operations on the server itself and are not database-specific, so there is no reason to list these privileges in the other grant tables. Consequently, the server need consult only the `user` table to determine whether a user can perform an administrative operation.

The `FILE` privilege also is specified only in the `user` table. It is not an administrative privilege as such, but a user's ability to read or write files on the server host is independent of the database being accessed.

### 4.4 Specifying Account Names

MySQL account names consist of a user name and a host name, which enables creation of distinct accounts for users with the same user name who can connect from different hosts. This section describes how to write account names, including special values and wildcard rules.

In SQL statements such as `CREATE USER`, `GRANT`, and `SET PASSWORD`, account names follow these rules:

- **Account name syntax** is `user_name'@'host_name'`.  
- **An account name consisting only of a user name** is equivalent to `user_name'@'%'`. For example, `'me' is equivalent to `'me'@'%'`.  
- **The user name and host name need not be quoted** if they are legal as unquoted identifiers. Quotes are necessary to specify a `user_name` string containing special characters (such as space or `-`), or a `host_name` string containing special characters or wildcard characters (such as `.`, `.` or `%`). For example, in the account name `test-user@'%.com'`, both the user name and host name parts require quotes.  
- **Quote user names and host names as identifiers or as strings**, using either backticks (`), single quotation marks ('), or double quotation marks ("). For string-quoting and identifier-quoting guidelines, see [String Literals](#) and [Schema Object Names](#).  
- **The user name and host name parts, if quoted, must be quoted separately.** That is, write `'me'@'localhost'`, not `'me@localhost'`. The latter is actually equivalent to `'me@localhost'@'%'`.  
- **A reference to the `CURRENT_USER` or `CURRENT_USER()` function** is equivalent to specifying the current client's user name and host name literally.
MySQL stores account names in grant tables in the `mysql` system database using separate columns for the user name and host name parts:

- The `user` table contains one row for each account. The `User` and `Host` columns store the user name and host name. This table also indicates which global privileges the account has.

- Other grant tables indicate privileges an account has for databases and objects within databases. These tables have `User` and `Host` columns to store the account name. Each row in these tables associates with the account in the `user` table that has the same `User` and `Host` values.

- For access-checking purposes, comparisons of User values are case-sensitive. Comparisons of Host values are not case sensitive.

For additional detail about the properties of user names and host names as stored in the grant tables, such as maximum length, see Grant Table Scope Column Properties.

User names and host names have certain special values or wildcard conventions, as described following.

The user name part of an account name is either a nonblank value that literally matches the user name for incoming connection attempts, or a blank value (empty string) that matches any user name. An account with a blank user name is an anonymous user. To specify an anonymous user in SQL statements, use a quoted empty user name part, such as `''@localhost`.

The host name part of an account name can take many forms, and wildcards are permitted:

- A host value can be a host name or an IP address (IPv4 or IPv6). The name `localhost` indicates the local host. The IP address `127.0.0.1` indicates the IPv4 loopback interface. The IP address `::1` indicates the IPv6 loopback interface.

- The `%` and `_` wildcard characters are permitted in host name or IP address values. These have the same meaning as for pattern-matching operations performed with the `LIKE` operator. For example, a host value of `%` matches any host name, whereas a value of `%.mysql.com` matches any host in the `mysql.com` domain. `198.51.100.%` matches any host in the 198.51.100 class C network.

Because IP wildcard values are permitted in host values (for example, `198.51.100.%` to match every host on a subnet), someone could try to exploit this capability by naming a host `198.51.100.somewhere.com`. To foil such attempts, MySQL does not perform matching on host names that start with digits and a dot. For example, if a host is named `1.2.example.com`, its name never matches the host part of account names. An IP wildcard value can match only IP addresses, not host names.

- For a host value specified as an IPv4 address, a netmask can be given to indicate how many address bits to use for the network number. Netmask notation cannot be used for IPv6 addresses.

The syntax is `host_ip/netmask`. For example:

```sql
CREATE USER 'david'@'198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0';
```

This enables `david` to connect from any client host having an IP address `client_ip` for which the following condition is true:

```sql
client_ip & netmask = host_ip
```

That is, for the `CREATE USER` statement just shown:

```sql
client_ip & 255.255.255.0 = 198.51.100.0
```

IP addresses that satisfy this condition range from `198.51.100.0` to `198.51.100.255`. 

---

49
A netmask typically begins with bits set to 1, followed by bits set to 0. Examples:

- **198.0.0.0/255.0.0.0**: Any host on the 198 class A network
- **198.51.100.0/255.255.0.0**: Any host on the 198.51 class B network
- **198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0**: Any host on the 198.51.100 class C network
- **198.51.100.1**: Only the host with this specific IP address

The server performs matching of host values in account names against the client host using the value returned by the system DNS resolver for the client host name or IP address. Except in the case that the account host value is specified using netmask notation, the server performs this comparison as a string match, even for an account host value given as an IP address. This means that you should specify account host values in the same format used by DNS. Here are examples of problems to watch out for:

- Suppose that a host on the local network has a fully qualified name of `host1.example.com`. If DNS returns name lookups for this host as `host1.example.com`, use that name in account host values. If DNS returns just `host1`, use `host1` instead.

- If DNS returns the IP address for a given host as `198.51.100.2`, that will match an account host value of `198.51.100.2` but not `198.051.100.2`. Similarly, it will match an account host pattern like `198.51.100.%` but not `198.051.100.%`.

To avoid problems like these, it is advisable to check the format in which your DNS returns host names and addresses. Use values in the same format in MySQL account names.

### 4.5 Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification

When you attempt to connect to a MySQL server, the server accepts or rejects the connection based on these conditions:

- Your identity and whether you can verify your identity by supplying the correct password
- Whether your account is locked or unlocked

The server checks credentials first, then account locking state. A failure for either step causes the server to deny access to you completely. Otherwise, the server accepts the connection, and then enters Stage 2 and waits for requests.

Credential checking is performed using the three `user` table scope columns (Host, User, and authentication_string). Locking state is recorded in the `user` table `account_locked` column. The server accepts the connection only if the Host and User columns in some user table row match the client host name and user name, the client supplies the password specified in that row, and the account_locked value is `'N'`. The rules for permissible Host and User values are given in Section 4.4, “Specifying Account Names”. Account locking can be changed with the `ALTER USER` statement.

Your identity is based on two pieces of information:

- The client host from which you connect
- Your MySQL user name

If the User column value is nonblank, the user name in an incoming connection must match exactly. If the User value is blank, it matches any user name. If the user table row that matches an incoming connection has a blank user name, the user is considered to be an anonymous user with no name, not a user with the name that the client actually specified. This means that a blank user name is used for all further access checking for the duration of the connection (that is, during Stage 2).
The `authentication_string` column can be blank. This is not a wildcard and does not mean that any password matches. It means that the user must connect without specifying a password. If the server authenticates a client using a plugin, the authentication method that the plugin implements may or may not use the password in the `authentication_string` column. In this case, it is possible that an external password is also used to authenticate to the MySQL server.

Nonblank `authentication_string` values in the `user` table represent encrypted passwords. MySQL does not store passwords as cleartext for anyone to see. Rather, the password supplied by a user who is attempting to connect is encrypted (using the password hashing method implemented by the account authentication plugin). The encrypted password then is used during the connection process when checking whether the password is correct. This is done without the encrypted password ever traveling over the connection. See Section 4.1, “Account User Names and Passwords”.

From MySQL's point of view, the encrypted password is the real password, so you should never give anyone access to it. In particular, do not give nonadministrative users read access to tables in the `mysql` system database.

The following table shows how various combinations of `User` and `Host` values in the `user` table apply to incoming connections.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Value</th>
<th>Host Value</th>
<th>Permissible Connections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'h1.example.net'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from h1.example.net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>''</td>
<td>'h1.example.net'</td>
<td>Any user, connecting from h1.example.net</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'%'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from any host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>''</td>
<td>'%'</td>
<td>Any user, connecting from any host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'%.example.net'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from any host in the example.net domain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'x.example.%'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from x.example.net, x.example.com, x.example.edu, and so on; this is probably not useful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'198.51.100.177'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from the host with IP address 198.51.100.177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'198.51.100.%'</td>
<td>fred, connecting from any host in the 198.51.100 class C subnet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'fred'</td>
<td>'198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0'</td>
<td>Same as previous example</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is possible for the client host name and user name of an incoming connection to match more than one row in the `user` table. The preceding set of examples demonstrates this: Several of the entries shown match a connection from `h1.example.net` by `fred`.

When multiple matches are possible, the server must determine which of them to use. It resolves this issue as follows:

- Whenever the server reads the `user` table into memory, it sorts the rows.
- When a client attempts to connect, the server looks through the rows in sorted order.
- The server uses the first row that matches the client host name and user name.

The server uses sorting rules that order rows with the most-specific `Host` values first. Literal host names and IP addresses are the most specific. (The specificity of a literal IP address is not affected by whether it has a netmask, so `198.51.100.13` and `198.51.100.0/255.255.255.0` are considered equally specific.) The pattern `'%` means “any host” and is least specific. The empty string `''` also means “any host” but sorts after `'%'`. Rows with the same `Host` value are ordered with the most-specific `User` values first (a blank `User` value means “any user” and is least specific). For rows with equally-specific `Host` and `User` values, the order is nondeterministic.
To see how this works, suppose that the `user` table looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>root</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>root</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the server reads the table into memory, it sorts the rows using the rules just described. The result after sorting looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td>root</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localhost</td>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>root</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a client attempts to connect, the server looks through the sorted rows and uses the first match found. For a connection from `localhost` by `jeffrey`, two of the rows from the table match: the one with `Host` and `User` values of 'localhost' and '', and the one with values of '%' and 'jeffrey'. The 'localhost' row appears first in sorted order, so that is the one the server uses.

Here is another example. Suppose that the `user` table looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h1.example.net</td>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sorted table looks like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Host</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>h1.example.net</td>
<td></td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>%</td>
<td>jeffrey</td>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A connection by `jeffrey` from `h1.example.net` is matched by the first row, whereas a connection by `jeffrey` from any host is matched by the second.

**Note**

It is a common misconception to think that, for a given user name, all rows that explicitly name that user are used first when the server attempts to find a match for the connection. This is not true. The preceding example illustrates this, where a connection from `h1.example.net` by `jeffrey` is first matched not by the row containing 'jeffrey' as the `User` column value, but by the row with no user name. As a result, `jeffrey` is authenticated as an anonymous user, even though he specified a user name when connecting.

If you are able to connect to the server, but your privileges are not what you expect, you probably are being authenticated as some other account. To find out what account the server used to authenticate you, use the `CURRENT_USER()` function. (See Information Functions.) It returns a value
in `user_name@host_name` format that indicates the User and Host values from the matching user table row. Suppose that `jeffrey` connects and issues the following query:

```sql
mysql> SELECT CURRENT_USER();
+----------------+
| CURRENT_USER() |
+----------------+
| @localhost     |
```

The result shown here indicates that the matching user table row had a blank User column value. In other words, the server is treating `jeffrey` as an anonymous user.

Another way to diagnose authentication problems is to print out the user table and sort it by hand to see where the first match is being made.

### 4.6 Access Control, Stage 2: Request Verification

After you establish a connection, the server enters Stage 2 of access control. For each request that you issue through that connection, the server determines what operation you want to perform, then checks whether you have sufficient privileges to do so. This is where the privilege columns in the grant tables come into play. These privileges can come from any of the user, db, tables_priv, columns_priv, or procs_priv tables. (You may find it helpful to refer to Section 4.3, “Grant Tables”, which lists the columns present in each grant table.)

The user table grants global privileges. The user table row for an account indicates the account privileges that apply on a global basis no matter what the default database is. For example, if the user table grants you the DELETE privilege, you can delete rows from any table in any database on the server host. It is wise to grant privileges in the user table only to people who need them, such as database administrators. For other users, leave all privileges in the user table set to 'N' and grant privileges at more specific levels only (for particular databases, tables, columns, or routines).

The db table grants database-specific privileges. Values in the scope columns of this table can take the following forms:

- A blank User value matches the anonymous user. A nonblank value matches literally; there are no wildcards in user names.
- The wildcard characters % and _ can be used in the Host and Db columns. These have the same meaning as for pattern-matching operations performed with the LIKE operator. If you want to use either character literally when granting privileges, you must escape it with a backslash. For example, to include the underscore character (_) as part of a database name, specify it as \_ in the GRANT statement.
- A '%' or blank Host value means “any host.”
- A '%' or blank Db value means “any database.”

The server reads the db table into memory and sorts it at the same time that it reads the user table. The server sorts the db table based on the Host, Db, and User scope columns. As with the user table, sorting puts the most-specific values first and least-specific values last, and when the server looks for matching rows, it uses the first match that it finds.

The tables_priv, columns_priv, and procs_priv tables grant table-specific, column-specific, and routine-specific privileges. Values in the scope columns of these tables can take the following forms:

- The wildcard characters % and _ can be used in the Host column. These have the same meaning as for pattern-matching operations performed with the LIKE operator.
- A '%' or blank Host value means “any host.”
• The Db, Table_name, Column_name, and Routine_name columns cannot contain wildcards or be blank.

The server sorts the tables_priv, columns_priv, and procs_priv tables based on the Host, Db, and User columns. This is similar to db table sorting, but simpler because only the Host column can contain wildcards.

The server uses the sorted tables to verify each request that it receives. For requests that require administrative privileges such as SHUTDOWN or RELOAD, the server checks only the user table row because that is the only table that specifies administrative privileges. The server grants access if the row permits the requested operation and denies access otherwise. For example, if you want to execute mysqladmin shutdown but your user table row does not grant the SHUTDOWN privilege to you, the server denies access without even checking the db table. (The latter table contains no Shutdown_priv column, so there is no need to check it.)

For database-related requests (INSERT, UPDATE, and so on), the server first checks the user's global privileges in the user table row. If the row permits the requested operation, access is granted. If the global privileges in the user table are insufficient, the server determines the user's database-specific privileges from the db table:

The server looks in the db table for a match on the Host, Db, and User columns. The Host and User columns are matched to the connecting user's host name and MySQL user name. The Db column is matched to the database that the user wants to access. If there is no row for the Host and User, access is denied.

After determining the database-specific privileges granted by the db table rows, the server adds them to the global privileges granted by the user table. If the result permits the requested operation, access is granted. Otherwise, the server successively checks the user's table and column privileges in the tables_priv and columns_priv tables, adds those to the user's privileges, and permits or denies access based on the result. For stored-routine operations, the server uses the procs_priv table rather than tables_priv and columns_priv.

Expressed in boolean terms, the preceding description of how a user's privileges are calculated may be summarized like this:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>global privileges</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>database privileges AND host privileges</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>table privileges</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>column privileges</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>routine privileges</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

It may not be apparent why, if the global privileges are initially found to be insufficient for the requested operation, the server adds those privileges to the database, table, and column privileges later. The reason is that a request might require more than one type of privilege. For example, if you execute an INSERT INTO ... SELECT statement, you need both the INSERT and the SELECT privileges. Your privileges might be such that the user table row grants one privilege global and the db table row grants the other specifically for the relevant database. In this case, you have the necessary privileges to perform the request, but the server cannot tell that from either your global or database privileges alone. It must make an access-control decision based on the combined privileges.

4.7 Adding Accounts, Assigning Privileges, and Dropping Accounts

To manage MySQL accounts, use the SQL statements intended for that purpose:

• CREATE USER and DROP USER create and remove accounts.

• GRANT and REVOKE assign privileges to and revoke privileges from accounts.

• SHOW GRANTS displays account privilege assignments.
Account-management statements cause the server to make appropriate modifications to the underlying grant tables, which are discussed in Section 4.3, “Grant Tables”.

Note

Direct modification of grant tables using statements such as INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE is discouraged and done at your own risk. The server is free to ignore rows that become malformed as a result of such modifications.

As of MySQL 5.7.18, for any operation that modifies a grant table, the server checks whether the table has the expected structure and produces an error if not. mysql_upgrade must be run to update the tables to the expected structure.

Another option for creating accounts is to use the GUI tool MySQL Workbench. Also, several third-party programs offer capabilities for MySQL account administration. phpMyAdmin is one such program.

This section discusses the following topics:

• Creating Accounts and Granting Privileges
• Checking Account Privileges and Properties
• Revoking Account Privileges
• Dropping Accounts

For additional information about the statements discussed here, see Account Management Statements.

Creating Accounts and Granting Privileges

The following examples show how to use the mysql client program to set up new accounts. These examples assume that the MySQL root account has the CREATE USER privilege and all privileges that it grants to other accounts.

At the command line, connect to the server as the MySQL root user, supplying the appropriate password at the password prompt:

```
shell> mysql -u root -p
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

After connecting to the server, you can add new accounts. The following example uses CREATE USER and GRANT statements to set up four accounts (where you see 'password', substitute an appropriate password):

```
CREATE USER 'finley'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
GRANT ALL
  ON *.*
  TO 'finley'@'localhost'
  WITH GRANT OPTION;
CREATE USER 'finley'@'%.example.com'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
GRANT ALL
  ON *.*
  TO 'finley'@'%.example.com'
  WITH GRANT OPTION;
CREATE USER 'admin'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
GRANT RELOAD,PROCESS
  ON *.*
  TO 'admin'@'localhost';
CREATE USER 'dummy'@'localhost';
```
The accounts created by those statements have the following properties:

- Two accounts have a user name of `finley`. Both are superuser accounts with full global privileges to do anything. The `'finley'@'localhost'` account can be used only when connecting from the local host. The `'finley'@'%.example.com'` account uses the `%'` wildcard in the host part, so it can be used to connect from any host in the `example.com` domain.

  The `'finley'@'localhost'` account is necessary if there is an anonymous-user account for `localhost`. Without the `'finley'@'localhost'` account, that anonymous-user account takes precedence when `finley` connects from the local host and `finley` is treated as an anonymous user. The reason for this is that the anonymous-user account has a more specific `Host` column value than the `'finley'@'%'` account and thus comes earlier in the `user` table sort order. (For information about `user` table sorting, see Section 4.5, "Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification").

- The `'admin'@'localhost'` account can be used only by `admin` to connect from the local host. It is granted the global `RELOAD` and `PROCESS` administrative privileges. These privileges enable the `admin` user to execute the `mysqladmin reload`, `mysqladmin refresh`, and `mysqladmin flush-xxx` commands, as well as `mysqladmin processlist`. No privileges are granted for accessing any databases. You could add such privileges using `GRANT` statements.

- The `'dummy'@'localhost'` account has no password (which is insecure and not recommended). This account can be used only to connect from the local host. No privileges are granted. It is assumed that you will grant specific privileges to the account using `GRANT` statements.

The previous example grants privileges at the global level. The next example creates three accounts and grants them access at lower levels; that is, to specific databases or objects within databases. Each account has a user name of `custom`, but the host name parts differ:

```sql
CREATE USER 'custom'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
GRANT ALL
  ON bankaccount.*
  TO 'custom'@'localhost';
CREATE USER 'custom'@'host47.example.com'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, CREATE, DROP
  ON expenses.*
  TO 'custom'@'host47.example.com';
CREATE USER 'custom'@'%.example.com'
  IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
GRANT SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE, CREATE, DROP
  ON customer.addresses
  TO 'custom'@'%.example.com';
```

The three accounts can be used as follows:

- The `'custom'@'localhost'` account has all database-level privileges to access the `bankaccount` database. The account can be used to connect to the server only from the local host.

- The `'custom'@'host47.example.com'` account has specific database-level privileges to access the `expenses` database. The account can be used to connect to the server only from the host `host47.example.com`.

- The `'custom'@'%.example.com'` account has specific table-level privileges to access the `addresses` table in the `customer` database, from any host in the `example.com` domain. The account can be used to connect to the server from all machines in the domain due to use of the `%` wildcard character in the host part of the account name.

### Checking Account Privileges and Properties

To see the privileges for an account, use `SHOW GRANTS:`
Revoking Account Privileges

To revoke account privileges, use the `REVOKE` statement. Privileges can be revoked at different levels, just as they can be granted at different levels.

Revoke global privileges:

```sql
REVOKE ALL
ON *.*
FROM 'finley'@'%.example.com';
REVOKE RELOAD
ON *.*
FROM 'admin'@'localhost';
```

Revoke database-level privileges:

```sql
REVOKE CREATE,DROP
ON expenses.*
FROM 'custom'@'host47.example.com';
```

Revoke table-level privileges:

```sql
REVOKE INSERT,UPDATE,DELETE
ON customer.addresses
FROM 'custom'@'%.example.com';
```

To check the effect of privilege revocation, use `SHOW GRANTS`:

```sql
mysql> SHOW GRANTS FOR 'admin'@'localhost';
+-----------------------------------------------------+
| Grants for admin@localhost                          |
| GRANT PROCESS ON *.* TO 'admin'@'localhost'         |
+-----------------------------------------------------+
```

Dropping Accounts

To remove an account, use the `DROP USER` statement. For example, to drop some of the accounts created previously:

```sql
DROP USER 'finley'@'localhost';
DROP USER 'finley'@'%.example.com';
DROP USER 'admin'@'localhost';
DROP USER 'dummy'@'localhost';
```
One part of the MySQL installation process is data directory initialization (see Section 3.1, “Initializing the Data Directory”). During data directory initialization, MySQL creates user accounts that should be considered reserved:

• 'root'@'localhost': Used for administrative purposes. This account has all privileges and can perform any operation. Strictly speaking, this account name is not reserved, in the sense that some installations rename the root account to something else to avoid exposing a highly privileged account with a well-known name.

• 'mysql.sys'@'localhost': Used as the DEFINER for sys schema objects. Use of the mysql.sys account avoids problems that occur if a DBA renames or removes the root account. This account is locked so that it cannot be used for client connections.

• 'mysql.session'@'localhost': Used internally by plugins to access the server. This account is locked so that it cannot be used for client connections.

4.9 When Privilege Changes Take Effect

If the mysqld server is started without the --skip-grant-tables option, it reads all grant table contents into memory during its startup sequence. The in-memory tables become effective for access control at that point.

If you modify the grant tables indirectly using an account-management statement, the server notices these changes and loads the grant tables into memory again immediately. Account-management statements are described in Account Management Statements. Examples include GRANT, REVOKE, SET PASSWORD, and RENAME USER.

If you modify the grant tables directly using statements such as INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE (which is not recommended), the changes have no effect on privilege checking until you either tell the server to reload the tables or restart it. Thus, if you change the grant tables directly but forget to reload them, the changes have no effect until you restart the server. This may leave you wondering why your changes seem to make no difference!

To tell the server to reload the grant tables, perform a flush-privileges operation. This can be done by issuing a FLUSH PRIVILEGES statement or by executing a mysqladmin flush-privileges or mysqladmin reload command.

A grant table reload affects privileges for each existing client session as follows:

• Table and column privilege changes take effect with the client’s next request.

• Database privilege changes take effect the next time the client executes a USE db_name statement.

  Note
  Client applications may cache the database name; thus, this effect may not be visible to them without actually changing to a different database.

• Global privileges and passwords are unaffected for a connected client. These changes take effect only in sessions for subsequent connections.

If the server is started with the --skip-grant-tables option, it does not read the grant tables or implement any access control. Any user can connect and perform any operation, which is insecure. To cause a server thus started to read the tables and enable access checking, flush the privileges.

4.10 Assigning Account Passwords

Required credentials for clients that connect to the MySQL server can include a password. This section describes how to assign passwords for MySQL accounts.
Assigning Account Passwords

MySQL stores credentials in the user table in the mysql system database. Operations that assign or modify passwords are permitted only to users with the CREATE USER privilege, or, alternatively, privileges for the mysql database (INSERT privilege to create new accounts, UPDATE privilege to modify existing accounts). If the read_only system variable is enabled, use of account-modification statements such as CREATE USER or ALTER USER additionally requires the SUPER privilege.

The discussion here summarizes syntax only for the most common password-assignment statements. For complete details on other possibilities, see CREATE USER Syntax, ALTER USER Syntax, GRANT Syntax, and SET PASSWORD Syntax.

MySQL uses plugins to perform client authentication; see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. In password-assigning statements, the authentication plugin associated with an account performs any hashing required of a cleartext password specified. This enables MySQL to obfuscate passwords prior to storing them in the mysql.user system table. For the statements described here, MySQL automatically hashes the password specified. There are also syntax for CREATE USER and ALTER USER that permits hashed values to be specified literally. For details, see the descriptions of those statements.

To assign a password when you create a new account, use CREATE USER and include an IDENTIFIED BY clause:

```
CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

CREATE USER also supports syntax for specifying the account authentication plugin. See CREATE USER Syntax.

To assign or change a password for an existing account, use the ALTER USER statement with an IDENTIFIED BY clause:

```
ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

If you are not connected as an anonymous user, you can change your own password without naming your own account literally:

```
ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

To change an account password from the command line, use the mysqladmin command:

```
mysqladmin -u user_name -h host_name password "password"
```

The account for which this command sets the password is the one with a row in the mysql.user system table that matches user_name in the User column and the client host from which you connect in the Host column.

**Warning**

Setting a password using mysqladmin should be considered insecure. On some systems, your password becomes visible to system status programs such as ps that may be invoked by other users to display command lines. MySQL clients typically overwrite the command-line password argument with zeros during their initialization sequence. However, there is still a brief interval during which the value is visible. Also, on some systems this overwriting strategy is ineffective and the password remains visible to ps. (SystemV Unix systems and perhaps others are subject to this problem.)

If you are using MySQL Replication, be aware that, currently, a password used by a replication slave as part of a CHANGE MASTER TO statement is effectively limited to 32 characters in length; if the password is longer, any excess characters are truncated. This is not due to any limit imposed by the MySQL Server generally, but rather is an issue specific to MySQL Replication. (For more information, see Bug #43439.)
4.11 Password Management

MySQL enables database administrators to expire account passwords manually, and to establish a policy for automatic password expiration. Expiration policy can be established globally, and individual accounts can be set to either defer to the global policy or override the global policy with specific per-account behavior.

- Internal Versus External Credentials Storage
- Password Expiration Policy

Internal Versus External Credentials Storage

Some authentication plugins store account credentials internally to MySQL, in the `mysql.user` system table:

- `mysql_native_password`
- `sha256_password`

The discussion in this section applies to such authentication plugins because the password-management capabilities described here are handled by MySQL itself.

Other authentication plugins store account credentials externally to MySQL. For accounts that use plugins that perform authentication against an external credentials system, password management must be handled externally against that system as well.

For information about individual authentication plugins, see Section 6.1, “Authentication Plugins”.

Password Expiration Policy

To expire an account password manually, use the `ALTER USER` statement:

```
ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE;
```

This operation marks the password expired in the corresponding `mysql.user` system table row.

Password expiration according to policy is automatic and is based on password age, which for a given account is assessed from the date and time of its most recent password change. The `mysql.user` system table indicates for each account when its password was last changed, and the server automatically treats the password as expired at client connection time if its age is greater than its permitted lifetime. This works with no explicit manual password expiration.

To establish automatic password-expiration policy globally, use the `default_password_lifetime` system variable. Its default value is 0, which disables automatic password expiration. If the value of `default_password_lifetime` is a positive integer \( N \), it indicates the permitted password lifetime, such that passwords must be changed every \( N \) days.

Note

Prior to 5.7.11, the default `default_password_lifetime` value is 360 (passwords must be changed approximately once per year). For such versions, be aware that, if you make no changes to the `default_password_lifetime` variable or to individual user accounts, each user password expires after 360 days and the account starts running in restricted mode. Clients that connect to the server using the account then get an error indicating that the password must be changed: `ERROR 1820 (HY000): You must reset your password using ALTER USER statement before executing this statement`.

However, this is easy to miss for clients that automatically connect to the server, such as connections made from scripts. To avoid having such clients suddenly...
stop working due to a password expiring, make sure to change the password expiration settings for those clients, like this:

```
ALTER USER 'script'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE NEVER
```

Alternatively, set the `default_password_lifetime` variable to 0, thus disabling automatic password expiration for all users.

Examples:

- To establish a global policy that passwords have a lifetime of approximately six months, start the server with these lines in a server `my.cnf` file:

  ```
  [mysqld]
  default_password_lifetime=180
  
  [mysqld]
  default_password_lifetime=0
  
  `default_password_lifetime` can also be changed at runtime:

  ```
  SET GLOBAL default_password_lifetime = 180;
  SET GLOBAL default_password_lifetime = 0;
  
  The global password-expiration policy applies to all accounts that have not been set to override it. To establish policy for individual accounts, use the `PASSWORD EXPIRE` options of the `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER` statements. See CREATE USER Syntax, and ALTER USER Syntax.

Example account-specific statements:

- Require the password to be changed every 90 days:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE INTERVAL 90 DAY;
  ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE INTERVAL 90 DAY;
  
  This expiration option overrides the global policy for all accounts named by the statement.

- Disable password expiration:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE NEVER;
  ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE NEVER;
  
  This expiration option overrides the global policy for all accounts named by the statement.

- Defer to the global expiration policy for all accounts named by the statement:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE DEFAULT;
  ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE DEFAULT;
  
When a client successfully connects, the server determines whether the account password has expired:

- The server checks whether the password has been manually expired.

- Otherwise, the server checks whether the password age is greater than its permitted lifetime according to the automatic password expiration policy. If so, the server considers the password expired.
If the password is expired (whether manually or automatically), the server either disconnects the client or restricts the operations permitted to it (see Section 4.12, “Server Handling of Expired Passwords”). Operations performed by a restricted client result in an error until the user establishes a new account password:

```
mysql> SELECT 1;
ERROR 1820 (HY000): You must reset your password using ALTER USER statement before executing this statement.
mysql> ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
mysql> SELECT 1;
+---+
| 1 |
+---+
1 row in set (0.00 sec)
```

This restricted mode of operation permits `SET` statements, which is useful before MySQL 5.7.6 if `SET PASSWORD` must be used instead of `ALTER USER` and the account password has a hashing format that requires `old_passwords` to be set to a value different from its default.

After the client resets the password, the server restores normal access for the session, as well as for subsequent connections that use the account. It is also possible for an administrative user to reset the account password, but any existing restricted sessions for that account remain restricted. A client using the account must disconnect and reconnect before statements can be executed successfully.

**Note**

Although it is possible to “reset” an expired password by setting it to its current value, it is preferable, as a matter of good policy, to choose a different password.

### 4.12 Server Handling of Expired Passwords

MySQL provides password-expiration capability, which enables database administrators to require that users reset their password. Passwords can be expired manually, and on the basis of a policy for automatic expiration (see Section 4.11, “Password Management”).

The `ALTER USER` statement enables account password expiration. For example:

```
ALTER USER 'myuser'@'localhost' PASSWORD EXPIRE;
```

For each connection that uses an account with an expired password, the server either disconnects the client or restricts the client to “sandbox mode,” in which the server permits the client to perform only those operations necessary to reset the expired password. Which action is taken by the server depends on both client and server settings, as discussed later.

If the server disconnects the client, it returns an `ER_MUST_CHANGE_PASSWORD_LOGIN` error:

```
shell> mysql -u myuser -p
Password: ******
ERROR 1862 (HY000): Your password has expired. To log in you must change it using a client that supports expired passwords.
```

If the server restricts the client to sandbox mode, these operations are permitted within the client session:

- The client can reset the account password with `ALTER USER` or `SET PASSWORD`. After that has been done, the server restores normal access for the session, as well as for subsequent connections that use the account.
Server Handling of Expired Passwords

Note
Although it is possible to “reset” an expired password by setting it to its current value, it is preferable, as a matter of good policy, to choose a different password.

- The client can use the `SET` statement, which is useful before MySQL 5.7.6 if `SET PASSWORD` must be used instead of `ALTER USER` and the account uses an authentication plugin for which the `old_passwords` system variable must first be set to a nondefault value to perform password hashing in a specific way.

For any operation not permitted within the session, the server returns an `ER_MUST_CHANGE_PASSWORD` error:

```sql
mysql> USE performance_schema;
ERROR 1820 (HY000): You must reset your password using ALTER USER statement before executing this statement.
```

That is what normally happens for interactive invocations of the `mysql` client because by default such invocations are put in sandbox mode. To resume normal functioning, select a new password.

For noninteractive invocations of the `mysql` client (for example, in batch mode), the server normally disconnects the client if the password is expired. To permit noninteractive `mysql` invocations to stay connected so that the password can be changed (using the statements permitted in sandbox mode), add the `--connect-expired-password` option to the `mysql` command.

As mentioned previously, whether the server disconnects an expired-password client or restricts it to sandbox mode depends on a combination of client and server settings. The following discussion describes the relevant settings and how they interact.

Note
This discussion applies only for accounts with expired passwords. If a client connects using a nonexpired password, the server handles the client normally.

On the client side, a given client indicates whether it can handle sandbox mode for expired passwords. For clients that use the C client library, there are two ways to do this:

- Pass the `MYSQL_OPT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS` flag to `mysql_options()` prior to connecting:

```c
my_bool arg = 1;
mysql_options(mysql,
             MYSQL_OPT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS,
             &arg);
```

This is the technique used within the `mysql` client, which enables `MYSQL_OPT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS` if invoked interactively or with the `--connect-expired-password` option.

- Pass the `CLIENT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS` flag to `mysql_real_connect()` at connect time:

```c
MYSQL mysql;
mysql_init(&mysql);
if (!mysql_real_connect(&mysql,
                        host, user, password, db,
                        port, unix_socket,
                        CLIENT_CAN_HANDLE_EXPIRED_PASSWORDS))
```
Other MySQL Connectors have their own conventions for indicating readiness to handle sandbox mode. See the documentation for the Connector in which you are interested.

On the server side, if a client indicates that it can handle expired passwords, the server puts it in sandbox mode.

If a client does not indicate that it can handle expired passwords (or uses an older version of the client library that cannot so indicate), the server action depends on the value of the `disconnect_on_expired_password` system variable:

- If `disconnect_on_expired_password` is enabled (the default), the server disconnects the client with an `ER_MUST_CHANGE_PASSWORD_LOGIN` error.
- If `disconnect_on_expired_password` is disabled, the server puts the client in sandbox mode.

### 4.13 Pluggable Authentication

When a client connects to the MySQL server, the server uses the user name provided by the client and the client host to select the appropriate account row from the `mysql.user` system table. The server then authenticates the client, determining from the account row which authentication plugin applies to the client:

- If the server cannot find the plugin, an error occurs and the connection attempt is rejected.
- Otherwise, the server invokes that plugin to authenticate the user, and the plugin returns a status to the server indicating whether the user provided the correct password and is permitted to connect.

Pluggable authentication enables these important capabilities:

- **Choice of authentication methods.** Pluggable authentication makes it easy for DBAs to choose and change the authentication method used for individual MySQL accounts.

- **External authentication.** Pluggable authentication makes it possible for clients to connect to the MySQL server with credentials appropriate for authentication methods that store credentials elsewhere than in the `mysql.user` system table. For example, plugins can be created to use external authentication methods such as PAM, Windows login IDs, LDAP, or Kerberos.

- **Proxy users:** If a user is permitted to connect, an authentication plugin can return to the server a user name different from the name of the connecting user, to indicate that the connecting user is a proxy for another user (the proxied user). While the connection lasts, the proxy user is treated, for purposes of access control, as having the privileges of the proxied user. In effect, one user impersonates another. For more information, see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

  **Note**
  
  If you start the server with the `--skip-grant-tables` option, authentication plugins are not used even if loaded because the server performs no client authentication and permits any client to connect. Because this is insecure, you might want to use `--skip-grant-tables` in conjunction with `--skip-networking` to prevent remote clients from connecting.

- **Available Authentication Plugins**
- **Authentication Plugin Usage**
- **Restrictions on Pluggable Authentication**

### Available Authentication Plugins

MySQL 5.7 provides these authentication plugins:
• Plugins that perform native authentication: that is, authentication based on the password hashing methods in use from before the introduction of pluggable authentication in MySQL. The mysql_native_password plugin implements authentication based on the native password hashing method. The mysql_old_password plugin implements native authentication based on the older (pre-4.1) password hashing method (and is deprecated and removed in MySQL 5.7.5). See Section 6.1.1, “Native Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 6.1.2, “Old Native Pluggable Authentication”.

• Plugins that perform authentication using SHA-256 password hashing. This is stronger encryption than that available with native authentication. See Section 6.1.5, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 6.1.4, “Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication”.

• A client-side plugin that sends the password to the server without hashing or encryption. This plugin is used in conjunction with server-side plugins that require access to the password exactly as provided by the client user. See Section 6.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that performs external authentication using PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules), enabling MySQL Server to use PAM to authenticate MySQL users. This plugin supports proxy users as well. See Section 6.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that performs external authentication on Windows, enabling MySQL Server to use native Windows services to authenticate client connections. Users who have logged in to Windows can connect from MySQL client programs to the server based on the information in their environment without specifying an additional password. This plugin supports proxy users as well. See Section 6.1.8, “Windows Pluggable Authentication”.

• Plugins that perform authentication using LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) to authenticate MySQL users by accessing directory services such as X.500. These plugins support proxy users as well. See Section 6.1.9, “LDAP Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that prevents all client connections to any account that uses it. Use cases for this plugin include proxied accounts that should never permit direct login but are accessed only through proxy accounts and accounts that must be able to execute stored programs and views with elevated privileges without exposing those privileges to ordinary users. See Section 6.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.

• A plugin that authenticates clients that connect from the local host through the Unix socket file. See Section 6.1.11, “Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication”.

• A test plugin that checks account credentials and logs success or failure to the server error log. This plugin is intended for testing and development purposes, and as an example of how to write an authentication plugin. See Section 6.1.12, “Test Pluggable Authentication”.

Note
For information about current restrictions on the use of pluggable authentication, including which connectors support which plugins, see Restrictions on Pluggable Authentication.

Third-party connector developers should read that section to determine the extent to which a connector can take advantage of pluggable authentication capabilities and what steps to take to become more compliant.

If you are interested in writing your own authentication plugins, see Writing Authentication Plugins.

Authentication Plugin Usage
This section provides general instructions for installing and using authentication plugins. For instructions specific to a given plugin, see the section that describes that plugin under Section 6.1, “Authentication Plugins”.

65
In general, pluggable authentication uses a pair of corresponding plugins on the server and client sides, so you use a given authentication method like this:

- If necessary, install the plugin library or libraries containing the appropriate plugins. On the server host, install the library containing the server-side plugin, so that the server can use it to authenticate client connections. Similarly, on each client host, install the library containing the client-side plugin for use by client programs. Authentication plugins that are built in need not be installed.

- For each MySQL account that you create, specify the appropriate server-side plugin to use for authentication. If the account is to use the default authentication plugin, the account-creation statement need not specify the plugin explicitly. The `default_authentication_plugin` system variable configures the default authentication plugin.

- When a client connects, the server-side plugin tells the client program which client-side plugin to use for authentication.

In the case that an account uses an authentication method that is the default for both the server and the client program, the server need not communicate to the client which client-side plugin to use, and a round trip in client/server negotiation can be avoided. This is true for accounts that use native MySQL authentication.

For standard MySQL clients such as `mysql` and `mysqladmin`, the `--default-auth=plugin_name` option can be specified on the command line as a hint about which client-side plugin the program can expect to use, although the server will override this if the server-side plugin associated with the user account requires a different client-side plugin.

If the client program does not find the client-side plugin library file, specify a `--plugin-dir=dir_name` option to indicate the plugin library directory location.

### Restrictions on Pluggable Authentication

The first part of this section describes general restrictions on the applicability of the pluggable authentication framework described at Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. The second part describes how third-party connector developers can determine the extent to which a connector can take advantage of pluggable authentication capabilities and what steps to take to become more compliant.

The term “native authentication” used here refers to authentication against passwords stored in the `mysql.user` system table. This is the same authentication method provided by older MySQL servers, before pluggable authentication was implemented. “Windows native authentication” refers to authentication using the credentials of a user who has already logged in to Windows, as implemented by the Windows Native Authentication plugin (“Windows plugin” for short).

- **General Pluggable Authentication Restrictions**
- **Pluggable Authentication and Third-Party Connectors**

### General Pluggable Authentication Restrictions

- **Connector/C, Connector/C++**: Clients that use these connectors can connect to the server only through accounts that use native authentication.

  Exception: A connector supports pluggable authentication if it was built to link to `libmysqlclient` dynamically (rather than statically) and it loads the current version of `libmysqlclient` if that version is installed, or if the connector is recompiled from source to link against the current `libmysqlclient`.

- **Connector/NET**: Clients that use Connector/NET can connect to the server through accounts that use native authentication or Windows native authentication.

- **Connector/PHP**: Clients that use this connector can connect to the server only through accounts that use native authentication, when compiled using the MySQL native driver for PHP (`mysqlnd`).
Proxy Users

- **Windows native authentication**: Connecting through an account that uses the Windows plugin requires Windows Domain setup. Without it, NTLM authentication is used and then only local connections are possible; that is, the client and server must run on the same computer.

- **Proxy users**: Proxy user support is available to the extent that clients can connect through accounts authenticated with plugins that implement proxy user capability (that is, plugins that can return a user name different from that of the connecting user). For example, the PAM and Windows plugins support proxy users. The `mysql_native_password` and `sha256_password` authentication plugins do not support proxy users by default, but can be configured to do so; see Server Support for Proxy User Mapping.

- **Replication**: Replication slaves can employ not only master accounts using native authentication, but can also connect through master accounts that use nonnative authentication if the required client-side plugin is available. If the plugin is built into `libmysqlclient`, it is available by default. Otherwise, the plugin must be installed on the slave side in the directory named by the slave `plugin_dir` system variable.

- **FEDERATED tables**: A FEDERATED table can access the remote table only through accounts on the remote server that use native authentication.

### Pluggable Authentication and Third-Party Connectors

Third-party connector developers can use the following guidelines to determine readiness of a connector to take advantage of pluggable authentication capabilities and what steps to take to become more compliant:

- An existing connector to which no changes have been made uses native authentication and clients that use the connector can connect to the server only through accounts that use native authentication. However, you should test the connector against a recent version of the server to verify that such connections still work without problem.

  Exception: A connector might work with pluggable authentication without any changes if it links to `libmysqlclient` dynamically (rather than statically) and it loads the current version of `libmysqlclient` if that version is installed.

- To take advantage of pluggable authentication capabilities, a connector that is `libmysqlclient`-based should be relinked against the current version of `libmysqlclient`. This enables the connector to support connections though accounts that require client-side plugins now built into `libmysqlclient` (such as the cleartext plugin needed for PAM authentication and the Windows plugin needed for Windows native authentication). Linking with a current `libmysqlclient` also enables the connector to access client-side plugins installed in the default MySQL plugin directory (typically the directory named by the default value of the local server's `plugin_dir` system variable).

  If a connector links to `libmysqlclient` dynamically, it must be ensured that the newer version of `libmysqlclient` is installed on the client host and that the connector loads it at runtime.

- Another way for a connector to support a given authentication method is to implement it directly in the client/server protocol. Connector/NET uses this approach to provide support for Windows native authentication.

- If a connector should be able to load client-side plugins from a directory different from the default plugin directory, it must implement some means for client users to specify the directory. Possibilities for this include a command-line option or environment variable from which the connector can obtain the directory name. Standard MySQL client programs such as `mysql` and `mysqladmin` implement a `--plugin-dir` option. See also C API Client Plugin Functions.

- Proxy user support by a connector depends, as described earlier in this section, on whether the authentication methods that it supports permit proxy users.

### 4.14 Proxy Users
The MySQL server authenticates client connections using authentication plugins. The plugin that authenticates a given connection may request that the connecting (external) user be treated as a different user for privilege-checking purposes. This enables the external user to be a proxy for the second user; that is, to assume the privileges of the second user:

- The external user is a “proxy user” (a user who can impersonate or become known as another user).
- The second user is a “proxied user” (a user whose identity and privileges can be assumed by a proxy user).

This section describes how the proxy user capability works. For general information about authentication plugins, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. For information about specific plugins, see Section 6.1, “Authentication Plugins”. For information about writing authentication plugins that support proxy users, see Implementing Proxy User Support in Authentication Plugins.

- Requirements for Proxy User Support
- Simple Proxy User Example
- Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts
- Granting and Revoking the PROXY Privilege
- Default Proxy Users
- Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts
- Server Support for Proxy User Mapping
- Proxy User System Variables

### Requirements for Proxy User Support

For proxying to occur for a given authentication plugin, these conditions must be satisfied:

- Proxying must be supported, either by the plugin itself, or by the MySQL server on behalf of the plugin. In the latter case, server support may need to be enabled explicitly; see Server Support for Proxy User Mapping.

- The account for the external proxy user must be set up to be authenticated by the plugin. Use the CREATE USER statement to associate an account with an authentication plugin, or ALTER USER to change its plugin.

- The account for the proxied user must exist and be granted the privileges to be assumed by the proxy user. Use the CREATE USER and GRANT statements for this.

- Normally, the proxied user is configured so that it can be used only in proxying scenarios and not for direct logins.

- The proxy user account must have the PROXY privilege for the proxied account. Use the GRANT statement for this.

- For a client connecting to the proxy account to be treated as a proxy user, the authentication plugin must return a user name different from the client user name, to indicate the user name of the proxied account that defines the privileges to be assumed by the proxy user.

  Alternatively, for plugins that are provided proxy mapping by the server, the proxied user is determined from the PROXY privilege held by the proxy user.

The proxy mechanism permits mapping only the external client user name to the proxied user name. There is no provision for mapping host names:
Simple Proxy User Example

Consider the following account definitions:

```sql
-- create proxy account
CREATE USER 'employee_ext'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH my_auth_plugin
  AS 'my_auth_string';
-- create proxied account and grant its privileges;
-- use mysql_no_login plugin to prevent direct login
CREATE USER 'employee'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
GRANT ALL
  ON employees.*
  TO 'employee'@'localhost';
-- grant to proxy account the
-- PROXY privilege for proxied account
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'employee'@'localhost'
  TO 'employee_ext'@'localhost';
```

When a client connects as `employee_ext` from the local host, MySQL uses the plugin named `my_auth_plugin` to perform authentication. Suppose that `my_auth_plugin` returns a user name of `employee` to the server, based on the content of `'my_auth_string'` and perhaps by consulting some external authentication system. The name `employee` differs from `employee_ext`, so returning `employee` serves as a request to the server to treat the `employee_ext` external user, for purposes of privilege checking, as the `employee` local user. In this case, `employee_ext` is the proxy user and `employee` is the proxied user.

The server verifies that proxy authentication for `employee` is possible for the `employee_ext` user by checking whether `employee_ext` (the proxy user) has the PROXY privilege for `employee` (the proxied user). If this privilege has not been granted, an error occurs. Otherwise, `employee_ext` assumes the privileges of `employee`. The server checks statements executed during the client session by `employee_ext` against the privileges granted to `employee`. In this case, `employee_ext` can access tables in the `employees` database.

The proxied account, `employee`, uses the `mysql_no_login` authentication plugin to prevent clients from using the account to log in directly. (This assumes that the plugin is installed. For instructions, see Section 6.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.) For alternative methods of protecting proxied accounts against direct use, see Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts.

When proxying occurs, the `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` functions can be used to see the difference between the connecting user (the proxy user) and the account whose privileges apply during the current session (the proxied user). For the example just described, those functions return these values:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+------------------------+--------------------+
| USER()                 | CURRENT_USER()     |
|------------------------+--------------------|
| employee_ext@localhost | employee@localhost |
+------------------------+--------------------+
```

In the `CREATE USER` statement that creates the proxy user account, the `IDENTIFIED WITH` clause that names the proxy-supporting authentication plugin is optionally followed by an `AS 'auth_string'` clause specifying a string that the server passes to the plugin when the user...
connects. If present, the string provides information that helps the plugin determine how to map the proxy (external) client user name to a proxied user name. It is up to each plugin whether it requires the AS clause. If so, the format of the authentication string depends on how the plugin intends to use it. Consult the documentation for a given plugin for information about the authentication string values it accepts.

Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts

Proxied accounts generally are intended to be used only by means of proxy accounts. That is, clients connect using a proxy account, then are mapped onto and assume the privileges of the appropriate proxied user.

There are multiple ways to ensure that a proxied account cannot be used directly:

- Associate the account with the mysql_no_login authentication plugin. In this case, the account cannot be used for direct logins under any circumstances. This assumes that the plugin is installed. For instructions, see Section 6.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.
- Include the ACCOUNT LOCK option when you create the account. See CREATE USER Syntax. With this method, also include a password so that if the account is unlocked later, it cannot be accessed with no password. (If the validate_password plugin is enabled, it will not permit creating an account without a password, even if the account is locked. See Section 6.3, “The Password Validation Plugin”.)
- Create the account with a password but do not tell anyone else the password. If you do not let anyone know the password for the account, clients cannot use it to connect directly to the MySQL server.

Granting and Revoking the PROXY Privilege

The PROXY privilege is needed to enable an external user to connect as and have the privileges of another user. To grant this privilege, use the GRANT statement. For example:

```sql
GRANT PROXY ON 'proxied_user' TO 'proxy_user';
```

The statement creates a row in the mysql.proxies_priv grant table.

At connect time, proxy_user must represent a valid externally authenticated MySQL user, and proxied_user must represent a valid locally authenticated user. Otherwise, the connection attempt fails.

The corresponding REVOKE syntax is:

```sql
REVOKE PROXY ON 'proxied_user' FROM 'proxy_user';
```

MySQL GRANT and REVOKE syntax extensions work as usual. Examples:

```sql
-- grant PROXY to multiple accounts
GRANT PROXY ON 'a' TO 'b', 'c', 'd';
-- revoke PROXY from multiple accounts
REVOKE PROXY ON 'a' FROM 'b', 'c', 'd';
-- grant PROXY to an account and enable the account to grant
-- PROXY to the proxied account
GRANT PROXY ON 'a' TO 'd' WITH GRANT OPTION;
-- grant PROXY to default proxy account
GRANT PROXY ON 'a' TO '@';
```

The PROXY privilege can be granted in these cases:

- By a user that has GRANT PROXY ... WITH GRANT OPTION for proxied_user.
Default Proxy Users

- By `proxied_user` for itself: The value of `USER()` must exactly match `CURRENT_USER()` and `proxied_user`, for both the user name and host name parts of the account name.

The initial `root` account created during MySQL installation has the `PROXY ... WITH GRANT OPTION` privilege for `''@''`, that is, for all users and all hosts. This enables `root` to set up proxy users, as well as to delegate to other accounts the authority to set up proxy users. For example, `root` can do this:

```sql
CREATE USER 'admin'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED BY 'admin_password';
GRANT PROXY
    ON '''@'''
    TO 'admin'@'localhost'
    WITH GRANT OPTION;
```

Those statements create an `admin` user that can manage all `GRANT PROXY` mappings. For example, `admin` can do this:

```sql
GRANT PROXY ON sally TO joe;
```

Default Proxy Users

To specify that some or all users should connect using a given authentication plugin, create a “blank” MySQL account with an empty user name and host name (`''@''`), associate it with that plugin, and let the plugin return the real authenticated user name (if different from the blank user). Suppose that there exists a plugin named `ldap_auth` that implements LDAP authentication and maps connecting users onto either a developer or manager account. To set up proxying of users onto these accounts, use the following statements:

```sql
-- create default proxy account
CREATE USER ''@''
    IDENTIFIED WITH ldap_auth
    AS 'O=Oracle, OU=MySQL';
-- create proxied accounts; use -- mysql_no_login plugin to prevent direct login
CREATE USER 'developer'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
CREATE USER 'manager'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
-- grant to default proxy account the -- PROXY privilege for proxied accounts
GRANT PROXY
    ON 'manager'@'localhost'
    TO ''@'';
GRANT PROXY
    ON 'developer'@'localhost'
    TO ''@'';
```

Now assume that a client connects as follows:

```shell
shell> mysql --user=myuser --password ...
Enter password: myuser_password
```

The server will not find `myuser` defined as a MySQL user. But because there is a blank user account (`''@''`) that matches the client user name and host name, the server authenticates the client against that account: The server invokes the `ldap_auth` authentication plugin and passes `myuser` and `myuser_password` to it as the user name and password.

If the `ldap_auth` plugin finds in the LDAP directory that `myuser_password` is not the correct password for `myuser`, authentication fails and the server rejects the connection.

If the password is correct and `ldap_auth` finds that `myuser` is a developer, it returns the user name `developer` to the MySQL server, rather than `myuser`. Returning a user name different from the client
user name of myuser signals to the server that it should treat myuser as a proxy. The server verifies that '@' can authenticate as developer (because '@' has the PROXY privilege to do so) and accepts the connection. The session proceeds with myuser having the privileges of the developer proxied user. (These privileges should be set up by the DBA using GRANT statements, not shown.) The USER() and CURRENT_USER() functions return these values:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+------------------+---------------------+
| USER()           | CURRENT_USER()      |
+------------------+---------------------+
| myuser@localhost | developer@localhost |
+------------------+---------------------+
```

If the plugin instead finds in the LDAP directory that myuser is a manager, it returns manager as the user name and the session proceeds with myuser having the privileges of the manager proxied user.

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+------------------+-------------------+
| USER()           | CURRENT_USER()    |
+------------------+-------------------+
| myuser@localhost | manager@localhost |
+------------------+-------------------+
```

For simplicity, external authentication cannot be multilevel: Neither the credentials for developer nor those for manager are taken into account in the preceding example. However, they are still used if a client tries to connect and authenticate directly as the developer or manager account, which is why those proxied accounts should be protected against direct login (see Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts).

### Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts

If you intend to create a default proxy user, check for other existing “match any user” accounts that take precedence over the default proxy user because they can prevent that user from working as intended.

In the preceding discussion, the default proxy user account has '' in the host part, which matches any host. If you set up a default proxy user, take care to also check whether nonproxy accounts exist with the same user part and '%' in the host part, because '%' also matches any host, but has precedence over '' by the rules that the server uses to sort account rows internally (see Section 4.5, “Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification”).

Suppose that a MySQL installation includes these two accounts:

```
-- create default proxy account
CREATE USER ''@''
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin
    AS 'some_auth_string';
-- create anonymous account
CREATE USER ''@'%''
    IDENTIFIED BY 'anon_user_password';
```

The first account (''@'') is intended as the default proxy user, used to authenticate connections for users who do not otherwise match a more-specific account. The second account (''@%'') is an anonymous-user account, which might have been created, for example, to enable users without their own account to connect anonymously.

Both accounts have the same user part (''), which matches any user. And each account has a host part that matches any host. Nevertheless, there is a priority in account matching for connection attempts because the matching rules sort a host of '%' ahead of ''. For accounts that do not match any more-specific account, the server attempts to authenticate them against ''@%' (the anonymous user) rather than ''@'' (the default proxy user). As a result, the default proxy account is never used.

To avoid this problem, use one of the following strategies:
• Remove the anonymous account so that it does not conflict with the default proxy user.

• Use a more-specific default proxy user that matches ahead of the anonymous user. For example, to permit only localhost proxy connections, use ''@'localhost':

```
CREATE USER ''@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin
    AS 'some_auth_string';
```

In addition, modify any GRANT PROXY statements to name ''@'localhost' rather than ''@'' as the proxy user.

Be aware that this strategy prevents anonymous-user connections from localhost.

• Use a named default account rather than an anonymous default account. For an example of this technique, consult the instructions for using the authentication_windows plugin. See Section 6.1.8, “Windows Pluggable Authentication”.

• Create multiple proxy users, one for local connections and one for “everything else” (remote connections). This can be useful particularly when local users should have different privileges from remote users.

Create the proxy users:

```
-- create proxy user for local connections
CREATE USER ''@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin
    AS 'some_auth_string';
-- create proxy user for remote connections
CREATE USER ''@'%''
    IDENTIFIED WITH some_plugin
    AS 'some_auth_string';
```

Create the proxied users:

```
-- create proxied user for local connections
CREATE USER 'developer'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
-- create proxied user for remote connections
CREATE USER 'developer'@'%''
    IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
```

Grant to each proxy account the PROXY privilege for the corresponding proxied account:

```
GRANT PROXY
    ON 'developer'@'localhost'
    TO ''@'localhost';
GRANT PROXY
    ON 'developer'@'%''
    TO ''@'%;
```

Finally, grant appropriate privileges to the local and remote proxied users (not shown).

Assume that the some_plugin/some_auth_string combination causes some_plugin to map the client user name to developer. Local connections match the ''@'localhost' proxy user, which maps to the 'developer'@'localhost' proxied user. Remote connections match the ''@'%' proxy user, which maps to the 'developer'@'%' proxied user.

Server Support for Proxy User Mapping

Some authentication plugins implement proxy user mapping for themselves (for example, the PAM and Windows authentication plugins). Other authentication plugins do not support proxy users by default.
Of these, some can request that the MySQL server itself map proxy users according to granted proxy privileges: `mysql_native_password`, `sha256_password`. If the `check_proxy_users` system variable is enabled, the server performs proxy user mapping for any authentication plugins that make such a request:

- By default, `check_proxy_users` is disabled, so the server performs no proxy user mapping even for authentication plugins that request server support for proxy users.

- If `check_proxy_users` is enabled, it may also be necessary to enable a plugin-specific system variable to take advantage of server proxy user mapping support:
  - For the `mysql_native_password` plugin, enable `mysql_native_password_proxy_users`.
  - For the `sha256_password` plugin, enable `sha256_password_proxy_users`.

Proxy user mapping performed by the server is subject to these restrictions:

- The server will not proxy to or from an anonymous user, even if the associated `PROXY` privilege is granted.

- When a single account has been granted proxy privileges for more than one proxied account, server proxy user mapping is nondeterministic. Therefore, granting to a single account proxy privileges for multiple proxied accounts is discouraged.

**Proxy User System Variables**

Two system variables help trace the proxy login process:

- **`proxy_user`**: This value is `NULL` if proxying is not used. Otherwise, it indicates the proxy user account. For example, if a client authenticates through the `'@'` proxy account, this variable is set as follows:

  ```
  mysql> SELECT @proxy_user;
  +------------------+
  | @proxy_user     |
  +------------------+
  | '@'              |
  +------------------+
  ```

- **`external_user`**: Sometimes the authentication plugin may use an external user to authenticate to the MySQL server. For example, when using Windows native authentication, a plugin that authenticates using the windows API does not need the login ID passed to it. However, it still uses a Windows user ID to authenticate. The plugin may return this external user ID (or the first 512 UTF-8 bytes of it) to the server using the `external_user` read-only session variable. If the plugin does not set this variable, its value is `NULL`.

**4.15 Account Locking**

MySQL supports locking and unlocking user accounts using the `ACCOUNT LOCK` and `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clauses for the `CREATE USER` and `ALTER USER` statements:

- When used with `CREATE USER`, these clauses specify the initial locking state for a new account. In the absence of either clause, the account is created in an unlocked state.

  If the `validate_password` plugin is enabled, it will not permit creating an account without a password, even if the account is locked. See Section 6.3, “The Password Validation Plugin”.

- When used with `ALTER USER`, these clauses specify the new locking state for an existing account. In the absence of either clause, the account locking state remains unchanged.

Account locking state is recorded in the `account_locked` column of the `mysql.user` system table. The output from `SHOW CREATE USER` indicates whether an account is locked or unlocked.
If a client attempts to connect to a locked account, the attempt fails. The server increments the `Locked_connects` status variable that indicates the number of attempts to connect to a locked account, returns an `ER_ACCOUNT_HAS_BEEN_LOCKED` error, and writes a message to the error log:

```
Access denied for user 'user_name'@'host_name'.
Account is locked.
```

Locking an account does not affect being able to connect using a proxy user that assumes the identity of the locked account. It also does not affect the ability to execute stored programs or views that have a `DEFINER` clause naming the locked account. That is, the ability to use a proxied account or stored programs or views is not affected by locking the account.

The account-locking capability depends on the presence of the `account_locked` column in the `mysql.user` system table. For upgrades from MySQL versions older than 5.7.6, perform the MySQL upgrade procedure to ensure that this column exists. See Upgrading MySQL. For nonupgraded installations that have no `account_locked` column, the server treats all accounts as unlocked, and using the `ACCOUNT LOCK` or `ACCOUNT UNLOCK` clauses produces an error.

### 4.16 Setting Account Resource Limits

One means of restricting client use of MySQL server resources is to set the global `max_user_connections` system variable to a nonzero value. This limits the number of simultaneous connections that can be made by any given account, but places no limits on what a client can do once connected. In addition, setting `max_user_connections` does not enable management of individual accounts. Both types of control are of interest to MySQL administrators.

To address such concerns, MySQL permits limits for individual accounts on use of these server resources:

- The number of queries an account can issue per hour
- The number of updates an account can issue per hour
- The number of times an account can connect to the server per hour
- The number of simultaneous connections to the server by an account

Any statement that a client can issue counts against the query limit, unless its results are served from the query cache. Only statements that modify databases or tables count against the update limit.

An “account” in this context corresponds to a row in the `mysql.user` system table. That is, a connection is assessed against the `User` and `Host` values in the `user` table row that applies to the connection. For example, an account `usera'@'%.example.com'` corresponds to a row in the `user` table that has `User` and `Host` values of `usera` and `%.example.com`, to permit `usera` to connect from any host in the `example.com` domain. In this case, the server applies resource limits in this row collectively to all connections by `usera` from any host in the `example.com` domain because all such connections use the same account.

Before MySQL 5.0, an “account” was assessed against the actual host from which a user connects. This older method of accounting may be selected by starting the server with the `--old-style-user-limits` option. In this case, if `usera` connects simultaneously from `host1.example.com` and `host2.example.com`, the server applies the account resource limits separately to each connection. If `usera` connects again from `host1.example.com`, the server applies the limits for that connection together with the existing connection from that host.

To establish resource limits for an account at account-creation time, use the `CREATE USER` statement. To modify the limits for an existing account, use `ALTER USER`. Provide a `WITH` clause that names each resource to be limited. The default value for each limit is zero (no limit). For example, to create a new account that can access the `customer` database, but only in a limited fashion, issue these statements:
Setting Account Resource Limits

```sql
mysql> CREATE USER 'francis'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'frank'
    -> WITH MAX_QUERIES_PER_HOUR 20
    -> MAX_UPDATES_PER_HOUR 10
    -> MAX_CONNECTIONS_PER_HOUR 5
    -> MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 2;
```

The limit types need not all be named in the `WITH` clause, but those named can be present in any order. The value for each per-hour limit should be an integer representing a count per hour. For `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS`, the limit is an integer representing the maximum number of simultaneous connections by the account. If this limit is set to zero, the global `max_user_connections` system variable value determines the number of simultaneous connections. If `max_user_connections` is also zero, there is no limit for the account.

To modify limits for an existing account, use an `ALTER USER` statement. The following statement changes the query limit for `francis` to 100:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'francis'@'localhost' WITH MAX_QUERIES_PER_HOUR 100;
```

The statement modifies only the limit value specified and leaves the account otherwise unchanged.

To remove a limit, set its value to zero. For example, to remove the limit on how many times per hour `francis` can connect, use this statement:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'francis'@'localhost' WITH MAX_CONNECTIONS_PER_HOUR 0;
```

As mentioned previously, the simultaneous-connection limit for an account is determined from the `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit and the `max_user_connections` system variable. Suppose that the global `max_user_connections` value is 10 and three accounts have individual resource limits specified as follows:

```sql
ALTER USER 'user1'@'localhost' WITH MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 0;
ALTER USER 'user2'@'localhost' WITH MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 5;
ALTER USER 'user3'@'localhost' WITH MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS 20;
```

`user1` has a connection limit of 10 (the global `max_user_connections` value) because it has a `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit of zero. `user2` and `user3` have connection limits of 5 and 20, respectively, because they have nonzero `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limits.

The server stores resource limits for an account in the `user` table row corresponding to the account. The `max_questions`, `max_updates`, and `max_connections` columns store the per-hour limits, and the `max_user_connections` column stores the `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit. (See Section 4.3, “Grant Tables”.)

Resource-use counting takes place when any account has a nonzero limit placed on its use of any of the resources.

As the server runs, it counts the number of times each account uses resources. If an account reaches its limit on number of connections within the last hour, the server rejects further connections for the account until that hour is up. Similarly, if the account reaches its limit on the number of queries or updates, the server rejects further queries or updates until the hour is up. In all such cases, the server issues appropriate error messages.

Resource counting occurs per account, not per client. For example, if your account has a query limit of 50, you cannot increase your limit to 100 by making two simultaneous client connections to the server. Queries issued on both connections are counted together.

The current per-hour resource-use counts can be reset globally for all accounts, or individually for a given account:

- To reset the current counts to zero for all accounts, issue a `FLUSH USER_RESOURCES` statement. The counts also can be reset by reloading the grant tables (for example, with a `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement or a `mysqladmin reload` command).
Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

- The counts for an individual account can be reset to zero by setting any of its limits again. Specify a limit value equal to the value currently assigned to the account.

Per-hour counter resets do not affect the `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit.

All counts begin at zero when the server starts. Counts do not carry over through server restarts.

For the `MAX_USER_CONNECTIONS` limit, an edge case can occur if the account currently has open the maximum number of connections permitted to it: A disconnect followed quickly by a connect can result in an error (`ER_TOO_MANY_USER_CONNECTIONS` or `ER_USER_LIMIT_REACHED`) if the server has not fully processed the disconnect by the time the connect occurs. When the server finishes disconnect processing, another connection will once more be permitted.

4.17 Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

If you encounter problems when you try to connect to the MySQL server, the following items describe some courses of action you can take to correct the problem.

- Make sure that the server is running. If it is not, clients cannot connect to it. For example, if an attempt to connect to the server fails with a message such as one of those following, one cause might be that the server is not running:

  shell> `mysql`  
  ERROR 2003: Can't connect to MySQL server on 'host_name' (111)  
  shell> `mysql`  
  ERROR 2002: Can't connect to local MySQL server through socket '/tmp/mysql.sock' (111)

- It might be that the server is running, but you are trying to connect using a TCP/IP port, named pipe, or Unix socket file different from the one on which the server is listening. To correct this when you invoke a client program, specify a `--port` option to indicate the proper port number, or a `--socket` option to indicate the proper named pipe or Unix socket file. To find out where the socket file is, you can use this command:

  shell> `netstat -ln | grep mysql`

- Make sure that the server has not been configured to ignore network connections or (if you are attempting to connect remotely) that it has not been configured to listen only locally on its network interfaces. If the server was started with `--skip-networking`, it will not accept TCP/IP connections at all. If the server was started with the `bind_address` system variable set to `127.0.0.1`, it will listen for TCP/IP connections only locally on the loopback interface and will not accept remote connections.

- Check to make sure that there is no firewall blocking access to MySQL. Your firewall may be configured on the basis of the application being executed, or the port number used by MySQL for communication (3306 by default). Under Linux or Unix, check your IP tables (or similar) configuration to ensure that the port has not been blocked. Under Windows, applications such as ZoneAlarm or Windows Firewall may need to be configured not to block the MySQL port.

- The grant tables must be properly set up so that the server can use them for access control. For some distribution types (such as binary distributions on Windows, or RPM distributions on Linux), the installation process initializes the MySQL data directory, including the `mysql` system database containing the grant tables. For distributions that do not do this, you must initialize the data directory manually. For details, see Chapter 3, Postinstallation Setup and Testing.

To determine whether you need to initialize the grant tables, look for a `mysql` directory under the data directory. (The data directory normally is named `data` or `var` and is located under your MySQL installation directory.) Make sure that you have a file named `user.MYD` in the `mysql` database directory. If not, initialize the data directory. After doing so and starting the server, you should be able to connect to the server.
Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

- After a fresh installation, if you try to log on to the server as root without using a password, you might get the following error message.

  ```shell
  mysql -u root
  ERROR 1045 (28000): Access denied for user 'root'@'localhost' (using password: NO)
  ```

  It means a root password has already been assigned during installation and it has to be supplied. See Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account” on the different ways the password could have been assigned and, in some cases, how to find it. If you need to reset the root password, see instructions in How to Reset the Root Password. After you have found or reset your password, log on again as root using the --password (or -p) option:

  ```shell
  mysql -u root -p
  Enter password:
  ```

- However, the server is going to let you connect as root without using a password if you have initialized MySQL using `mysqld --initialize-insecure` (see Section 3.1, “Initializing the Data Directory” for details). That is a security risk, so you should set a password for the root account; see Section 3.4, “Securing the Initial MySQL Account” for instructions.

- If you have updated an existing MySQL installation to a newer version, did you perform the MySQL upgrade procedure? If not, do so. The structure of the grant tables changes occasionally when new capabilities are added, so after an upgrade you should always make sure that your tables have the current structure. For instructions, see Upgrading MySQL.

- If a client program receives the following error message when it tries to connect, it means that the server expects passwords in a newer format than the client is capable of generating:

  ```shell
  mysql
  Client does not support authentication protocol requested by server; consider upgrading MySQL client
  ```

  For information on how to deal with this, see Section 6.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin”.

- Remember that client programs use connection parameters specified in option files or environment variables. If a client program seems to be sending incorrect default connection parameters when you have not specified them on the command line, check any applicable option files and your environment. For example, if you get Access denied when you run a client without any options, make sure that you have not specified an old password in any of your option files!

  You can suppress the use of option files by a client program by invoking it with the --no-defaults option. For example:

  ```shell
  mysqladmin --no-defaults -u root version
  ```

  The option files that clients use are listed in Using Option Files. Environment variables are listed in MySQL Environment Variables.

- If you get the following error, it means that you are using an incorrect root password:

  ```shell
  mysqladmin -u root -pxxxx version
  Access denied for user 'root'@'localhost' (using password: YES)
  ```

  If the preceding error occurs even when you have not specified a password, it means that you have an incorrect password listed in some option file. Try the --no-defaults option as described in the previous item.

  For information on changing passwords, see Section 4.10, “Assigning Account Passwords”.
If you have lost or forgotten the root password, see How to Reset the Root Password.

- **localhost** is a synonym for your local host name, and is also the default host to which clients try to connect if you specify no host explicitly.

You can use a `--host=127.0.0.1` option to name the server host explicitly. This will make a TCP/IP connection to the local mysqld server. You can also use TCP/IP by specifying a `--host` option that uses the actual host name of the local host. In this case, the host name must be specified in a user table row on the server host, even though you are running the client program on the same host as the server.

- The Access denied error message tells you who you are trying to log in as, the client host from which you are trying to connect, and whether you were using a password. Normally, you should have one row in the user table that exactly matches the host name and user name that were given in the error message. For example, if you get an error message that contains using password: NO, it means that you tried to log in without a password.

- If you get an Access denied error when trying to connect to the database with `mysql -u user_name`, you may have a problem with the user table. Check this by executing `mysql -u root mysql` and issuing this SQL statement:

  ```sql
  SELECT * FROM user;
  ```

  The result should include a row with the **Host** and **User** columns matching your client's host name and your MySQL user name.

- If the following error occurs when you try to connect from a host other than the one on which the MySQL server is running, it means that there is no row in the user table with a **Host** value that matches the client host:

  ```
  Host ... is not allowed to connect to this MySQL server
  ```

  You can fix this by setting up an account for the combination of client host name and user name that you are using when trying to connect.

  If you do not know the IP address or host name of the machine from which you are connecting, you should put a row with '%' as the **Host** column value in the user table. After trying to connect from the client machine, use a SELECT USER() query to see how you really did connect. Then change the '%' in the user table row to the actual host name that shows up in the log. Otherwise, your system is left insecure because it permits connections from any host for the given user name.

  On Linux, another reason that this error might occur is that you are using a binary MySQL version that is compiled with a different version of the glibc library than the one you are using. In this case, you should either upgrade your operating system or glibc, or download a source distribution of MySQL version and compile it yourself. A source RPM is normally trivial to compile and install, so this is not a big problem.

- If you specify a host name when trying to connect, but get an error message where the host name is not shown or is an IP address, it means that the MySQL server got an error when trying to resolve the IP address of the client host to a name:

  ```
  shell> mysqladmin -u root -pxxxx -h some_hostname ver
  Access denied for user 'root'@'' (using password: YES)
  ```

  If you try to connect as root and get the following error, it means that you do not have a row in the user table with a **User** column value of 'root' and that mysqld cannot resolve the host name for your client:
Troubleshooting Problems Connecting to MySQL

Access denied for user ''@'unknown'

These errors indicate a DNS problem. To fix it, execute `mysqladmin flush-hosts` to reset the internal DNS host cache. See DNS Lookup Optimization and the Host Cache.

Some permanent solutions are:

- Determine what is wrong with your DNS server and fix it.
- Specify IP addresses rather than host names in the MySQL grant tables.
- Put an entry for the client machine name in `/etc/hosts` on Unix or `\windows\hosts` on Windows.
- Start `mysqld` with the `--skip-name-resolve` option.
- Start `mysqld` with the `--skip-host-cache` option.
- On Unix, if you are running the server and the client on the same machine, connect to `localhost`. For connections to `localhost`, MySQL programs attempt to connect to the local server by using a Unix socket file, unless there are connection parameters specified to ensure that the client makes a TCP/IP connection. For more information, see Connecting to the MySQL Server Using Command Options.
- On Windows, if you are running the server and the client on the same machine and the server supports named pipe connections, connect to the host name . (period). Connections to . use a named pipe rather than TCP/IP.
- If `mysql -u root` works but `mysql -h your_hostname -u root` results in Access denied (where `your_hostname` is the actual host name of the local host), you may not have the correct name for your host in the `user` table. A common problem here is that the `Host` value in the `user` table row specifies an unqualified host name, but your system’s name resolution routines return a fully qualified domain name (or vice versa). For example, if you have a row with host `pluto` in the `user` table, but your DNS tells MySQL that your host name is `pluto.example.com`, the row does not work. Try adding a row to the `user` table that contains the IP address of your host as the `Host` column value. (Alternatively, you could add a row to the `user` table with a `Host` value that contains a wildcard (for example, `pluto.%`). However, use of `Host` values ending with `%` is insecure and is not recommended!)
- If `mysql -u user_name` works but `mysql -u user_name some_db` does not, you have not granted access to the given user for the database named `some_db`.
- If `mysql -u user_name` works when executed on the server host, but `mysql -h host_name -u user_name` does not work when executed on a remote client host, you have not enabled access to the server for the given user name from the remote host.
- If you cannot figure out why you get Access denied, remove from the `user` table all rows that have `Host` values containing wildcards (rows that contain `%' or `_` characters). A very common error is to insert a new row with `Host='%'` and `User='some_user'`, thinking that this enables you to specify `localhost` to connect from the same machine. The reason that this does not work is that the default privileges include a row with `Host='localhost'` and `User=''. Because that row has a `Host` value `localhost` that is more specific than `%'`, it is used in preference to the new row when connecting from `localhost`! The correct procedure is to insert a second row with `Host='localhost'` and `User='some_user'`, or to delete the row with `Host='localhost'` and `User=''. After deleting the row, remember to issue a `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement to reload the grant tables. See also Section 4.5, "Access Control, Stage 1: Connection Verification".
- If you are able to connect to the MySQL server, but get an Access denied message whenever you issue a `SELECT ... INTO OUTFILE` or `LOAD DATA` statement, your row in the `user` table does not have the `FILE` privilege enabled.
• If you change the grant tables directly (for example, by using `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or `DELETE` statements) and your changes seem to be ignored, remember that you must execute a `FLUSH PRIVILEGES` statement or a `mysqladmin flush-privileges` command to cause the server to reload the privilege tables. Otherwise, your changes have no effect until the next time the server is restarted. Remember that after you change the `root` password with an `UPDATE` statement, you will not need to specify the new password until after you flush the privileges, because the server will not know you've changed the password yet!

• If your privileges seem to have changed in the middle of a session, it may be that a MySQL administrator has changed them. Reloading the grant tables affects new client connections, but it also affects existing connections as indicated in Section 4.9, “When Privilege Changes Take Effect”.

• If you have access problems with a Perl, PHP, Python, or ODBC program, try to connect to the server with `mysql -u user_name db_name` or `mysql -u user_name -ppassword db_name`. If you are able to connect using the `mysql` client, the problem lies with your program, not with the access privileges. (There is no space between `-p` and the password; you can also use the `--password=password` syntax to specify the password. If you use the `-p` or `--password` option with no password value, MySQL prompts you for the password.)

• For testing purposes, start the `mysqld` server with the `--skip-grant-tables` option. Then you can change the MySQL grant tables and use the `SHOW GRANTS` statement to check whether your modifications have the desired effect. When you are satisfied with your changes, execute `mysqladmin flush-privileges` to tell the `mysqld` server to reload the privileges. This enables you to begin using the new grant table contents without stopping and restarting the server.

• If everything else fails, start the `mysqld` server with a debugging option (for example, `--debug=d,general,query`). This prints host and user information about attempted connections, as well as information about each command issued. See The DBUG Package.

• If you have any other problems with the MySQL grant tables and ask on the MySQL Community Slack, always provide a dump of the MySQL grant tables. You can dump the tables with the `mysqldump mysql` command. To file a bug report, see the instructions at How to Report Bugs or Problems. In some cases, you may need to restart `mysqld` with `--skip-grant-tables` to run `mysqldump`.

### 4.18 SQL-Based Account Activity Auditing

Applications can use the following guidelines to perform SQL-based auditing that ties database activity to MySQL accounts.

MySQL accounts correspond to rows in the `mysql.user` system table. When a client connects successfully, the server authenticates the client to a particular row in this table. The `User` and `Host` column values in this row uniquely identify the account and correspond to the `'user_name'@'host_name'` format in which account names are written in SQL statements.

The account used to authenticate a client determines which privileges the client has. Normally, the `CURRENT_USER()` function can be invoked to determine which account this is for the client user. Its value is constructed from the `User` and `Host` columns of the `user` table row for the account.

However, there are circumstances under which the `CURRENT_USER()` value corresponds not to the client user but to a different account. This occurs in contexts when privilege checking is not based the client’s account:

• Stored routines (procedures and functions) defined with the `SQL SECURITY DEFINER` characteristic

• Views defined with the `SQL SECURITY DEFINER` characteristic

• Triggers and events

In those contexts, privilege checking is done against the `DEFINER` account and `CURRENT_USER()` refers to that account, not to the account for the client who invoked the stored routine or view or who
caused the trigger to activate. To determine the invoking user, you can call the `USER()` function, which
returns a value indicating the actual user name provided by the client and the host from which the client
connected. However, this value does not necessarily correspond directly to an account in the `user`
table, because the `USER()` value never contains wildcards, whereas account values (as returned by
`CURRENT_USER()`) may contain user name and host name wildcards.

For example, a blank user name matches any user, so an account of `'@localhost'` enables
clients to connect as an anonymous user from the local host with any user name. In this case, if a client
connects as `user1` from the local host, `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` return different values:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+-----------------+----------------+
| USER()          | CURRENT_USER() |
+-----------------+----------------+
| user1@localhost | @localhost     |
+-----------------+----------------+
```

The host name part of an account can contain wildcards, too. If the host name contains a `%` or
`_` pattern character or uses netmask notation, the account can be used for clients connecting from
multiple hosts and the `CURRENT_USER()` value will not indicate which one. For example, the account
`'user2'@'%.example.com'` can be used by `user2` to connect from any host in the `example.com`
domain. If `user2` connects from `remote.example.com`, `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` return
different values:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER();
+--------------------------+---------------------+
| USER()                   | CURRENT_USER()      |
+--------------------------+---------------------+
| user2@remote.example.com | user2@%.example.com |
+--------------------------+---------------------+
```

If an application must invoke `USER()` for user auditing (for example, if it does auditing from within
triggers) but must also be able to associate the `USER()` value with an account in the `user`
table, it is necessary to avoid accounts that contain wildcards in the `User` or `Host` column. Specifically, do
not permit `User` to be empty (which creates an anonymous-user account), and do not permit pattern
characters or netmask notation in `Host` values. All accounts must have a nonempty `User` value and
literal `Host` value.

With respect to the previous examples, the `'@localhost'` and `'user2'@'%.example.com'`
accounts should be changed not to use wildcards:

```sql
RENAME USER ''@localhost' TO 'user1'@'localhost';
RENAME USER 'user2'@'%.example.com' TO 'user2'@'remote.example.com';
```

If `user2` must be able to connect from several hosts in the `example.com` domain, there should be a
separate account for each host.

To extract the user name or host name part from a `CURRENT_USER()` or `USER()` value, use the
`SUBSTRING_INDEX()` function:

```sql
mysql> SELECT SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',1);
+---------------------------------------+
| SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',1) |
+---------------------------------------+
| user1                                 |
+---------------------------------------+
mysql>
```

```sql
mysql> SELECT SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',-1);
+----------------------------------------+
| SUBSTRING_INDEX(CURRENT_USER(),'@',-1) |
+----------------------------------------+
| localhost                              |
+----------------------------------------+
```
Chapter 5 Using Encrypted Connections

Table of Contents

5.1 Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections ................................................................. 85
5.2 Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers ................................................................... 89
5.3 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys ............................................................................. 95
  5.3.1 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL ............................................ 95
  5.3.2 Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl ......................................................... 98
  5.3.3 Creating RSA Keys Using openssl .................................................................................. 103
5.4 SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities .......................................................................................... 103
5.5 Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH ...................................................... 104

With an unencrypted connection between the MySQL client and the server, someone with access to
the network could watch all your traffic and inspect the data being sent or received between client and
server.

When you must move information over a network in a secure fashion, an unencrypted connection
is unacceptable. To make any kind of data unreadable, use encryption. Encryption algorithms must
include security elements to resist many kinds of known attacks such as changing the order of
encrypted messages or replaying data twice.

MySQL supports encrypted connections between clients and the server using the TLS (Transport
Layer Security) protocol. TLS is sometimes referred to as SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) but MySQL
does not actually use the SSL protocol for encrypted connections because its encryption is weak (see
Section 5.2, “Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers”).

TLS uses encryption algorithms to ensure that data received over a public network can be trusted. It
has mechanisms to detect data change, loss, or replay. TLS also incorporates algorithms that provide
identity verification using the X.509 standard.

X.509 makes it possible to identify someone on the Internet. In basic terms, there should be some
entity called a “Certificate Authority” (or CA) that assigns electronic certificates to anyone who needs
them. Certificates rely on asymmetric encryption algorithms that have two encryption keys (a public key
and a secret key). A certificate owner can present the certificate to another party as proof of identity. A
certificate consists of its owner’s public key. Any data encrypted using this public key can be decrypted
only using the corresponding secret key, which is held by the owner of the certificate.

MySQL can be compiled for encrypted-connection support using OpenSSL or yaSSL. For a
comparison of the two packages, see Section 5.4, “SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities” For
information about the encryption protocols and ciphers each package supports, see Section 5.2,
“Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers”.

Note

It is possible to compile MySQL using yaSSL as an alternative to OpenSSL only
prior to MySQL 5.7.28. As of MySQL 5.7.28, support for yaSSL is removed and
all MySQL builds use OpenSSL.

By default, MySQL programs attempt to connect using encryption if the server supports encrypted
connections, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be
established. For information about options that affect use of encrypted connections, see Section 5.1,
“Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections” and Command Options for Encrypted
Connections.

MySQL performs encryption on a per-connection basis, and use of encryption for a given user can be
optional or mandatory. This enables you to choose an encrypted or unencrypted connection according
to the requirements of individual applications. For information on how to require users to use encrypted connections, see the discussion of the REQUIRE clause of the CREATE USER statement in CREATE USER Syntax. See also the description of the require_secure_transport system variable at Server System Variables.

Encrypted connections can be used between master and slave replication servers. See Setting Up Replication to Use Encrypted Connections.

For information about using encrypted connections from the MySQL C API, see C API Encrypted Connection Support.

It is also possible to connect using encryption from within an SSH connection to the MySQL server host. For an example, see Section 5.5, “Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH”.

Several improvements were made to encrypted-connection support in MySQL 5.7. The following timeline summarizes the changes:

- 5.7.3: On the client side, an explicit --ssl option is no longer advisory but prescriptive. Given a server enabled to support encrypted connections, a client program can require an encrypted connection by specifying only the --ssl option. (Previously, it was necessary for the client to specify either the --ssl-ca option, or all three of the --ssl-ca, --ssl-key, and --ssl-cert options.) The connection attempt fails if an encrypted connection cannot be established. Other --ssl-xxx options on the client side are advisory in the absence of --ssl: The client attempts to connect using encryption but falls back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established.

- 5.7.5: The server-side --ssl option value is enabled by default. For servers compiled using OpenSSL, the auto_generate_certs and sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys system variables are available to enable autogeneration and autodiscovery of SSL/RSA certificate and key files at startup. For certificate and key autodiscovery, if --ssl is enabled and other --ssl-xxx options are not given to configure encrypted connections explicitly, the server attempts to enable support for encrypted connections automatically at startup if it discovers the requisite certificate and key files in the data directory.

- 5.7.6: The mysql_ssl_rsa_setup utility is available to make it easier to manually generate SSL/RSA certificate and key files. Autodiscovery of SSL/RSA files at startup is expanded to apply to all servers, whether compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL. (This means that auto_generate_certs need not be enabled for autodiscovery to occur.) If the server discovers at startup that the CA certificate is self-signed, it writes a warning to the error log. (The certificate is self-signed if created automatically by the server, or manually using mysql_ssl_rsa_setup.)

- 5.7.7: The C client library attempts to establish an encrypted connection by default if the server supports encrypted connections. This affects client programs as follows:
  - In the absence of an --ssl option, clients attempt to connect using encryption, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established.
  - The presence of an explicit --ssl option or a synonym (--ssl=1, --enable-ssl) is prescriptive: Clients require an encrypted connection and fail if one cannot be established.
  - With an --ssl=0 option or a synonym (--skip-ssl, --disable-ssl), clients use an unencrypted connection.

This change also affects subsequent releases of MySQL Connectors that are based on the C client library: Connector/C, Connector/C++, and Connector/ODBC.

- 5.7.8: The require_secure_transport system variable is available to control whether client connections to the server must use some form of secure transport.
5.7.10: TLS protocol support is extended from TLSv1 to also include TLSv1.1 and TLSv1.2. The `tls_version` system variable on the server side and `--tls-version` option on the client side enable the level of support to be selected. See Section 5.2, "Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers".

5.7.11: MySQL client programs support an `--ssl-mode` option that enables you to specify the security state of the connection to the server. The `--ssl-mode` option comprises the capabilities of the client-side `--ssl` and `--ssl-verify-server-cert` options. Consequently, `--ssl` and `--ssl-verify-server-cert` are deprecated, and are removed in MySQL 8.0.

5.7.28: Support for yaSSL was removed. All MySQL builds use OpenSSL.

5.1 Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections

Several options are available to indicate whether to use encrypted connections, and to specify the appropriate certificate and key files. This section provides general guidance about configuring the server and clients for encrypted connections:

- Server-Side Startup Configuration for Encrypted Connections
- Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections
- Configuring Encrypted Connections as Mandatory

For a complete list of options related to establishment of encrypted connections, see Command Options for Encrypted Connections. Instructions for creating any required certificate and key files are available in Section 5.3, "Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys".

Encrypted connections also can be used in these contexts:

- Between master and slave replication servers. See Setting Up Replication to Use Encrypted Connections.
- Among Group Replication servers. See Group Replication Secure Socket Layer (SSL) Support.
- By client programs that are based on the MySQL C API. See C API Encrypted Connection Support.

Server-Side Startup Configuration for Encrypted Connections

On the server side, the `--ssl` option specifies that the server permits but does not require encrypted connections. This option is enabled by default, so it need not be specified explicitly.

To require that clients connect using encrypted connections, enable the `require_secure_transport` system variable. See Configuring Encrypted Connections as Mandatory.

These options on the server side specify the certificate and key files the server uses when permitting clients to establish encrypted connections:

- `--ssl-ca`: The path name of the Certificate Authority (CA) certificate file. (`--ssl-capath` is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of CA certificate files.)

- `--ssl-cert`: The path name of the server public key certificate file. This certificate can be sent to the client and authenticated against the CA certificate that it has.

- `--ssl-key`: The path name of the server private key file.

For example, to enable the server for encrypted connections, start it with these lines in the `my.cnf` file, changing the file names as necessary:

```
[mysqld]
```
To specify in addition that clients are required to use encrypted connections, enable the `require_secure_transport` system variable:

```
[mysqld]
ssl-ca=ca.pem
ssl-cert=server-cert.pem
ssl-key=server-key.pem
require_secure_transport=ON
```

Each certificate and key option names a file in PEM format. Should you need to create the required certificate and key files, see Section 5.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”. MySQL servers compiled using OpenSSL can generate missing certificate and key files automatically at startup. See Section 5.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”. Alternatively, if you have a MySQL source distribution, you can test your setup using the demonstration certificate and key files in its `mysql-test/std_data` directory.

The server performs certificate and key file autodiscovery. If `--ssl` is enabled (possibly along with `--ssl-cipher`) and other `--ssl-xxx` options are not given to configure encrypted connections explicitly, the server attempts to enable encrypted connection support automatically at startup:

- If the server discovers valid certificate and key files named `ca.pem`, `server-cert.pem`, and `server-key.pem` in the data directory, it enables support for encrypted connections by clients. (The files need not have been generated automatically; what matters is that they have those names and are valid.)
- If the server does not find valid certificate and key files in the data directory, it continues executing but without support for encrypted connections.

If the server automatically enables encrypted connection support, it writes a note to the error log. If the server discovers that the CA certificate is self-signed, it writes a warning to the error log. (The certificate is self-signed if created automatically by the server or manually using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`.)

MySQL also provides these options for server-side SSL control:

- `--ssl-cipher`: The list of permissible ciphers for connection encryption.
- `--ssl-crl`: The path name of the file containing certificate revocation lists. `--ssl-crlpath` is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of certificate revocation-list files.

The values of the `--ssl-xxx` options set the values of the corresponding system variables (`ssl_ca`, `ssl_cert`, `ssl_key`, and so forth).

To explicitly specify which encryption protocols the server permits, use the `tls_version` system variable; see Section 5.2, “Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers”. For example, you can set this variable to prevent clients from using less-secure protocols.

### Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections

By default, MySQL client programs attempt to establish an encrypted connection if the server supports encrypted connections, with further control available through the `--ssl-mode` option:

- In the absence of an `--ssl-mode` option, clients attempt to connect using encryption, falling back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established. This is also the behavior with an explicit `--ssl-mode=PREFERRED` option.
- With `--ssl-mode=REQUIRED`, clients require an encrypted connection and fail if one cannot be established.
Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections

• With --ssl-mode=DISABLED, clients use an unencrypted connection.

• With --ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA or --ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY, clients require an encrypted connection, and also perform verification against the server CA certificate and (with VERIFY_IDENTITY) against the server host name in its certificate.

Attempts to establish an unencrypted connection fail if the require_secure_transport system variable is enabled on the server side to cause the server to require encrypted connections. See Configuring Encrypted Connections as Mandatory.

The following options on the client side identify the certificate and key files clients use when establishing encrypted connections to the server. They are similar to the options used on the server side, but --ssl-cert and --ssl-key identify the client public and private key:

• --ssl-ca: The path name of the Certificate Authority (CA) certificate file. This option, if used, must specify the same certificate used by the server. (--ssl-capath is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of CA certificate files.)

• --ssl-cert: The path name of the client public key certificate file.

• --ssl-key: The path name of the client private key file.

For additional security relative to that provided by the default encryption, clients can supply a CA certificate matching the one used by the server and enable host name identity verification. In this way, the server and client place their trust in the same CA certificate and the client verifies that the host to which it connected is the one intended:

• To specify the CA certificate, use --ssl-ca (or --ssl-capath), and specify --ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA.

• To enable host name identity verification as well, use --ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY rather than --ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA.

Note

Host name identity verification with VERIFY_IDENTITY does not work with self-signed certificates that are created automatically by the server or manually using mysql_ssl_rsa_setup (see Section 5.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”). Such self-signed certificates do not contain the server name as the Common Name value.

Host name identity verification also does not work with certificates that specify the Common Name using wildcards because that name is compared verbatim to the server name.

MySQL also provides these options for client-side SSL control:

• --ssl-cipher: The list of permissible ciphers for connection encryption.

• --ssl-crl: The path name of the file containing certificate revocation lists. (--ssl-crlpath is similar but specifies the path name of a directory of certificate revocation-list files.)

• --tls-version: The permitted encryption protocols; see Section 5.2, “Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers”.

Depending on the encryption requirements of the MySQL account used by a client, the client may be required to specify certain options to connect using encryption to the MySQL server.

Suppose that you want to connect using an account that has no special encryption requirements or that was created using a CREATE USER statement that included the REQUIRE SSL clause. Assuming that the server supports encrypted connections, a client can connect using encryption with no --ssl-mode option or with an explicit --ssl-mode=PREFERRED option:
Client-Side Configuration for Encrypted Connections

mysql

Or:

mysql --ssl-mode=PREFERRED

For an account created with a `REQUIRE SSL` clause, the connection attempt fails if an encrypted connection cannot be established. For an account with no special encryption requirements, the attempt falls back to an unencrypted connection if an encrypted connection cannot be established. To prevent fallback and fail if an encrypted connection cannot be obtained, connect like this:

mysql --ssl-mode=REQUIRED

If the account has more stringent security requirements, other options must be specified to establish an encrypted connection:

- For accounts created with a `REQUIRE X509` clause, clients must specify at least `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key`. In addition, `--ssl-ca` (or `--ssl-capath`) is recommended so that the public certificate provided by the server can be verified. For example:

  mysql --ssl-ca=ca.pem \
  --ssl-cert=client-cert.pem \
  --ssl-key=client-key.pem

- For accounts created with a `REQUIRE ISSUER` or `REQUIRE SUBJECT` clause, the encryption requirements are the same as for `REQUIRE X509`, but the certificate must match the issue or subject, respectively, specified in the account definition.

For additional information about the `REQUIRE` clause, see CREATE USER Syntax.

To prevent use of encryption and override other `--ssl-xxx` options, invoke the client program with `--ssl-mode=DISABLED`:

mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED

To determine whether the current connection with the server uses encryption, check the session value of the `Ssl_cipher` status variable. If the value is empty, the connection is not encrypted. Otherwise, the connection is encrypted and the value indicates the encryption cipher. For example:

```
mysql> SHOW SESSION STATUS LIKE 'Ssl_cipher';
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Variable_name | Value                     |
+---------------+---------------------------+
| Ssl_cipher    | DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 |
+---------------+---------------------------+
```

For the `mysql` client, an alternative is to use the `STATUS` or `\s` command and check the `SSL` line:

```
mysql> \s
...           
SSL: Not in use
...           
```

Or:

```
mysql> \s
...           
SSL: Cipher in use is DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
...           
```
Configuring Encrypted Connections as Mandatory

For some MySQL deployments it may be not only desirable but mandatory to use encrypted connections (for example, to satisfy regulatory requirements). This section discusses configuration settings that enable you to do this. These levels of control are available:

- You can configure the server to require the clients connect using encrypted connections.
- You can invoke individual client programs to require an encrypted connection, even if the server permits but does not require encryption.
- You can configure individual MySQL accounts to be usable only over encrypted connections.

To require that clients connect using encrypted connections, enable the `require_secure_transport` system variable. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:

```
[mysqld]
require_secure_transport=ON
```

With `require_secure_transport` enabled, client connections to the server are required to use some form of secure transport, and the server permits only TCP/IP connections that use SSL, or connections that use a socket file (on Unix) or shared memory (on Windows). The server rejects nonsecure connection attempts, which fail with an `ER_SECURE_TRANSPORT_REQUIRED` error.

To invoke a client program such that it requires an encrypted connection whether or not the server requires encryption, use an `--ssl-mode` option value of `REQUIRED`, `VERIFY_CA`, or `VERIFY_IDENTITY`. For example:

```
mysql --ssl-mode=REQUIRED
mysqldump --ssl-mode=VERIFY_CA
mysqladmin --ssl-mode=VERIFY_IDENTITY
```

To configure a MySQL account to be usable only over encrypted connections, include a `REQUIRE` clause in the `CREATE USER` statement that creates the account, specifying in that clause the encryption characteristics you require. For example, to require an encrypted connection and the use of a valid X.509 certificate, use `REQUIRE X509`:

```
CREATE USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost' REQUIRE X509;
```

For additional information about the `REQUIRE` clause, see `CREATE USER Syntax`.

To modify existing accounts that have no encryption requirements, use the `ALTER USER` statement.

### 5.2 Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers

MySQL supports multiple TLS protocols and ciphers, and enables configuring which protocols and ciphers to permit for encrypted connections. It is also possible to determine which protocol and cipher the current session uses.

- Supported Connection TLS Protocols
- Connection TLS Protocol Configuration
- Connection Cipher Configuration
- Connection TLS Protocol Negotiation
Supported Connection TLS Protocols

MySQL supports encrypted connections using the TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2 protocols, listed in order from less secure to more secure. The set of protocols actually permitted for connections is subject to multiple factors:

- **MySQL configuration.** Permitted TLS protocols can be configured on both the server side and client side to include only a subset of the supported TLS protocols. The configuration on both sides must include at least one protocol in common or connection attempts cannot negotiate a protocol to use. For details, see [Connection TLS Protocol Negotiation](#).

- **System-wide host configuration.** The host system may permit only certain TLS protocols, which means that MySQL connections cannot use nonpermitted protocols even if MySQL itself permits them:

  - Suppose that MySQL configuration permits TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2, but your host system configuration permits only connections that use TLSv1.2 or higher. In this case, you cannot establish MySQL connections that use TLSv1 or TLSv1.1, even though MySQL is configured to permit them, because the host system does not permit them.

  - If MySQL configuration permits TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2, but your host system configuration permits only connections that use TLSv1.3 or higher, you cannot establish MySQL connections at all, because no protocol permitted by MySQL is permitted by the host system.

**Workarounds for this issue include:**

- Change the system-wide host configuration to permit additional TLS protocols. Consult your operating system documentation for instructions. For example, your system may have an `/etc/ssl/openssl.cnf` file that contains these lines to restrict TLS protocols to TLSv1.2 or higher:

  ```
  [system_default_sect]
  MinProtocol = TLSv1.2
  ```

  Changing the value to a lower protocol version or `None` makes the system more permissive. However, this workaround has the disadvantage that permitting lower (less secure) protocols may have adverse security consequences.

- If you cannot or prefer not to change the host system TLS configuration, change MySQL applications to use higher (more secure) TLS protocols that are permitted by the host system. This may not be possible for older versions of MySQL that support only lower protocol versions. For example, TLSv1 is the only supported protocol prior to MySQL 5.6.46, so attempts to connect to a pre-5.6.46 server fail even if the client is from a newer MySQL version that supports higher protocol versions. In such cases, an upgrade to a version of MySQL that supports additional TLS versions may be required.

- The SSL library. If the SSL library does not support a particular protocol, neither does MySQL, and any parts of the following discussion that specify that protocol do not apply.

  - When compiled using OpenSSL 1.0.1 or higher, MySQL supports the TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2 protocols.

  - When compiled using yaSSL, MySQL supports the TLSv1 and TLSv1.1 protocols.

**Note**

It is possible to compile MySQL using yaSSL as an alternative to OpenSSL only prior to MySQL 5.7.28. As of MySQL 5.7.28, support for yaSSL is removed and all MySQL builds use OpenSSL.
Connection TLS Protocol Configuration

On the server side, the value of the `tls_version` system variable determines which TLS protocols a MySQL server permits for encrypted connections. The `tls_version` value applies to connections from clients and from slave servers using regular master/slave replication. The variable value is a list of one or more comma-separated protocol versions from this list (not case-sensitive): TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2. By default, this variable lists all protocols supported by the SSL library used to compile MySQL (TLSv1, TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2 for OpenSSL, TLSv1, TLSv1.1 for yaSSL). To determine the value of `tls_version` at runtime, use this statement:

```
mysql> SHOW GLOBAL VARIABLES LIKE 'tls_version';
```

```
+---------------+-----------------------+
| Variable_name | Value                 |
|---------------+-----------------------|
| tls_version   | TLSv1,TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2 |
+---------------+-----------------------+
```

To change the value of `tls_version`, set it at server startup. For example, to permit connections that use the TLSv1.1 or TLSv1.2 protocol, but prohibit connections that use the less-secure TLSv1 protocol, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:

```
[mysqld]
tls_version=TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2
```

To be even more restrictive and permit only TLSv1.2 connections, set `tls_version` like this (assuming that your server is compiled using OpenSSL because yaSSL does not support TLSv1.2):

```
[mysqld]
tls_version=TLSv1.2
```

On the client side, the `--tls-version` option specifies which TLS protocols a client program permits for connections to the server. The format of the option value is the same as for the `tls_version` system variable described previously (a list of one or more comma-separated protocol versions).

For master/slave replication, the `MASTER_TLS_VERSION` option for the `CHANGE MASTER TO` statement specifies which TLS protocols a slave server permits for connections to the master. The format of the option value is the same as for the `tls_version` system variable described previously. See Setting Up Replication to Use Encrypted Connections.

The protocols that can be specified for `MASTER_TLS_VERSION` depend on the SSL library. This option is independent of and not affected by the server `tls_version` value. For example, a server that acts as a replication slave can be configured with `tls_version` set to TLSv1.2 to permit only incoming connections that use TLSv1.2, but also configured with `MASTER_TLS_VERSION` set to TLSv1.1 to permit only TLSv1.1 for outgoing slave connections to the master.

TLS protocol configuration affects which protocol a given connection uses, as described in Connection TLS Protocol Negotiation.

Permitted protocols should be chosen such as not to leave “holes” in the list. For example, these server configuration values do not have holes:

- `tls_version=TLSv1,TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2`
- `tls_version=TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2`
- `tls_version=TLSv1.2`

This value does have a hole and should not be used:

- `tls_version=TLSv1,TLSv1.2`
The prohibition on holes also applies in other configuration contexts, such as for clients or replication slaves.

Connection Cipher Configuration

A default set of ciphers applies to encrypted connections, which can be overridden by explicitly configuring the permitted ciphers. During connection establishment, both sides of a connection must permit some cipher in common or the connection fails. Of the permitted ciphers common to both sides, the SSL library chooses the one supported by the provided certificate that has the highest priority.

To specify a cipher or ciphers for encrypted connections, use the `--ssl-cipher` option, which is available for the server and for client programs.

For master/slave replication, the `MASTER_SSL_CIPHER` option for the `CHANGE MASTER TO` statement specifies which ciphers a slave server permits for connections to the master. See Setting Up Replication to Use Encrypted Connections.

A given cipher may work only with particular TLS protocols, which affects the TLS protocol negotiation process. See Connection TLS Protocol Negotiation.

To determine which ciphers a given server supports, check the session value of the `Ssl_cipher_list` status variable:

```
SHOW SESSION STATUS LIKE 'Ssl_cipher_list';
```

The `Ssl_cipher_list` status variable lists the possible SSL ciphers (empty for non-SSL connections). The set of available ciphers depends on your MySQL version and whether MySQL was compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL, and (for OpenSSL) the library version used to compile MySQL.

MySQL passes a default cipher list to the SSL library.

MySQL passes this default cipher list to OpenSSL:

```
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA384
ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA384
DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES128-GCM-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES256-GCM-SHA384
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA384
DHE-DSS-AES128-GCM-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES128-SHA256
DHE-DSS-AES256-GCM-SHA384
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA256
DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA384
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDH-ECDSA-AES256-SHA256
AES128-GCM-SHA256
TLS_DHE_DSS_WITH_AES_256_CBC_SHA
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
AES128-GCM-SHA256
DH-DSS-AES128-GCM-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256
AES256-GCM-SHA384
DH-DSS-AES256-GCM-SHA384
ECDH-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384
AES128-SHA256
DH-DSS-AES128-SHA256
ECDH-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256
AES256-SHA256
```
MySQL passes this default cipher list to yaSSL:

DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
DHE-RSA-AES128-SHA
AES128-SHA
DES-CBC3-RMD
DHE-RSA-AES256-RMD
DHE-RSA-AES128-RMD
DHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-RMD
AES256-SHA
RC4-SHA
RC4-MD5
DES-CBC3-SHA
DES-CBC-SHA
EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
EDH-RSA-DES-CBC-SHA
AES128-SHA:AES256-RMD

As of MySQL 5.7.10, these cipher restrictions are in place:

- The following ciphers are permanently restricted:

  !DHE-DSS-DES-CBC3-SHA
  !DHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
  !EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
  !EDH-ECDSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
  !EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA
  !EDH-ECDSA-DES-CBC3-SHA

- The following categories of ciphers are permanently restricted:

  !aNULL
If the server is started with an `--ssl-cert` option specifying a certificate that uses any of the preceding restricted ciphers or cipher categories, the server starts with support for encrypted connections disabled.

Connection TLS Protocol Negotiation

Connection attempts in MySQL negotiate use of the highest TLS protocol version available on both sides for which a protocol-compatible encryption cipher is available on both sides. The negotiation process depends on factors such as the SSL library used to compile the server and client, the TLS protocol and encryption cipher configuration, and which key size is used:

- For a connection attempt to succeed, the server and client TLS protocol configuration must permit some protocol in common.
- Similarly, the server and client encryption cipher configuration must permit some cipher in common. A given cipher may work only with particular TLS protocols, so a protocol available to the negotiation process is not chosen unless there is also a compatible cipher.
- If the server and client are compiled using OpenSSL, TLSv1.2 is used if possible. If either or both the server and client are compiled using yaSSL, TLSv1.1 is used if possible. (“Possible” means that server and client configuration both must permit the indicated protocol, and both must also permit some protocol-compatible encryption cipher.) Otherwise, MySQL continues through the list of available protocols, proceeding from more secure protocols to less secure. Negotiation order is independent of the order in which protocols are configured. For example, negotiation order is the same regardless of whether `tls_version` has a value of `TLSv1,TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2` or `TLSv1.2,TLSv1.1,TLSv1`.

Note

Prior to MySQL 5.7.10, MySQL supports only TLSv1, for both OpenSSL and yaSSL, and no system variable or client option exist for specifying which TLS protocols to permit.

- TLSv1.2 does not work with all ciphers that have a key size of 512 bits or less. To use this protocol with such a key, use `--ssl-cipher` to specify the cipher name explicitly:

  AES128-SHA
  AES128-SHA256
  AES256-SHA
  AES256-SHA256
  CAMELLIA128-SHA
  CAMELLIA256-SHA
  DES-CBC3-SHA
  DHE-RSA-AES256-SHA
  RC4-MD5
  RC4-SHA
  SEED-SHA

- For better security, use a certificate with an RSA key size of at least 2048 bits.

If the server and client do not have a permitted protocol in common, and a protocol-compatible cipher in common, the server terminates the connection request. Examples:

- If the server is configured with `tls_version=TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2`: 
Monitoring Current Session TLS Protocol and Cipher

- Connection attempts fail for clients invoked with `--tls-version=TLSv1`, and for older clients that support only TLSv1.

- Similarly, connection attempts fail for replication slaves configured with `MASTER_TLS_VERSION = 'TLSv1'`, and for older slaves that support only TLSv1.

- If the server is configured with `tls_version=TLSv1` or is an older server that supports only TLSv1:
  - Connection attempts fail for clients invoked with `--tls-version=TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2`.
  - Similarly, connection attempts fail for replication slaves configured with `MASTER_TLS_VERSION = 'TLSv1.1,TLSv1.2'`.

MySQL permits specifying a list of protocols to support. This list is passed directly down to the underlying SSL library and is ultimately up to that library what protocols it actually enables from the supplied list. Please refer to the MySQL source code and the OpenSSL `SSL_CTX_new()` documentation for information about how the SSL library handles this.

### Monitoring Current Session TLS Protocol and Cipher

To determine which encryption TLS protocol and cipher the current session uses, check the session values of the `Ssl_version` and `Ssl_cipher` status variables:

```sql
mysql> SELECT * FROM performance_schema.session_status
WHERE VARIABLE_NAME IN ('Ssl_version', 'Ssl_cipher');

+---------------+--------------------------------------------------+
| VARIABLE_NAME | VARIABLE_VALUE                                  |
|---------------+--------------------------------------------------+
| Ssl_cipher    | DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256                        |
| Ssl_version   | TLSv1.2                                         |
+---------------+--------------------------------------------------+
```

If the connection is not encrypted, both variables have an empty value.

### 5.3 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys

The following discussion describes how to create the files required for SSL and RSA support in MySQL. File creation can be performed using facilities provided by MySQL itself, or by invoking the `openssl` command directly.

SSL certificate and key files enable MySQL to support encrypted connections using SSL. See Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

RSA key files enable MySQL to support secure password exchange over unencrypted connections for accounts authenticated by the `sha256_password` plugin. See Section 6.1.5, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

#### 5.3.1 Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL

MySQL provides these ways to create the SSL certificate and key files and RSA key-pair files required to support encrypted connections using SSL and secure password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections, if those files are missing:

- The server can autogenerate these files at startup, for MySQL distributions compiled using OpenSSL.

- Users can invoke the `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` utility manually.

- For some distribution types, such as RPM packages, `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` invocation occurs during data directory initialization. In this case, the MySQL distribution need not have been compiled using OpenSSL as long as the `openssl` command is available.
Important

Server autogeneration and `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` help lower the barrier to using SSL by making it easier to generate the required files. However, certificates generated by these methods are self-signed, which may not be very secure. After you gain experience using such files, consider obtaining certificate/key material from a registered certificate authority.

- Automatic SSL and RSA File Generation
- Manual SSL and RSA File Generation Using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`
- SSL and RSA File Characteristics

Automatic SSL and RSA File Generation

For MySQL distributions compiled using OpenSSL, the MySQL server has the capability of automatically generating missing SSL and RSA files at startup. The `auto_generate_certs` and `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variables control automatic generation of these files. These variables are enabled by default. They can be enabled at startup and inspected but not set at runtime.

At startup, the server automatically generates server-side and client-side SSL certificate and key files in the data directory if the `auto_generate_certs` system variable is enabled, no SSL options other than `--ssl` are specified, and the server-side SSL files are missing from the data directory. These files enable encrypted client connections using SSL; see Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

1. The server checks the data directory for SSL files with the following names:

   - ca.pem
   - server-cert.pem
   - server-key.pem

2. If any of those files are present, the server creates no SSL files. Otherwise, it creates them, plus some additional files:

   - ca.pem       Self-signed CA certificate
   - ca-key.pem   CA private key
   - server-cert.pem   Server certificate
   - server-key.pem   Server private key
   - client-cert.pem   Client certificate
   - client-key.pem   Client private key

3. If the server autogenerates SSL files, it uses the names of the `ca.pem`, `server-cert.pem`, and `server-key.pem` files to set the corresponding system variables (`ssl_ca`, `ssl_cert`, `ssl_key`).

At startup, the server automatically generates RSA private/public key-pair files in the data directory if all of these conditions are true: The `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variable is enabled; no RSA options are specified; the RSA files are missing from the data directory. These key-pair files enable secure password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections for accounts authenticated by the `sha256_password` plugin; see Section 6.1.5, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

1. The server checks the data directory for RSA files with the following names:

   - private_key.pem   Private member of private/public key pair
   - public_key.pem    Public member of private/public key pair

2. If any of these files are present, the server creates no RSA files. Otherwise, it creates them.
3. If the server autogenerates the RSA files, it uses their names to set the corresponding system variables (sha256_password_private_key_path, sha256_password_public_key_path).

**Manual SSL and RSA File Generation Using mysql_ssl_rsa_setup**

MySQL distributions include a `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` utility that can be invoked manually to generate SSL and RSA files. This utility is included with all MySQL distributions, but it does require that the `openssl` command be available. For usage instructions, see `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` — Create SSL/RSA Files.

**SSL and RSA File Characteristics**

SSL and RSA files created automatically by the server or by invoking `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` have these characteristics:

- SSL and RSA keys are have a size of 2048 bits.
- The SSL CA certificate is self signed.
- The SSL server and client certificates are signed with the CA certificate and key, using the `sha256WithRSAEncryption` signature algorithm.
- SSL certificates use these Common Name (CN) values, with the appropriate certificate type (CA, Server, Client):

  - `ca.pem`: MySQL_Server_suffix_Auto_Generated_CA_Certificate
  - `server-cert.pem`: MySQL_Server_suffix_Auto_Generated_Server_Certificate
  - `client-cert.pem`: MySQL_Server_suffix_Auto_Generated_Client_Certificate

  The `suffix` value is based on the MySQL version number. For files generated by `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup`, the suffix can be specified explicitly using the `--suffix` option.

  For files generated by the server, if the resulting CN values exceed 64 characters, the `_suffix` portion of the name is omitted.

- SSL files have blank values for Country (C), State or Province (ST), Organization (O), Organization Unit Name (OU) and email address.
- SSL files created by the server or by `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` are valid for ten years from the time of generation.
- RSA files do not expire.
- SSL files have different serial numbers for each certificate/key pair (1 for CA, 2 for Server, 3 for Client).
- Files created automatically by the server are owned by the account that runs the server. Files created using `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` are owned by the user who invoked that program. This can be changed on systems that support the `chown()` system call if the program is invoked by `root` and the `--uid` option is given to specify the user who should own the files.
- On Unix and Unix-like systems, the file access mode is 644 for certificate files (that is, world readable) and 600 for key files (that is, accessible only by the account that runs the server).

To see the contents of an SSL certificate (for example, to check the range of dates over which it is valid), invoke `openssl` directly:

```bash
openssl x509 -text -in ca.pem
openssl x509 -text -in server-cert.pem
openssl x509 -text -in client-cert.pem
```

It is also possible to check SSL certificate expiration information using this SQL statement:
5.3.2 Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

This section describes how to use the openssl command to set up SSL certificate and key files for use by MySQL servers and clients. The first example shows a simplified procedure such as you might use from the command line. The second shows a script that contains more detail. The first two examples are intended for use on Unix and both use the openssl command that is part of OpenSSL. The third example describes how to set up SSL files on Windows.

**Note**
There are easier alternatives to generating the files required for SSL than the procedure described here: Let the server autogenerate them or use the mysql_ssl_rsa_setup program. See Section 5.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

**Important**
Whatever method you use to generate the certificate and key files, the Common Name value used for the server and client certificates/keys must each differ from the Common Name value used for the CA certificate. Otherwise, the certificate and key files will not work for servers compiled using OpenSSL. A typical error in this case is:

```
ERROR 2026 (HY000): SSL connection error:
error:00000001:lib(0):func(0):reason(1)
```

- **Example 1: Creating SSL Files from the Command Line on Unix**
- **Example 2: Creating SSL Files Using a Script on Unix**
- **Example 3: Creating SSL Files on Windows**

**Example 1: Creating SSL Files from the Command Line on Unix**

The following example shows a set of commands to create MySQL server and client certificate and key files. You will need to respond to several prompts by the openssl commands. To generate test files, you can press Enter to all prompts. To generate files for production use, you should provide nonempty responses.

```
# Create clean environment
rm -rf newcerts
mkdir newcerts && cd newcerts

# Create CA certificate
openssl genrsa 2048 > ca-key.pem
openssl req -new -x509 -nodes -days 3600 -key ca-key.pem -out ca.pem

# Create server certificate, remove passphrase, and sign it
# server-cert.pem = public key, server-key.pem = private key
openssl req -newkey rsa:2048 -days 3600 -nodes -keyout server-key.pem -out server-req.pem
openssl rsa -in server-key.pem -out server-key.pem
openssl x509 -req -in server-req.pem -days 3600 -CA ca.pem -CAkey ca-key.pem -set_serial 01 -out server-cert.pem

# Create client certificate, remove passphrase, and sign it
# client-cert.pem = public key, client-key.pem = private key
openssl req -newkey rsa:2048 -days 3600 -nodes -keyout client-key.pem -out client-req.pem
```
Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

After generating the certificates, verify them:

```
openssl verify -CAfile ca.pem server-cert.pem client-cert.pem
```

You should see a response like this:

```
server-cert.pem: OK
client-cert.pem: OK
```

To see the contents of a certificate (for example, to check the range of dates over which a certificate is valid), invoke `openssl` like this:

```
openssl x509 -text -in ca.pem
openssl x509 -text -in server-cert.pem
openssl x509 -text -in client-cert.pem
```

Now you have a set of files that can be used as follows:

- **ca.pem**: Use this as the argument to `--ssl-ca` on the server and client sides. (The CA certificate, if used, must be the same on both sides.)

- **server-cert.pem, server-key.pem**: Use these as the arguments to `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key` on the server side.

- **client-cert.pem, client-key.pem**: Use these as the arguments to `--ssl-cert` and `--ssl-key` on the client side.

For additional usage instructions, see Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

Example 2: Creating SSL Files Using a Script on Unix

Here is an example script that shows how to set up SSL certificate and key files for MySQL. After executing the script, use the files for SSL connections as described in Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

```bash
DIR=`pwd`/openssl
PRIV=$DIR/private
mkdir $DIR $PRIV $DIR/newcerts
cp /usr/share/ssl/openssl.cnf $DIR
replace ./demoCA $DIR -- $DIR/openssl.cnf

# Create necessary files: $database, $serial and $new_certs_dir
# directory (optional)
touch $DIR/index.txt
echo "01" > $DIR/serial

dir=

# Generation of Certificate Authority(CA)

dir=
openssl req -new -x509 -keyout $PRIV/cakey.pem -out $DIR/ca.pem \
-days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf

dir=
openssl req -new -x509 -keyout $PRIV/cakey.pem -out $DIR/ca.pem \
-days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
# Sample output:
# Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
# ................+++++
# ........+++++
# writing new private key to '/home/finley/openssl/private/cakey.pem'
# Enter PEM pass phrase:
# Verifying password - Enter PEM pass phrase:
# -----
# You are about to be asked to enter information that will be
# incorporated into your certificate request.
# What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name
```

```bash
openssl rsa -in client-key.pem -out client-key.pem
openssl x509 -req -in client-req.pem -days 3600 \ 
-CA ca.pem -CAkey ca-key.pem -set_serial 01 -out client-cert.pem
```

Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

```bash
# Create server request and key
openssl req -new -keyout $DIR/server-key.pem -out $DIR/server-req.pem -days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
```

**Sample output:**
```
Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
```
```
+++
+       ..+
```
```
writing new private key to '/home/finley/openssl/server-key.pem'
```
```
Enter PEM pass phrase:
```
```
Verifying password - Enter PEM pass phrase:
```
```
You are about to be asked to enter information that will be incorporated into your certificate request.
What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name or a DN.
There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
For some fields there will be a default value,
If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
```
```
Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:FI
State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:.
Locality Name (eg, city) []:
Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:MySQL AB
Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:
Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []:MySQL admin
Email Address []:
```
```
Please enter the following 'extra' attributes to be sent with your certificate request
A challenge password []:
An optional company name []:
```
```
Remove the passphrase from the key
```
```bash
openssl rsa -in $DIR/server-key.pem -out $DIR/server-key.pem
```
```
Sign server cert
```
```bash
openssl ca -cert $DIR/ca.pem -policy policy Anything
-out $DIR/server-cert.pem -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
-infiles $DIR/server-req.pem
```
```
Sample output:
Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
Enter PEM pass phrase:
Check that the request matches the signature
Signature ok
The Subjects Distinguished Name is as follows
countryName :PRINTABLE:'FI'
organizationName :PRINTABLE:'MySQL AB'
commonName :PRINTABLE:'MySQL admin'
Certificate is to be certified until Sep 13 14:22:46 2003 GMT
(365 days)
Sign the certificate? [y/n]:y
```
```
1 out of 1 certificate requests certified, commit? [y/n]y
```
```
Write out database with 1 new entries
```
```
Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

```
# Create client request and key
openssl req -new -keyout $DIR/client-key.pem -out $DIR/client-req.pem -days 3600 -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
# Sample output:
# Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
# Generating a 1024 bit RSA private key
# .....................................++++++
# .............................................++++++
# writing new private key to '/home/finley/openssl/client-key.pem'
# Enter PEM pass phrase:
# ----
# You are about to be asked to enter information that will be
# incorporated into your certificate request.
# What you are about to enter is what is called a Distinguished Name
# or a DN.
# There are quite a few fields but you can leave some blank
# For some fields there will be a default value,
# If you enter '.', the field will be left blank.
# ----
# Country Name (2 letter code) [AU]:FI
# State or Province Name (full name) [Some-State]:
# Locality Name (eg, city) []:
# Organization Name (eg, company) [Internet Widgits Pty Ltd]:MySQL AB
# Organizational Unit Name (eg, section) []:
# Common Name (eg, YOUR name) []:MySQL user
# Email Address []:
# Please enter the following 'extra' attributes
# to be sent with your certificate request
# A challenge password []:
# An optional company name []:
# ----
# Remove the passphrase from the key
# openssl rsa -in $DIR/client-key.pem -out $DIR/client-key.pem
# Sign client cert
openssl ca -cert $DIR/ca.pem -policy policy_anything
# -out $DIR/client-cert.pem -config $DIR/openssl.cnf
# -infiles $DIR/client-req.pem
# Sample output:
# Using configuration from /home/finley/openssl/openssl.cnf
# Enter PEM pass phrase:
# Check that the request matches the signature
# Signature ok
# The Subjects Distinguished Name is as follows
#   countryName           :PRINTABLE:'FI'
#   organizationName      :PRINTABLE:'MySQL AB'
#   commonName            :PRINTABLE:'MySQL user'
# Certificate is to be certified until Sep 13 16:45:17 2003 GMT
# (365 days)
# Sign the certificate? [y/n]:y
# 1 out of 1 certificate requests certified, commit? [y/n]y
# Write out database with 1 new entries
# Data Base Updated
# Create a my.cnf file that you can use to test the certificates
# cat <<EOF > $DIR/my.cnf
[client]
ssl-ca=$DIR/ca.pem
ssl-cert=$DIR/client-cert.pem
ssl-key=$DIR/client-key.pem
[mysql]
ssl-ca=$DIR/ca.pem
```

Creating SSL Certificates and Keys Using openssl

ssl-cert=$DIR/server-cert.pem
ssl-key=$DIR/server-key.pem
EOF

Example 3: Creating SSL Files on Windows

Download OpenSSL for Windows if it is not installed on your system. An overview of available packages can be seen here:

http://www.slproweb.com/products/Win32OpenSSL.html

Choose the Win32 OpenSSL Light or Win64 OpenSSL Light package, depending on your architecture (32-bit or 64-bit). The default installation location will be C:\OpenSSL-Win32 or C:\OpenSSL-Win64, depending on which package you downloaded. The following instructions assume a default location of C:\OpenSSL-Win32. Modify this as necessary if you are using the 64-bit package.

If a message occurs during setup indicating '...critical component is missing: Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 Redistributables', cancel the setup and download one of the following packages as well, again depending on your architecture (32-bit or 64-bit):

• Visual C++ 2008 Redistributables (x86), available at:

• Visual C++ 2008 Redistributables (x64), available at:

After installing the additional package, restart the OpenSSL setup procedure.

During installation, leave the default C:\OpenSSL-Win32 as the install path, and also leave the default option 'Copy OpenSSL DLL files to the Windows system directory' selected.

When the installation has finished, add C:\OpenSSL-Win32\bin to the Windows System Path variable of your server (depending on your version of Windows, the following path-setting instructions might differ slightly):

1. On the Windows desktop, right-click the My Computer icon, and select Properties.
2. Select the Advanced tab from the System Properties menu that appears, and click the Environment Variables button.
3. Under System Variables, select Path, then click the Edit button. The Edit System Variable dialogue should appear.
4. Add ' ;C:\OpenSSL-Win32\bin' to the end (notice the semicolon).
5. Press OK 3 times.

Check that OpenSSL was correctly integrated into the Path variable by opening a new command console (Start>Run>cmd.exe) and verifying that OpenSSL is available:

Microsoft Windows [Version ...
Copyright (c) 2006 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.
C:\Windows\system32>cd \
C:\>openssl
OpenSSL> exit <<< If you see the OpenSSL prompt, installation was successful.
C:\>

After OpenSSL has been installed, use instructions similar to those from Example 1 (shown earlier in this section), with the following changes:

• Change the following Unix commands:
# Create clean environment
rm -rf newcerts
mkdir newcerts && cd newcerts

On Windows, use these commands instead:

# Create clean environment
md c:\newcerts
cd c:\newcerts

• When a `'\'` character is shown at the end of a command line, this `'\'` character must be removed and the command lines entered all on a single line.

After generating the certificate and key files, to use them for SSL connections, see Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

5.3.3 Creating RSA Keys Using openssl

This section describes how to use the `openssl` command to set up the RSA key files that enable MySQL to support secure password exchange over unencrypted connections for accounts authenticated by the `sha256_password` plugin.

**Note**

There are easier alternatives to generating the files required for RSA than the procedure described here: Let the server autogenerate them or use the `mysql_ssl_rsa_setup` program. See Section 5.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

To create the RSA private and public key-pair files, run these commands while logged into the system account used to run the MySQL server so the files will be owned by that account:

```bash
openssl genrsa -out private_key.pem 2048
openssl rsa -in private_key.pem -pubout -out public_key.pem
```

Those commands create 2,048-bit keys. To create stronger keys, use a larger value.

Then set the access modes for the key files. The private key should be readable only by the server, whereas the public key can be freely distributed to client users:

```bash
chmod 400 private_key.pem
chmod 444 public_key.pem
```

5.4 SSL Library-Dependent Capabilities

MySQL can be compiled using OpenSSL or yaSSL, both of which enable encrypted connections based on the OpenSSL API:

• MySQL Enterprise Edition binary distributions are compiled using OpenSSL. It is not possible to use yaSSL with MySQL Enterprise Edition.

• MySQL Community Edition binary distributions are compiled using yaSSL.

• MySQL Community Edition source distributions can be compiled using either OpenSSL or yaSSL (see Configuring SSL Library Support).

**Note**

It is possible to compile MySQL using yaSSL as an alternative to OpenSSL only prior to MySQL 5.7.28. As of MySQL 5.7.28, support for yaSSL is removed and all MySQL builds use OpenSSL.
OpenSSL and yaSSL offer the same basic functionality, but MySQL distributions compiled using OpenSSL have additional features:

- OpenSSL supports TLSv1, TLSv1.1, and TLSv1.2 protocols. yaSSL supports only TLSv1 and TLSv1.1 protocols.

- OpenSSL supports a more flexible syntax for specifying ciphers for the --ssl-cipher option, and supports a wider range of encryption ciphers from which to choose. See Command Options for Encrypted Connections, and Section 5.2, “Encrypted Connection TLS Protocols and Ciphers”.

- OpenSSL supports the --ssl-capath. MySQL distributions compiled using yaSSL do not because yaSSL does not look in any directory and do not follow a chained certificate tree. yaSSL requires that all components of the CA certificate tree be contained within a single CA certificate tree and that each certificate in the file has a unique SubjectName value. To work around this limitation, concatenate the individual certificate files comprising the certificate tree into a new file and specify that file as the value of the --ssl-ca option.

- OpenSSL supports the --ssl-crl, and --ssl-crlpath options. Distributions compiled using yaSSL do not because revocation lists do not work with yaSSL. (yaSSL accepts these options but silently ignores them.)

- Accounts that authenticate using the sha256_password plugin can use RSA key files for secure password exchange over unencrypted connections. See Section 6.1.5, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

- The server can automatically generate missing SSL and RSA certificate and key files at startup. See Section 5.3.1, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys using MySQL”.

- OpenSSL supports more encryption modes for the AES_ENCRYPT() and AES_DECRYPT() functions. See Encryption and Compression Functions

Certain OpenSSL-related system and status variables are present only if MySQL was compiled using OpenSSL:

- auto_generate_certs
- sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys
- sha256_password_private_key_path
- sha256_password_public_key_path
- Rsa_public_key

To determine whether a server was compiled using OpenSSL, test the existence of any of those variables. For example, this statement returns a row if OpenSSL was used and an empty result if yaSSL was used:

```sql
SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Rsa_public_key';
```

## 5.5 Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH

This section describes how to get an encrypted connection to a remote MySQL server with SSH. The information was provided by David Carlson <dcarlson@mplcomm.com>.

1. Install an SSH client on your Windows machine. For a comparison of SSH clients, see http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_SSH_clients.

2. Start your Windows SSH client. Set Host_Name = yourmysqlserver_URL_or_IP. Set userid=your_userid to log in to your server. This userid value might not be the same as the user name of your MySQL account.
3. Set up port forwarding. Either do a remote forward (Set `local_port: 3306, remote_host: yourmysqlservername_or_ip, remote_port: 3306`) or a local forward (Set `port: 3306, host: localhost, remote_port: 3306`).

4. Save everything, otherwise you will have to redo it the next time.

5. Log in to your server with the SSH session you just created.

6. On your Windows machine, start some ODBC application (such as Access).

7. Create a new file in Windows and link to MySQL using the ODBC driver the same way you normally do, except type in `localhost` for the MySQL host server, not `yourmysqlservername`.

At this point, you should have an ODBC connection to MySQL, encrypted using SSH.
# Chapter 6 Security Plugins

## Table of Contents

6.1 Authentication Plugins ................................................................. 108  
6.1.1 Native Pluggable Authentication ................................................. 108  
6.1.2 Old Native Pluggable Authentication .......................................... 109  
6.1.3 Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin .............................................. 110  
6.1.4 Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication ..................................... 114  
6.1.5 SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication ............................................. 119  
6.1.6 Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication .................................. 123  
6.1.7 PAM Pluggable Authentication .................................................. 124  
6.1.8 Windows Pluggable Authentication .............................................. 134  
6.1.9 LDAP Pluggable Authentication .................................................. 139  
6.1.10 No-Login Pluggable Authentication ............................................. 151  
6.1.11 Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication .................................. 154  
6.1.12 Test Pluggable Authentication .................................................. 156  
6.1.13 Pluggable Authentication System Variables ...................................... 158  
6.2 The Connection-Control Plugins .................................................. 173  
6.2.1 Connection-Control Plugin Installation ......................................... 173  
6.2.2 Connection-Control System and Status Variables ................................ 177  
6.3 The Password Validation Plugin ................................................... 179  
6.3.1 Password Validation Plugin Installation ......................................... 181  
6.3.2 Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables .......................... 182  
6.4 The MySQL Keyring ................................................................. 186  
6.4.1 Keyring Plugin Installation ....................................................... 187  
6.4.2 Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin ....................................... 189  
6.4.3 Using the keyring_encrypted_file Keyring Plugin .............................. 190  
6.4.4 Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin .............. 191  
6.4.5 Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin .............. 196  
6.4.6 Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores ..................................... 199  
6.4.7 Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths ..................................... 202  
6.4.8 General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions ...................... 203  
6.4.9 Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions ........................ 210  
6.4.10 Keyring Command Options ...................................................... 211  
6.4.11 Keyring System Variables ...................................................... 213  
6.5 MySQL Enterprise Audit ........................................................... 219  
6.5.1 Audit Log Components ............................................................ 219  
6.5.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit ............................ 220  
6.5.3 MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations ............................ 222  
6.5.4 Audit Log File Formats ............................................................ 223  
6.5.5 Audit Log Logging Configuration ............................................... 241  
6.5.6 Audit Log Filtering ................................................................. 248  
6.5.7 Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions .......................................... 251  
6.5.8 Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering ............................................... 264  
6.5.9 Audit Log Reference ............................................................... 266  
6.5.10 Audit Log Restrictions ............................................................ 281  
6.6 MySQL Enterprise Firewall ........................................................ 282  
6.6.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components ........................................ 283  
6.6.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall ........................ 283  
6.6.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall .............................................. 286  
6.6.4 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference ......................................... 290  
6.7 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification .......................... 294  
6.7.1 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification Components .......... 295  
6.7.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification .................................................. 295  
6.7.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification ............... 297
MySQL includes several plugins that implement security features:

- Plugins for authenticating attempts by clients to connect to MySQL Server. Plugins are available for several authentication protocols. For general discussion of the authentication process, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. For characteristics of specific authentication plugins, see Section 6.1, “Authentication Plugins”.

- A password-validation plugin for implementing password strength policies and assessing the strength of potential passwords. See Section 6.3, “The Password Validation Plugin”.

- Keyring plugins that provide secure storage for sensitive information. See Section 6.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

- (MySQL Enterprise Edition only) MySQL Enterprise Audit, implemented using a server plugin, uses the open MySQL Audit API to enable standard, policy-based monitoring and logging of connection and query activity executed on specific MySQL servers. Designed to meet the Oracle audit specification, MySQL Enterprise Audit provides an out of box, easy to use auditing and compliance solution for applications that are governed by both internal and external regulatory guidelines. See Section 6.5, “MySQL Enterprise Audit”.

- (MySQL Enterprise Edition only) MySQL Enterprise Firewall, an application-level firewall that enables database administrators to permit or deny SQL statement execution based on matching against whitelists of accepted statement patterns. This helps harden MySQL Server against attacks such as SQL injection or attempts to exploit applications by using them outside of their legitimate query workload characteristics. See Section 6.6, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall”.

- (MySQL Enterprise Edition only) MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, implemented as a plugin library containing a plugin and a set of user-defined functions. Data masking hides sensitive information by replacing real values with substitutes. MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification functions enable masking existing data using several methods such as obfuscation (removing identifying characteristics), generation of formatted random data, and data replacement or substitution. See Section 6.7, “MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification”.

### 6.1 Authentication Plugins

The following sections describe pluggable authentication methods available in MySQL and the plugins that implement these methods. For general discussion of the authentication process, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

The default plugin is indicated by the value of the `default_authentication_plugin` system variable.

#### 6.1.1 Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL includes two plugins that implement native authentication; that is, authentication based on the password hashing methods in use from before the introduction of pluggable authentication. This section describes `mysql_native_password`, which implements authentication against the `mysql.user` system table using the native password hashing method. For information about `mysql_old_password`, which implements authentication using the older (pre-4.1) native password hashing method, see Section 6.1.2, “Old Native Pluggable Authentication”. For information about these password hashing methods, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.

The following table shows the plugin names on the server and client sides.
Table 6.1 Plugin and Library Names for Native Password Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugins are built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to native pluggable authentication:

- Installing Native Pluggable Authentication
- Using Native Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

Installing Native Pluggable Authentication

The `mysql_native_password` plugin exists in server and client forms:

- The server-side plugin is built into the server, need not be loaded explicitly, and cannot be disabled by unloading it.
- The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is available to any program linked against `libmysqlclient`.

Using Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL client programs use `mysql_native_password` by default. The `--default-auth` option can be used as a hint about which client-side plugin the program can expect to use:

```
shell> mysql --default-auth=mysql_native_password ...
```

6.1.2 Old Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL includes two plugins that implement native authentication; that is, authentication based on the password hashing methods in use from before the introduction of pluggable authentication. This section describes `mysql_old_password`, which implements authentication against the `mysql.user` system table using the older (pre-4.1) native password hashing method. For information about `mysql_native_password`, which implements authentication using the native password hashing method, see Section 6.1.1, “Native Pluggable Authentication”. For information about these password hashing methods, see Section 2.2.4, “Password Hashing in MySQL”.

Note

Passwords that use the pre-4.1 hashing method are less secure than passwords that use the native password hashing method and should be avoided. Pre-4.1 passwords are deprecated and support for them (including the `mysql_old_password` plugin) was removed in MySQL 5.7.5. For account upgrade instructions, see Section 6.1.3, “Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin”.

The following table shows the plugin names on the server and client sides.

Table 6.2 Plugin and Library Names for Old Native Password Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin

### Plugin or File

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugins are built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to old native pluggable authentication:

- **Installing Old Native Pluggable Authentication**
- **Using Old Native Pluggable Authentication**

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, "Pluggable Authentication".

### Installing Old Native Pluggable Authentication

The `mysql_old_password` plugin exists in server and client forms:

- The server-side plugin is built into the server, need not be loaded explicitly, and cannot be disabled by unloading it.
- The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is available to any program linked against `libmysqlclient`.

### Using Old Native Pluggable Authentication

MySQL client programs can use the `--default-auth` option to specify the `mysql_old_password` plugin as a hint about which client-side plugin the program can expect to use:

```
shell> mysql --default-auth=mysql_old_password ...
```

### 6.1.3 Migrating Away from Pre-4.1 Password Hashing and the mysql_old_password Plugin

The MySQL server authenticates connection attempts for each account listed in the `mysql.user` system table using the authentication plugin named in the `plugin` column. If the `plugin` column is empty, the server authenticates the account as follows:

- Before MySQL 5.7, the server uses the `mysql_native_password` or `mysql_old_password` plugin implicitly, depending on the format of the password hash in the `Password` column. If the `Password` value is empty or a 4.1 password hash (41 characters), the server uses `mysql_native_password`. If the password value is a pre-4.1 password hash (16 characters), the server uses `mysql_old_password`. (For additional information about these hash formats, see Section 2.2.4, "Password Hashing in MySQL").
- As of MySQL 5.7, the server requires the `plugin` column to be nonempty and disables accounts that have an empty `plugin` value.

Pre-4.1 password hashes and the `mysql_old_password` plugin are deprecated in MySQL 5.6 and support for them is removed in MySQL 5.7. They provide a level of security inferior to that offered by 4.1 password hashing and the `mysql_native_password` plugin.

Given the requirement in MySQL 5.7 that the `plugin` column must be nonempty, coupled with removal of `mysql_old_password` support, DBAs are advised to upgrade accounts as follows:

- Upgrade accounts that use `mysql_native_password` implicitly to use it explicitly
- Upgrade accounts that use `mysql_old_password` (either implicitly or explicitly) to use `mysql_native_password` explicitly
The instructions in this section describe how to perform those upgrades. The result is that no account has an empty plugin value and no account uses pre-4.1 password hashing or the mysql_old_password plugin.

As a variant on these instructions, DBAs might offer users the choice to upgrade to the sha256_password plugin, which authenticates using SHA-256 password hashes. For information about this plugin, see Section 6.1.5, “SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication”.

The following table lists the types of mysql.user accounts considered in this discussion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>plugin Column</th>
<th>Password Column</th>
<th>Authentication Result</th>
<th>Upgrade Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Implicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>Assign plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>4.1 hash</td>
<td>Implicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>Assign plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Pre-4.1 hash</td>
<td>Implicitly uses mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Assign plugin, rehash password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_native_password</td>
<td>4.1 hash</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_native_password</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Upgrade plugin, rehash password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Pre-4.1 hash</td>
<td>Explicitly uses mysql_old_password</td>
<td>Upgrade plugin, rehash password</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Accounts corresponding to lines for the mysql_native_password plugin require no upgrade action (because no change of plugin or hash format is required). For accounts corresponding to lines for which the password is empty, consider asking the account owners to choose a password (or require it by using ALTER USER to expire empty account passwords).

**Upgrading Accounts from Implicit to Explicit mysql_native_password Use**

Accounts that have an empty plugin and a 4.1 password hash use mysql_native_password implicitly. To upgrade these accounts to use mysql_native_password explicitly, execute these statements:

```
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password'
WHERE plugin = '' AND (Password = '' OR LENGTH(Password) = 41);
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

Before MySQL 5.7, you can execute those statements to upgrade accounts proactively. As of MySQL 5.7, you can run `mysql_upgrade`, which performs the same operation among its upgrade actions.

Notes:

- The upgrade operation just described is safe to execute at any time because it makes the mysql_native_password plugin explicit only for accounts that already use it implicitly.
- This operation requires no password changes, so it can be performed without affecting users or requiring their involvement in the upgrade process.

**Upgrading Accounts from mysql_old_password to mysql_native_password**

Accounts that use mysql_old_password (either implicitly or explicitly) should be upgraded to use mysql_native_password explicitly. This requires changing the plugin and changing the password from pre-4.1 to 4.1 hash format.
For the accounts covered in this step that must be upgraded, one of these conditions is true:

- The account uses `mysql_old_password` implicitly because the `plugin` column is empty and the password has the pre-4.1 hash format (16 characters).

- The account uses `mysql_old_password` explicitly.

To identify such accounts, use this query:

```sql
SELECT User, Host, Password FROM mysql.user
WHERE (plugin = '' AND LENGTH(Password) = 16)
OR plugin = 'mysql_old_password';
```

The following discussion provides two methods for updating that set of accounts. They have differing characteristics, so read both and decide which is most suitable for a given MySQL installation.

**Method 1.**

Characteristics of this method:

- It requires that server and clients be run with `secure_auth=0` until all users have been upgraded to `mysql_native_password`. (Otherwise, users cannot connect to the server using their old-format password hashes for the purpose of upgrading to a new-format hash.)

- It works for MySQL 5.5 and 5.6. In 5.7, it does not work because the server requires accounts to have a nonempty plugin and disables them otherwise. Therefore, if you have already upgraded to 5.7, choose Method 2, described later.

You should ensure that the server is running with `secure_auth=0`.

For all accounts that use `mysql_old_password` explicitly, set them to the empty plugin:

```sql
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = ''
WHERE plugin = 'mysql_old_password';
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

To also expire the password for affected accounts, use these statements instead:

```sql
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = '', password_expired = 'Y'
WHERE plugin = 'mysql_old_password';
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;
```

Now affected users can reset their password to use 4.1 hashing. Ask each user who now has an empty plugin to connect to the server and execute these statements:

```sql
SET old_passwords = 0;
SET PASSWORD = PASSWORD('user-chosen-password');
```

**Note**

The client-side `--secure-auth` option is enabled by default, so remind users to disable it or they will be unable to connect:

```shell
shell> mysql -u user_name -p --secure-auth=0
```

After an affected user has executed those statements, you can set the corresponding account plugin to `mysql_native_password` to make the plugin explicit. Or you can periodically run these statements to find and fix any accounts for which affected users have reset their password:
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password'
WHERE plugin = '' AND (Password = '' OR LENGTH(Password) = 41);
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;

When there are no more accounts with an empty plugin, this query returns an empty result:

SELECT User, Host, Password FROM mysql.user
WHERE plugin = '' AND LENGTH(Password) = 16;

At that point, all accounts have been migrated away from pre-4.1 password hashing and the server no longer need be run with secure_auth=0.

Method 2.

Characteristics of this method:

• It assigns each affected account a new password, so you must tell each such user the new password and ask the user to choose a new one. Communication of passwords to users is outside the scope of MySQL, but should be done carefully.

• It does not require server or clients to be run with secure_auth=0.

• It works for any version of MySQL 5.5 or later (and for 5.7 has an easier variant).

With this method, you update each account separately due to the need to set passwords individually. Choose a different password for each account.

Suppose that 'user1'@'localhost' is one of the accounts to be upgraded. Modify it as follows:

• In MySQL 5.7, ALTER USER provides the capability of modifying both the account password and its authentication plugin, so you need not modify the mysql.user system table directly:

ALTER USER 'user1'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password BY 'DBA-chosen-password';

To also expire the account password, use this statement instead:

ALTER USER 'user1'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password BY 'DBA-chosen-password'
PASSWORD EXPIRE;

Then tell the user the new password and ask the user to connect to the server with that password and execute this statement to choose a new password:

ALTER USER USER() IDENTIFIED BY 'user-chosen-password';

• Before MySQL 5.7, you must modify the mysql.user system table directly using these statements:

SET old_passwords = 0;
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password',
Password = PASSWORD('DBA-chosen-password')
WHERE (User, Host) = ('user1', 'localhost');
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;

To also expire the account password, use these statements instead:

SET old_passwords = 0;
UPDATE mysql.user SET plugin = 'mysql_native_password',
Password = PASSWORD('DBA-chosen-password'), password_expired = 'Y'
WHERE (User, Host) = ('user1', 'localhost');
FLUSH PRIVILEGES;

Then tell the user the new password and ask the user to connect to the server with that password and execute these statements to choose a new password:

SET old_passwords = 0;
SET PASSWORD = PASSWORD('user-chosen-password');

Repeat for each account to be upgraded.

### 6.1.4 Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

MySQL provides two authentication plugins that implement SHA-256 hashing for user account passwords:

- **sha256_password**: Implements basic SHA-256 authentication.
- **caching_sha2_password**: Implements SHA-256 authentication (like sha256_password), but uses caching on the server side for better performance and has additional features for wider applicability. (In MySQL 5.7, caching_sha2_password is implemented only on the client side, as described later in this section.)

This section describes the caching SHA-2 authentication plugin, available as of MySQL 5.7.23. For information about the original basic (noncaching) plugin, see Section 6.1.5, "SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication".

**Important**

In MySQL 5.7, the default authentication plugin is mysql_native_password. As of MySQL 8.0, the default authentication plugin is changed to caching_sha2_password. To enable MySQL 5.7 clients to connect to 8.0 and higher servers using accounts that authenticate with caching_sha2_password, the MySQL 5.7 client library and client programs support the caching_sha2_password client-side authentication plugin. This improves MySQL 5.7 client connect-capability compatibility with respect to MySQL 8.0 and higher servers, despite the differences in default authentication plugin.

Limiting caching_sha2_password support in MySQL 5.7 to the client-side plugin in the client library has these implications compared to MySQL 8.0:

- The caching_sha2_password server-side plugin is not implemented in MySQL 5.7.
- MySQL 5.7 servers do not support creating accounts that authenticate with caching_sha2_password.
- MySQL 5.7 servers do not implement system and status variables specific to caching_sha2_password server-side support:
  - caching_sha2_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys,
  - caching_sha2_password_private_key_path,
  - caching_sha2_password_public_key_path,
  - Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key.

In addition, there is no support for MySQL 5.7 replication slaves to connect to MySQL 8.0 replication masters using accounts that authenticate with caching_sha2_password. That would involve a master replicating to a slave with a version number lower than the master version, whereas masters normally replicate to slaves having a version equal to or higher than the master version.
Important

To connect to a MySQL 8.0 or higher server using an account that authenticates with the caching_sha2_password plugin, you must use either a secure connection or an unencrypted connection that supports password exchange using an RSA key pair, as described later in this section. Either way, the caching_sha2_password plugin uses MySQL's encryption capabilities. See Chapter 5, "Using Encrypted Connections."

Note

In the name sha256_password, “sha256” refers to the 256-bit digest length the plugin uses for encryption. In the name caching_sha2_password, “sha2” refers more generally to the SHA-2 class of encryption algorithms, of which 256-bit encryption is one instance. The latter name choice leaves room for future expansion of possible digest lengths without changing the plugin name.

The caching_sha2_password plugin has these advantages, compared to sha256_password:

- On the server side, an in-memory cache enables faster reauthentication of users who have connected previously when they connect again. (This server-side behavior is implemented only in MySQL 8.0 and higher.)

- Support is provided for client connections that use the Unix socket-file and shared-memory protocols.

The following table shows the plugin name on the client side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>caching_sha2_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugin is built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to caching SHA-2 pluggable authentication:

- Installing SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication
- Using SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication
- Cache Operation for SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, "Pluggable Authentication".

Installing SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

In MySQL 5.7, the caching_sha2_password plugin exists in client form. The client-side plugin is built into the libmysqlclient client library and is available to any program linked against libmysqlclient.

Using SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

In MySQL 5.7, the caching_sha2_password client-side plugin enables connecting to MySQL 8.0 or higher servers using accounts that authenticate with the caching_sha2_password server-side plugin. The discussion here assumes that an account named 'sha2user'@'localhost' exists on the MySQL 8.0 or higher server. For example, the following statement creates such an account, where password is the desired account password:

```
CREATE USER 'sha2user'@'localhost'
```
caching_sha2_password supports connections over secure transport. caching_sha2_password also supports encrypted password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections if these conditions are satisfied:

- The MySQL 5.7 client library and client programs are compiled using OpenSSL, not yaSSL. caching_sha2_password works with distributions compiled using either package, but RSA support requires OpenSSL.

Note
It is possible to compile MySQL using yaSSL as an alternative to OpenSSL only prior to MySQL 5.7.28. As of MySQL 5.7.28, support for yaSSL is removed and all MySQL builds use OpenSSL.

- The MySQL 8.0 or higher server to which you wish to connect is configured to support RSA (using the RSA configuration procedure given later in this section).

RSA support has these characteristics, where all aspects that pertain to the server side require a MySQL 8.0 or higher server:

- On the server side, two system variables name the RSA private and public key-pair files: caching_sha2_password_private_key_path and caching_sha2_password_public_key_path. The database administrator must set these variables at server startup if the key files to use have names that differ from the system variable default values.

- The server uses the caching_sha2_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys system variable to determine whether to automatically generate the RSA key-pair files. See Section 5.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

- The Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key status variable displays the RSA public key value used by the caching_sha2_password authentication plugin.

- Clients that are in possession of the RSA public key can perform RSA key pair-based password exchange with the server during the connection process, as described later.

- For connections by accounts that authenticate with caching_sha2_password and RSA key pair-based password exchange, the server does not send the RSA public key to clients by default. Clients can use a client-side copy of the required public key, or request the public key from the server.

Use of a trusted local copy of the public key enables the client to avoid a round trip in the client/server protocol, and is more secure than requesting the public key from the server. On the other hand, requesting the public key from the server is more convenient (it requires no management of a client-side file) and may be acceptable in secure network environments.

- For command-line clients, use the --server-public-key-path option to specify the RSA public key file. Use the --get-server-public-key option to request the public key from the server. The following programs support the two options: mysql, mysqladmin, mysqlbinlog, mysqlcheck, mysqldump, mysqlimport, mysqlpump, mysqlshow, mysqlslap, mysqltest.

- For programs that use the C API, call mysql_options() to specify the RSA public key file by passing the MYSQL_SERVER_PUBLIC_KEY option and the name of the file, or request the public key from the server by passing the MYSQL_OPT_GET_SERVER_PUBLIC_KEY option.

In all cases, if the option is given to specify a valid public key file, it takes precedence over the option to request the public key from the server.

For clients that use the caching_sha2_password plugin, passwords are never exposed as cleartext when connecting to the MySQL 8.0 or higher server. How password transmission occurs depends on whether a secure connection or RSA encryption is used:
If the connection is secure, an RSA key pair is unnecessary and is not used. This applies to encrypted TCP connections that use TLS, as well as Unix socket-file and shared-memory connections. The password is sent as cleartext but cannot be snooped because the connection is secure.

If the connection is not secure, an RSA key pair is used. This applies to unencrypted TCP connections without TLS and named-pipe connections. RSA is used only for password exchange between client and server, to prevent password snooping. When the server receives the encrypted password, it decrypts it. A scramble is used in the encryption to prevent repeat attacks.

If a secure connection is not used and RSA encryption is not available, the connection attempt fails because the password cannot be sent without being exposed as cleartext.

As mentioned previously, RSA password encryption is available only if MySQL 5.7 was compiled using OpenSSL. The implication for clients from MySQL 5.7 distributions compiled using yaSSL is that, to use SHA-2 passwords, clients must use an encrypted connection to access the server. See Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

Assuming that MySQL 5.7 has been compiled using OpenSSL, use the following procedure to enable use of an RSA key pair for password exchange during the client connection process.

**Important**

Aspects of this procedure that pertain to server configuration must be done on the MySQL 8.0 or higher server to which you wish to connect using MySQL 5.7 clients, not on your MySQL 5.7 server.

1. Create the RSA private and public key-pair files using the instructions in Section 5.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

2. If the private and public key files are located in the data directory and are named `private_key.pem` and `public_key.pem` (the default values of the `caching_sha2_password_private_key_path` and `caching_sha2_password_public_key_path` system variables), the server uses them automatically at startup.

Otherwise, to name the key files explicitly, set the system variables to the key file names in the server option file. If the files are located in the server data directory, you need not specify their full path names:

```
[mysqld]
caching_sha2_password_private_key_path=myprivkey.pem
caching_sha2_password_public_key_path=mypubkey.pem
```

If the key files are not located in the data directory, or to make their locations explicit in the system variable values, use full path names:

```
[mysqld]
caching_sha2_password_private_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/myprivkey.pem
caching_sha2_password_public_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/mypubkey.pem
```

3. Restart the server, then connect to it and check the `Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key` status variable value. The value will differ from that shown here, but should be nonempty:

```
mysql> SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key'
+-----------------------------+
| Variable_name | Value |
+-----------------------------+
| Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----MI... |
```
Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

If the value is empty, the server found some problem with the key files. Check the error log for diagnostic information.

After the server has been configured with the RSA key files, accounts that authenticate with the `caching_sha2_password` plugin have the option of using those key files to connect to the server. As mentioned previously, such accounts can use either a secure connection (in which case RSA is not used) or an unencrypted connection that performs password exchange using RSA. Suppose that an unencrypted connection is used. For example:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha2user -p
Enter password: password
```

For this connection attempt by `sha2user`, the server determines that `caching_sha2_password` is the appropriate authentication plugin and invokes it (because that was the plugin specified at `CREATE USER` time). The plugin finds that the connection is not encrypted and thus requires the password to be transmitted using RSA encryption. However, the server does not send the public key to the client, and the client provided no public key, so it cannot encrypt the password and the connection fails:

```
ERROR 2061 (HY000): Authentication plugin 'caching_sha2_password' reported error: Authentication requires secure connection.
```

To request the RSA public key from the server, specify the `--get-server-public-key` option:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha2user -p --get-server-public-key
Enter password: password
```

In this case, the server sends the RSA public key to the client, which uses it to encrypt the password and returns the result to the server. The plugin uses the RSA private key on the server side to decrypt the password and accepts or rejects the connection based on whether the password is correct.

Alternatively, if the client has a file containing a local copy of the RSA public key required by the server, it can specify the file using the `--server-public-key-path` option:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha2user -p --server-public-key-path=file_name
Enter password: password
```

In this case, the client uses the public key to encrypt the password and returns the result to the server. The plugin uses the RSA private key on the server side to decrypt the password and accepts or rejects the connection based on whether the password is correct.

The public key value in the file named by the `--server-public-key-path` option should be the same as the key value in the server-side file named by the `caching_sha2_password_public_key_path` system variable. If the key file contains a valid public key value but the value is incorrect, an access-denied error occurs. If the key file does not contain a valid public key, the client program cannot use it.

Client users can obtain the RSA public key two ways:

- The database administrator can provide a copy of the public key file.

- A client user who can connect to the server some other way can use a `SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Caching_sha2_password_rsa_public_key'` statement and save the returned key value in a file.

### Cache Operation for SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication

On the server side, the `caching_sha2_password` plugin uses an in-memory cache for faster authentication of clients who have connected previously. For MySQL 5.7, which supports only the
6.1.5 SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

MySQL provides two authentication plugins that implement SHA-256 hashing for user account passwords:

- `sha256_password`: Implements basic SHA-256 authentication.
- `caching_sha2_password`: Implements SHA-256 authentication (like `sha256_password`), but uses caching on the server side for better performance and has additional features for wider applicability.

This section describes the original noncaching SHA-2 authentication plugin. For information about the caching plugin, see Section 6.1.4, “Caching SHA-2 Pluggable Authentication”.

### Important

To connect to the server using an account that authenticates with the `sha256_password` plugin, you must use either a TLS connection or an unencrypted connection that supports password exchange using an RSA key pair, as described later in this section. Either way, the `sha256_password` plugin uses MySQL's encryption capabilities. See Chapter 5, *Using Encrypted Connections*.

### Note

In the name `sha256_password`, “sha256” refers to the 256-bit digest length the plugin uses for encryption. In the name `caching_sha2_password`, “sha2” refers more generally to the SHA-2 class of encryption algorithms, of which 256-bit encryption is one instance. The latter name choice leaves room for future expansion of possible digest lengths without changing the plugin name.

The following table shows the plugin names on the server and client sides.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td><code>sha256_password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td><code>sha256_password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugins are built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to SHA-256 pluggable authentication:

- Installing SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication
- Using SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

### Installing SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication

The `sha256_password` plugin exists in server and client forms:

- The server-side plugin is built into the server, need not be loaded explicitly, and cannot be disabled by unloading it.
• The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is available to any program linked against `libmysqlclient`.

**Using SHA-256 Pluggable Authentication**

To set up an account that uses the `sha256_password` plugin for SHA-256 password hashing, use the following statement, where `password` is the desired account password:

```sql
CREATE USER 'sha256user'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH sha256_password BY 'password';
```

The server assigns the `sha256_password` plugin to the account and uses it to encrypt the password using SHA-256, storing those values in the `plugin` and `authentication_string` columns of the `mysql.user` system table.

The preceding instructions do not assume that `sha256_password` is the default authentication plugin. If `sha256_password` is the default authentication plugin, a simpler `CREATE USER` syntax can be used.

To start the server with the default authentication plugin set to `sha256_password`, put these lines in the server option file:

```ini
[mysqld]
default_authentication_plugin=sha256_password
```

That causes the `sha256_password` plugin to be used by default for new accounts. As a result, it is possible to create the account and set its password without naming the plugin explicitly:

```sql
CREATE USER 'sha256user'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'password';
```

Another consequence of setting `default_authentication_plugin` to `sha256_password` is that, to use some other plugin for account creation, you must specify that plugin explicitly. For example, to use the `mysql_native_password` plugin, use this statement:

```sql
CREATE USER 'nativeuser'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password BY 'password';
```

`sha256_password` supports connections over secure transport. `sha256_password` also supports encrypted password exchange using RSA over unencrypted connections if these conditions are satisfied:

- MySQL is compiled using OpenSSL, not yaSSL. `sha256_password` works with distributions compiled using either package, but RSA support requires OpenSSL.

  **Note**

  It is possible to compile MySQL using yaSSL as an alternative to OpenSSL only prior to MySQL 5.7.28. As of MySQL 5.7.28, support for yaSSL is removed and all MySQL builds use OpenSSL.

- The MySQL server to which you wish to connect is configured to support RSA (using the RSA configuration procedure given later in this section).

RSA support has these characteristics:

- On the server side, two system variables name the RSA private and public key-pair files: `sha256_password_private_key_path` and `sha256_password_public_key_path`. The database administrator must set these variables at server startup if the key files to use have names that differ from the system variable default values.
The server uses the `sha256_password_auto_generate_rsa_keys` system variable to determine whether to automatically generate the RSA key-pair files. See Section 5.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

The `Rsa_public_key` status variable displays the RSA public key value used by the `sha256_password` authentication plugin.

Clients that are in possession of the RSA public key can perform RSA key pair-based password exchange with the server during the connection process, as described later.

For connections by accounts that authenticate using `sha256_password` and RSA public key pair-based password exchange, the server sends the RSA public key to the client as needed. However, if a copy of the public key is available on the client host, the client can use it to save a round trip in the client/server protocol:

- For these command-line clients, use the `--server-public-key-path` option to specify the RSA public key file: `mysql`, `mysqltest`, and (as of MySQL 5.7.23) `mysqladmin`, `mysqlbinlog`, `mysqlicheck`, `mysqldump`, `mysqlimport`, `mysqlpump`, `mysqlshow`, `mysqslslap`, `mysqltest`.
- For programs that use the C API, call `mysql_options()` to specify the RSA public key file by passing the `MYSQL_SERVER_PUBLIC_KEY` option and the name of the file.
- For replication slaves, RSA key pair-based password exchange cannot be used to connect to master servers for accounts that authenticate with the `sha256_password` plugin. For such accounts, only secure connections can be used.

For clients that use the `sha256_password` plugin, passwords are never exposed as cleartext when connecting to the server. How password transmission occurs depends on whether a secure connection or RSA encryption is used:

- If the connection is secure, an RSA key pair is unnecessary and is not used. This applies to encrypted connections that use TLS. The password is sent as cleartext but cannot be snooped because the connection is secure.

- If the connection is not secure, and an RSA key pair is available, the connection remains unencrypted. This applies to unencrypted connections without TLS. RSA is used only for password exchange between client and server, to prevent password snooping. When the server receives the encrypted password, it decrypts it. A scramble is used in the encryption to prevent repeat attacks.

- If a secure connection is not used and RSA encryption is not available, the connection attempt fails because the password cannot be sent without being exposed as cleartext.

As mentioned previously, RSA password encryption is available only if MySQL was compiled using OpenSSL. The implication for MySQL distributions compiled using yaSSL is that, to use SHA-256 passwords, clients must use an encrypted connection to access the server. See Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

Note

To use RSA password encryption with `sha256_password`, the client and server both must be compiled using OpenSSL, not just one of them.

Assuming that MySQL has been compiled using OpenSSL, use the following procedure to enable use of an RSA key pair for password exchange during the client connection process:

1. Create the RSA private and public key-pair files using the instructions in Section 5.3, “Creating SSL and RSA Certificates and Keys”.

2. If the private and public key files are located in the data directory and are named `private_key.pem` and `public_key.pem` (the default values of the `sha256_password_private_key_path` and `sha256_password_public_key_path` system variables), the server uses them automatically at startup.
Otherwise, to name the key files explicitly, set the system variables to the key file names in the server option file. If the files are located in the server data directory, you need not specify their full path names:

```
[mysqld]
sha256_password_private_key_path=myprivkey.pem
sha256_password_public_key_path=mypubkey.pem
```

If the key files are not located in the data directory, or to make their locations explicit in the system variable values, use full path names:

```
[mysqld]
sha256_password_private_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/myprivkey.pem
sha256_password_public_key_path=/usr/local/mysql/mypubkey.pem
```

3. Restart the server, then connect to it and check the `Rsa_public_key` status variable value. The value will differ from that shown here, but should be nonempty:

```
mysql> SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Rsa_public_key'
+--------------------------+
| Variable_name | Value |
+--------------------------+---------------------------------------------------
| Rsa_public_key | -----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
| | MIIFMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4GNADCBiQKgYIwYBBQUFBwIBBhJDAQAB
| | -----END PUBLIC KEY----- |
```

If the value is empty, the server found some problem with the key files. Check the error log for diagnostic information.

After the server has been configured with the RSA key files, accounts that authenticate with the `sha256_password` plugin have the option of using those key files to connect to the server. As mentioned previously, such accounts can use either a secure connection (in which case RSA is not used) or an unencrypted connection that performs password exchange using RSA. Suppose that an unencrypted connection is used. For example:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha256user -p
Enter password: password
```

For this connection attempt by `sha256user`, the server determines that `sha256_password` is the appropriate authentication plugin and invokes it (because that was the plugin specified at `CREATE USER` time). The plugin finds that the connection is not encrypted and thus requires the password to be transmitted using RSA encryption. In this case, the plugin sends the RSA public key to the client, which uses it to encrypt the password and returns the result to the server. The plugin uses the RSA private key on the server side to decrypt the password and accepts or rejects the connection based on whether the password is correct.

The server sends the RSA public key to the client as needed. However, if the client has a file containing a local copy of the RSA public key required by the server, it can specify the file using the `--server-public-key-path` option:

```
shell> mysql --ssl-mode=DISABLED -u sha256user -p --server-public-key-path=file_name
Enter password: password
```

The public key value in the file named by the `--server-public-key-path` option should be the same as the key value in the server-side file named by the `sha256_password_public_key_path` system variable. If the key file contains a valid public key value but the value is incorrect, an access-denied error occurs. If the key file does not contain a valid public key, the client program cannot use
it. In this case, the sha256_password plugin sends the public key to the client as if no --server-public-key-path option had been specified.

Client users can obtain the RSA public key two ways:

- The database administrator can provide a copy of the public key file.
- A client user who can connect to the server some other way can use a SHOW STATUS LIKE 'Rsa_public_key' statement and save the returned key value in a file.

### 6.1.6 Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication

A client-side authentication plugin is available that enables clients to send passwords to the server as cleartext, without hashing or encryption. This plugin is built into the MySQL client library.

The following table shows the plugin name.

#### Table 6.5 Plugin and Library Names for Cleartext Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>None, see discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_clear_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>None (plugin is built in)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many client-side authentication plugins perform hashing or encryption of a password before the client sends it to the server. This enables clients to avoid sending passwords as cleartext.

Hashing or encryption cannot be done for authentication schemes that require the server to receive the password as entered on the client side. In such cases, the client-side mysql_clear_password plugin is used, which enables the client to send the password to the server as cleartext. There is no corresponding server-side plugin. Rather, mysql_clear_password can be used on the client side in concert with any server-side plugin that needs a cleartext password. (Examples are the PAM and simple LDAP authentication plugins; see Section 6.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 6.1.9, “LDAP Pluggable Authentication”.)

The following discussion provides usage information specific to cleartext pluggable authentication. For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

#### Note

Sending passwords as cleartext may be a security problem in some configurations. To avoid problems if there is any possibility that the password would be intercepted, clients should connect to MySQL Server using a method that protects the password. Possibilities include SSL (see Chapter 5, Using Encrypted Connections), IPsec, or a private network.

To make inadvertent use of the mysql_clear_password plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it. This can be done in several ways:

- Set the LIBMYSQL_ENABLE_CLEARTEXT_PLUGIN environment variable to a value that begins with 1, Y, or y. This enables the plugin for all client connections.
- The mysql, mysqladmin, and mysqlslap client programs (also mysqlcheck, mysqldump, and mysqlshow for MySQL 5.7.10 and later) support an --enable-cleartext-plugin option that enables the plugin on a per-invocation basis.
- The mysql_options() C API function supports a MYSQL_ENABLE_CLEARTEXT_PLUGIN option that enables the plugin on a per-connection basis. Also, any program that uses libmysqlclient
and reads option files can enable the plugin by including an `enable-cleartext-plugin` option in an option group read by the client library.

### 6.1.7 PAM Pluggable Authentication

**Note**

PAM pluggable authentication is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

MySQL Enterprise Edition supports an authentication method that enables MySQL Server to use PAM (Pluggable Authentication Modules) to authenticate MySQL users. PAM enables a system to use a standard interface to access various kinds of authentication methods, such as traditional Unix passwords or an LDAP directory.

PAM pluggable authentication provides these capabilities:

- **External authentication:** PAM authentication enables MySQL Server to accept connections from users defined outside the MySQL grant tables and that authenticate using methods supported by PAM.
- **Proxy user support:** PAM authentication can return to MySQL a user name different from the external user name passed by the client program, based on the PAM groups the external user is a member of and the authentication string provided. This means that the plugin can return the MySQL user that defines the privileges the external PAM-authenticated user should have. For example, an operating system user named `joe` can connect and have the privileges of a MySQL user named `developer`.

PAM pluggable authentication has been tested on Linux and macOS.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The file must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable. For installation information, see [Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

#### Table 6.6 Plugin and Library Names for PAM Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>authentication_pam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>mysql_clear_password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>authentication_pam.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The client-side `mysql_clear_password` cleartext plugin that communicates with the server-side PAM plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library and is included in all distributions, including community distributions. Inclusion of the client-side cleartext plugin in all MySQL distributions enables clients from any distribution to connect to a server that has the server-side PAM plugin loaded.

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to PAM pluggable authentication:

- [How PAM Authentication of MySQL Users Works](https://www.mysql.com/products/)
- [Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication](https://www.mysql.com/products/)
- [Uninstalling PAM Pluggable Authentication](https://www.mysql.com/products/)
- [Using PAM Pluggable Authentication](https://www.mysql.com/products/)
- [PAM Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users](https://www.mysql.com/products/)
How PAM Authentication of MySQL Users Works

This section provides a general overview of how MySQL and PAM work together to authenticate MySQL users. For examples showing how to set up MySQL accounts to use specific PAM services, see Using PAM Pluggable Authentication.

1. The client program and the server communicate, with the client sending to the server the client user name (the operating system user name by default) and password:
   - The client user name is the external user name.
   - For accounts that use the PAM server-side authentication plugin, the corresponding client-side plugin is `mysql_clear_password`. This client-side plugin performs no password hashing, with the result that the client sends the password to the server as cleartext.

2. The server finds a matching MySQL account based on the external user name and the host from which the client connects. The PAM plugin uses the information passed to it by MySQL Server (such as user name, host name, password, and authentication string). When you define a MySQL account that authenticates using PAM, the authentication string contains:
   - A PAM service name, which is a name that the system administrator can use to refer to an authentication method for a particular application. There can be multiple applications associated with a single database server instance, so the choice of service name is left to the SQL application developer.
   - Optionally, if proxying is to be used, a mapping from PAM groups to MySQL user names.

3. The plugin uses the PAM service named in the authentication string to check the user credentials and returns "Authentication succeeded, Username is user_name" or "Authentication failed". The password must be appropriate for the password store used by the PAM service. Examples:
   - For traditional Unix passwords, the service looks up passwords stored in the `/etc/shadow` file.
   - For LDAP, the service looks up passwords stored in an LDAP directory.

   If the credentials check fails, the server refuses the connection.

4. Otherwise, the authentication string indicates whether proxying occurs. If the string contains no PAM group mapping, proxying does not occur. In this case, the MySQL user name is the same as the external user name.

5. Otherwise, proxying is indicated based on the PAM group mapping, with the MySQL user name determined based on the first matching group in the mapping list. The meaning of “PAM group” depends on the PAM service. Examples:
   - For traditional Unix passwords, groups are Unix groups defined in the `/etc/group` file, possibly supplemented with additional PAM information in a file such as `/etc/security/group.conf`.
   - For LDAP, groups are LDAP groups defined in an LDAP directory.
If the proxy user (the external user) has the PROXY privilege for the proxied MySQL user name, proxying occurs, with the proxy user assuming the privileges of the proxied user.

## Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the PAM authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see [Installing and Uninstalling Plugins](#).

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is `authentication_pam`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=authentication_pam.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_pam SONAME 'authentication_pam.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup without the need for `--plugin-load-add`.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see [Obtaining Server Plugin Information](#)). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%pam%';
+--------------------+---------------+
| PLUGIN_NAME        | PLUGIN_STATUS |
+--------------------+---------------+
| authentication_pam | ACTIVE        |
+--------------------+---------------+
```

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the PAM plugin, see [Using PAM Pluggable Authentication](#).

## Uninstalling PAM Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the PAM authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.

- If you installed the plugin at runtime using an `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`.

---

126
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_pam;

Using PAM Pluggable Authentication

This section describes in general terms how to use the PAM authentication plugin to connect from MySQL client programs to the server. The following sections provide instructions for using PAM authentication in specific ways. It is assumed that the server is running with the server-side PAM plugin enabled, as described in Installing PAM Pluggable Authentication.

To refer to the PAM authentication plugin in the IDENTIFIED WITH clause of a CREATE USER statement, use the name authentication_pam. For example:

```sql
CREATE USER user
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
  AS 'auth_string';
```

The authentication string specifies the following types of information:

- The PAM service name (see How PAM Authentication of MySQL Users Works). Examples in the following discussion use a service name of mysql-unix for authentication using traditional Unix passwords, and mysql-ldap for authentication using LDAP.

- For proxy support, PAM provides a way for a PAM module to return to the server a MySQL user name other than the external user name passed by the client program when it connects to the server. Use the authentication string to control the mapping from external user names to MySQL user names. If you want to take advantage of proxy user capabilities, the authentication string must include this kind of mapping.

For example, if an account uses the mysql-unix PAM service name and should map operating system users in the root and users PAM groups to the developer and data_entry MySQL users, respectively, use a statement like this:

```sql
CREATE USER user
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
  AS 'mysql-unix, root=developer, users=data_entry';
```

Authentication string syntax for the PAM authentication plugin follows these rules:

- The string consists of a PAM service name, optionally followed by a PAM group mapping list consisting of one or more keyword/value pairs each specifying a PAM group name and a MySQL user name:

  ```sql
  pam_service_name[, pam_group_name=mysql_user_name]...
  ```

  The plugin parses the authentication string for each connection attempt that uses the account. To minimize overhead, keep the string as short as possible.

- Each pam_group_name=mysql_user_name pair must be preceded by a comma.

- Leading and trailing spaces not inside double quotation marks are ignored.

- Unquoted pam_service_name, pam_group_name, and mysql_user_name values can contain anything except equal sign, comma, or space.

- If a pam_service_name, pam_group_name, or mysql_user_name value is quoted with double quotation marks, everything between the quotation marks is part of the value. This is necessary, for example, if the value contains space characters. All characters are legal except double quotation mark and backslash (\). To include either character, escape it with a backslash.
If the plugin successfully authenticates the external user name (the name passed by the client), it looks for a PAM group mapping list in the authentication string and, if present, uses it to return a different MySQL user name to the MySQL server based on which PAM groups the external user is a member of:

• If the authentication string contains no PAM group mapping list, the plugin returns the external name.

• If the authentication string does contain a PAM group mapping list, the plugin examines each `pam_group_name=mysql_user_name` pair in the list from left to right and tries to find a match for the `pam_group_name` value in a non-MySQL directory of the groups assigned to the authenticated user and returns `mysql_user_name` for the first match it finds. If the plugin finds no match for any PAM group, it returns the external name. If the plugin is not capable of looking up a group in a directory, it ignores the PAM group mapping list and returns the external name.

The following sections describe how to set up several authentication scenarios that use the PAM authentication plugin:

• No proxy users. This uses PAM only to check login names and passwords. Every external user permitted to connect to MySQL Server should have a matching MySQL account that is defined to use PAM authentication. (For a MySQL account of `user_name@host_name` to match the external user, `user_name` must be the external user name and `host_name` must match the host from which the client connects.) Authentication can be performed by various PAM-supported methods. Later discussion shows how to authenticate client credentials using traditional Unix passwords, and passwords in LDAP.

PAM authentication, when not done through proxy users or PAM groups, requires the MySQL user name to be same as the operating system user name. MySQL user names are limited to 32 characters (see Section 4.3, “Grant Tables”), which limits PAM nonproxy authentication to Unix accounts with names of at most 32 characters.

• Proxy users only, with PAM group mapping. For this scenario, create one or more MySQL accounts that define different sets of privileges. (Ideally, nobody should connect using those accounts directly.) Then define a default user authenticating through PAM that uses some mapping scheme (usually based on the external PAM groups the users are members of) to map all the external user names to the few MySQL accounts holding the privilege sets. Any client who connects and specifies an external user name as the client user name is mapped to one of the MySQL accounts and uses its privileges. The discussion shows how to set this up using traditional Unix passwords, but other PAM methods such as LDAP could be used instead.

Variations on these scenarios are possible:

• You can permit some users to log in directly (without proxying) but require others to connect through proxy accounts.

• You can use one PAM authentication method for some users, and another method for other users, by using differing PAM service names among your PAM-authenticated accounts. For example, you can use the `mysql-unix` PAM service for some users, and `mysql-ldap` for others.

The examples make the following assumptions. You might need to make some adjustments if your system is set up differently.

• The login name and password are `antonio` and `antonio_password`, respectively. Change these to correspond to the user you want to authenticate.

• The PAM configuration directory is `/etc/pam.d`.

• The PAM service name corresponds to the authentication method (`mysql-unix` or `mysql-ldap` in this discussion). To use a given PAM service, you must set up a PAM file with the same name in the PAM configuration directory (creating the file if it does not exist). In addition, you must name the PAM service in the authentication string of the `CREATE USER` statement for any account that authenticates using that PAM service.
The PAM authentication plugin checks at initialization time whether the AUTHENTICATION_PAM_LOG environment value is set in the server's startup environment. If so, the plugin enables logging of diagnostic messages to the standard output. Depending on how your server is started, the message might appear on the console or in the error log. These messages can be helpful for debugging PAM-related issues that occur when the plugin performs authentication. For more information, see PAM Authentication Debugging.

PAM Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users

This authentication scenario uses PAM to check external users defined in terms of operating system user names and Unix passwords, without proxying. Every such external user permitted to connect to MySQL Server should have a matching MySQL account that is defined to use PAM authentication through traditional Unix password store.

Note

Traditional Unix passwords are checked using the /etc/shadow file. For information regarding possible issues related to this file, see PAM Authentication Access to Unix Password Store.

1. Verify that Unix authentication permits logins to the operating system with the user name antonio and password antonio_password.

2. Set up PAM to authenticate MySQL connections using traditional Unix passwords by creating a mysql-unix PAM service file named /etc/pam.d/mysql-unix. The file contents are system dependent, so check existing login-related files in the /etc/pam.d directory to see what they look like. On Linux, the mysql-unix file might look like this:

   ```
   #%PAM-1.0
   auth    include  password-auth
   account include  password-auth
   ```

   For macOS, use login rather than password-auth.

   The PAM file format might differ on some systems. For example, on Ubuntu and other Debian-based systems, use these file contents instead:

   ```
   @include common-auth
   @include common-account
   @include common-session-noninteractive
   ```

3. Create a MySQL account with the same user name as the operating system user name and define it to authenticate using the PAM plugin and the mysql-unix PAM service:

   ```
   CREATE USER 'antonio'@'localhost'
   IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
   AS 'mysql-unix';
   GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES
   ON mydb.*
   TO 'antonio'@'localhost';
   ```

   Here, the authentication string contains only the PAM service name, mysql-unix, which authenticates Unix passwords.

4. Use the mysql command-line client to connect to the MySQL server as antonio. For example:

   ```
   shell> mysql --user=antonio --password --enable-cleartext-plugin
   Enter password: antonio_password
   ```

   The server should permit the connection and the following query should return output as shown:
PAM Pluggable Authentication

mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-------------------+-------------------+--------------+
| USER()            | CURRENT_USER()    | @@proxy_user |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------+
| antonio@localhost | antonio@localhost | NULL         |
+-------------------+-------------------+--------------+

This demonstrates that the antonio operating system user is authenticated to have the privileges granted to the antonio MySQL user, and that no proxying has occurred.

Note
The client-side mysql_clear_password authentication plugin leaves the password untouched, so client programs send it to the MySQL server as cleartext. This enables the password to be passed as is to PAM. A cleartext password is necessary to use the server-side PAM library, but may be a security problem in some configurations. These measures minimize the risk:

• To make inadvertent use of the mysql_clear_password plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it (for example, with the --enable-cleartext-plugin option). See Section 6.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”.

• To avoid password exposure with the mysql_clear_password plugin enabled, MySQL clients should connect to the MySQL server using an encrypted connection. See Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

PAM LDAP Authentication without Proxy Users

This authentication scenario uses PAM to check external users defined in terms of operating system user names and LDAP passwords, without proxying. Every such external user permitted to connect to MySQL Server should have a matching MySQL account that is defined to use PAM authentication through LDAP.

To use PAM LDAP pluggable authentication for MySQL, these prerequisites must be satisfied:

• An LDAP server must be available for the PAM LDAP service to communicate with.

• LDAP users to be authenticated by MySQL must be present in the directory managed by the LDAP server.

Note
Another way to use LDAP for MySQL user authentication is to use the LDAP-specific authentication plugins. See Section 6.1.9, “LDAP Pluggable Authentication”.

Configure MySQL for PAM LDAP authentication as follows:

1. Verify that Unix authentication permits logins to the operating system with the user name antonio and password antonio_password.

2. Set up PAM to authenticate MySQL connections using LDAP by creating a mysql-ldap PAM service file named /etc/pam.d/mysql-ldap. The file contents are system dependent, so check existing login-related files in the /etc/pam.d directory to see what they look like. On Linux, the mysql-ldap file might look like this:

```%
PAM-1.0
auth   required pam_ldap.so
account required pam_ldap.so
```
If PAM object files have a suffix different from `.so` on your system, substitute the correct suffix.

The PAM file format might differ on some systems.

3. Create a MySQL account with the same user name as the operating system user name and define it to authenticate using the PAM plugin and the `mysql-ldap` PAM service:

```sql
CREATE USER 'antonio'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
AS 'mysql-ldap';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES
ON mydb.*
TO 'antonio'@'localhost';
```

Here, the authentication string contains only the PAM service name, `mysql-ldap`, which authenticates using LDAP.

4. Connecting to the server is the same as described in PAM Unix Password Authentication without Proxy Users.

PAM Unix Password Authentication with Proxy Users and Group Mapping

The authentication scheme described here uses proxying and PAM group mapping to map connecting MySQL users who authenticate using PAM onto other MySQL accounts that define different sets of privileges. Users do not connect directly through the accounts that define the privileges. Instead, they connect through a default proxy account authenticated using PAM, such that all the external users are mapped to the MySQL accounts that hold the privileges. Any user who connects using the proxy account is mapped to one of those MySQL accounts, the privileges for which determine the database operations permitted to the external user.

The procedure shown here uses Unix password authentication. To use LDAP instead, see the early steps of PAM LDAP Authentication without Proxy Users.

Note

Traditional Unix passwords are checked using the `/etc/shadow` file.
For information regarding possible issues related to this file, see PAM Authentication Access to Unix Password Store.

1. Verify that Unix authentication permits logins to the operating system with the user name `antonio` and password `antonio_password`.
2. Verify that `antonio` is a member of the `root` or `users` PAM group.
3. Set up PAM to authenticate the `mysql-unix` PAM service through operating system users by creating a file named `/etc/pam.d/mysql-unix`. The file contents are system dependent, so check existing login-related files in the `/etc/pam.d` directory to see what they look like. On Linux, the `mysql-unix` file might look like this:

```pam
#%PAM-1.0
auth include password-auth
account include password-auth
```

For macOS, use `login` rather than `password-auth`.

The PAM file format might differ on some systems. For example, on Ubuntu and other Debian-based systems, use these file contents instead:

```pam
@include common-auth
@include common-account
@include common-session-noninteractive
```
4. Create a default proxy user (`'@'`) that maps external PAM users to the proxied accounts:

```sql
CREATE USER `'@'`
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
  AS 'mysql-unix, root=developer, users=data_entry';
```

Here, the authentication string contains the PAM service name, `mysql-unix`, which authenticates Unix passwords. The authentication string also maps external users in the `root` and `users` PAM groups to the `developer` and `data_entry` MySQL user names, respectively.

The PAM group mapping list following the PAM service name is required when you set up proxy users. Otherwise, the plugin cannot tell how to perform mapping from external user names to the proper proxied MySQL user names.

**Note**

If your MySQL installation has anonymous users, they might conflict with the default proxy user. For more information about this issue, and ways of dealing with it, see Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts.

5. Create the proxied accounts and grant to them the privileges required for MySQL access:

```sql
CREATE USER 'developer'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
CREATE USER 'data_entry'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES
  ON mydevdb.*
  TO 'developer'@'localhost';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES
  ON mydb.*
  TO 'data_entry'@'localhost';
```

The proxied accounts use the `mysql_no_login` authentication plugin to prevent clients from using the accounts to log in directly to the MySQL server. Instead, it is expected that users who authenticate using PAM will use the `developer` or `data_entry` account by proxy based on their PAM group. (This assumes that the plugin is installed. For instructions, see Section 6.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.) For alternative methods of protecting proxied accounts against direct use, see Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts.

6. Grant to the proxy account the `PROXY` privilege for each proxied account:

```sql
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'developer'@'localhost'
  TO `'@'';
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'data_entry'@'localhost'
  TO `'@'';
```

7. Use the `mysql` command-line client to connect to the MySQL server as `antonio`.

```
shell> mysql --user=antonio --password --enable-cleartext-plugin
Enter password: antonio_password
```

The server authenticates the connection using the default `'@'` proxy account. The resulting privileges for `antonio` depend on which PAM groups `antonio` is a member of. If `antonio` is a member of the `root` PAM group, the PAM plugin maps `root` to the `developer` MySQL user name and returns that name to the server. The server verifies that `'@'` has the `PROXY` privilege for `developer` and permits the connection. The following query should return output as shown:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
```
This demonstrates that the `antonio` operating system user is authenticated to have the privileges granted to the `developer` MySQL user, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy account.

If `antonio` is not a member of the `root` PAM group but is a member of the `users` PAM group, a similar process occurs, but the plugin maps `user` PAM group membership to the `data_entry` MySQL user name and returns that name to the server:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-------------------+----------------------+--------------+
| USER()            | CURRENT_USER()       | @@proxy_user |
+-------------------+----------------------+--------------+
| antonio@localhost | data_entry@localhost | ''@''        |
+-------------------+----------------------+--------------+
```

This demonstrates that the `antonio` operating system user is authenticated to have the privileges of the `data_entry` MySQL user, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy account.

**Note**

The client-side `mysql_clear_password` authentication plugin leaves the password untouched, so client programs send it to the MySQL server as cleartext. This enables the password to be passed as is to PAM. A cleartext password is necessary to use the server-side PAM library, but may be a security problem in some configurations. These measures minimize the risk:

- To make inadvertent use of the `mysql_clear_password` plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it (for example, with the `--enable-cleartext-plugin` option). See Section 6.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”.
- To avoid password exposure with the `mysql_clear_password` plugin enabled, MySQL clients should connect to the MySQL server using an encrypted connection. See Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

**PAM Authentication Access to Unix Password Store**

On some systems, Unix authentication uses a password store such as `/etc/shadow`, a file that typically has restricted access permissions. This can cause MySQL PAM-based authentication to fail. Unfortunately, the PAM implementation does not permit distinguishing “password could not be checked” (due, for example, to inability to read `/etc/shadow`) from “password does not match.” If you are using Unix password store for PAM authentication, you may be able to enable access to it from MySQL using one of the following methods:

- Assuming that the MySQL server is run from the `mysql` operating system account, put that account in the `shadow` group that has `/etc/shadow` access:
  1. Create a `shadow` group in `/etc/group`.
  2. Add the `mysql` operating system user to the `shadow` group in `/etc/group`.
  3. Assign `/etc/group` to the `shadow` group and enable the group read permission:

```
chgrp shadow /etc/shadow
```
4. Restart the MySQL server.

- If you are using the `pam_unix` module and the `unix_chkpwd` utility, enable password store access as follows:

  ```
  chmod g+r /etc/shadow
  chmod u-s /usr/sbin/unix_chkpwd
  setcap cap_dac_read_search+ep /usr/sbin/unix_chkpwd
  ```

  Adjust the path to `unix_chkpwd` as necessary for your platform.

**PAM Authentication Debugging**

The PAM authentication plugin checks at initialization time whether the `AUTHENTICATION_PAM_LOG` environment value is set (the value does not matter). If so, the plugin enables logging of diagnostic messages to the standard output. These messages may be helpful for debugging PAM-related issues that occur when the plugin performs authentication.

Some messages include reference to PAM plugin source files and line numbers, which enables plugin actions to be tied more closely to the location in the code where they occur.

Another technique for debugging connection failures and determining what is happening during connection attempts is to configure PAM authentication to permit all connections, then check the system log files. This technique should be used only on a temporary basis, and not on a production server.

Configure a PAM service file named `/etc/pam.d/mysql-any-password` with these contents (the format may differ on some systems):

```
#%PAM-1.0
auth        required    pam_permit.so
account     required    pam_permit.so
```

Create an account that uses the PAM plugin and names the `mysql-any-password` PAM service:

```
CREATE USER 'testuser'@'localhost'
    IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_pam
    AS 'mysql-any-password';
```

The `mysql-any-password` service file causes any authentication attempt to return true, even for incorrect passwords. If an authentication attempt fails, that tells you the configuration problem is on the MySQL side. Otherwise, the problem is on the operating system/PAM side. To see what might be happening, check system log files such as `/var/log/secure`, `/var/log/audit.log`, `/var/log/syslog`, or `/var/log/messages`.

After determining what the problem is, remove the `mysql-any-password` PAM service file to disable any-password access.

### 6.1.8 Windows Pluggable Authentication

**Note**

Windows pluggable authentication is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

MySQL Enterprise Edition for Windows supports an authentication method that performs external authentication on Windows, enabling MySQL Server to use native Windows services to authenticate client connections. Users who have logged in to Windows can connect from MySQL client programs to the server based on the information in their environment without specifying an additional password.
The client and server exchange data packets in the authentication handshake. As a result of this exchange, the server creates a security context object that represents the identity of the client in the Windows OS. This identity includes the name of the client account. Windows pluggable authentication uses the identity of the client to check whether it is a given account or a member of a group. By default, negotiation uses Kerberos to authenticate, then NTLM if Kerberos is unavailable.

Windows pluggable authentication provides these capabilities:

- **External authentication**: Windows authentication enables MySQL Server to accept connections from users defined outside the MySQL grant tables who have logged in to Windows.

- **Proxy user support**: Windows authentication can return to MySQL a user name different from the external user name passed by the client program. This means that the plugin can return the MySQL user that defines the privileges the external Windows-authenticated user should have. For example, a Windows user named `joe` can connect and have the privileges of a MySQL user named `developer`.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

**Table 6.7 Plugin and Library Names for Windows Authentication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td><code>authentication_windows</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td><code>authentication_windows_client</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td><code>authentication_windows.dll</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The library file includes only the server-side plugin. The client-side plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library.

The server-side Windows authentication plugin is included only in MySQL Enterprise Edition. It is not included in MySQL community distributions. The client-side plugin is included in all distributions, including community distributions. This permits clients from any distribution to connect to a server that has the server-side plugin loaded.

The Windows authentication plugin is supported on any version of Windows supported by MySQL 5.7 (see [https://www.mysql.com/support/supportedplatforms/database.html](https://www.mysql.com/support/supportedplatforms/database.html)).

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to Windows pluggable authentication:

- **Installing Windows Pluggable Authentication**
- **Uninstalling Windows Pluggable Authentication**
- **Using Windows Pluggable Authentication**

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

### Installing Windows Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the Windows authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:
Windows Pluggable Authentication

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=authentication_windows.dll
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugin at runtime, use this statement:

```
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_windows SONAME 'authentication_windows.dll';
```

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
               FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
                  WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%windows%';
```

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the Windows authentication plugin, see Using Windows Pluggable Authentication. Additional plugin control is provided by the `authentication_windows_use_principal_name` and `authentication_windows_log_level` system variables. See Server System Variables.

Uninstalling Windows Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the Windows authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.
- If you installed the plugin at runtime using an `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_windows;
```

In addition, remove any startup options that set Windows plugin-related system variables.

Using Windows Pluggable Authentication

The Windows authentication plugin supports the use of MySQL accounts such that users who have logged in to Windows can connect to the MySQL server without having to specify an additional password. It is assumed that the server is running with the server-side plugin enabled, as described in Installing Windows Pluggable Authentication. Once the DBA has enabled the server-side plugin and set up accounts to use it, clients can connect using those accounts with no other setup required on their part.

To refer to the Windows authentication plugin in the `IDENTIFIED WITH` clause of a `CREATE USER` statement, use the name `authentication_windows`. Suppose that the Windows users Rafał and Tasha should be permitted to connect to MySQL, as well as any users in the Administrators or Power Users group. To set this up, create a MySQL account named `sql_admin` that uses the Windows plugin for authentication:
CREATE USER sql_admin
IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
AS 'Rafal, Tasha, Administrators, "Power Users"';

The plugin name is *authentication_windows*. The string following the *AS* keyword is the authentication string. It specifies that the Windows users named Rafal or Tasha are permitted to authenticate to the server as the MySQL user sql_admin, as are any Windows users in the Administrators or Power Users group. The latter group name contains a space, so it must be quoted with double quote characters.

After you create the sql_admin account, a user who has logged in to Windows can attempt to connect to the server using that account:

C:\> mysql --user=sql_admin

No password is required here. The *authentication_windows* plugin uses the Windows security API to check which Windows user is connecting. If that user is named Rafal or Tasha, or is a member of the Administrators or Power Users group, the server grants access and the client is authenticated as sql_admin and has whatever privileges are granted to the sql_admin account. Otherwise, the server denies access.

Authentication string syntax for the Windows authentication plugin follows these rules:

- The string consists of one or more user mappings separated by commas.
- Each user mapping associates a Windows user or group name with a MySQL user name:

  \[\text{win_user_or_group_name=}\text{mysql_user_name}\]

  \[\text{win_user_or_group_name}\]

  For the latter syntax, with no \text{mysql_user_name} value given, the implicit value is the MySQL user created by the CREATE user statement. Thus, these statements are equivalent:

\[
\text{CREATE USER sql_admin}
\text{ IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows}
\text{ AS 'Rafal, Tasha, Administrators, "Power Users"';}
\text{CREATE USER sql_admin}
\text{ IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows}
\text{ AS 'Rafal=sql_admin, Tasha=sql_admin, Administrators=sql_admin,}
\text{ "Power Users"=sql_admin';}
\]

- Each backslash character (\) in a value must be doubled because backslash is the escape character in MySQL strings.
- Leading and trailing spaces not inside double quotation marks are ignored.
- Unquoted \text{win_user_or_group_name} and \text{mysql_user_name} values can contain anything except equal sign, comma, or space.
- If a \text{win_user_or_group_name} and or \text{mysql_user_name} value is quoted with double quotation marks, everything between the quotation marks is part of the value. This is necessary, for example, if the name contains space characters. All characters within double quotes are legal except double quotation mark and backslash. To include either character, escape it with a backslash.
- \text{win_user_or_group_name} values use conventional syntax for Windows principals, either local or in a domain. Examples (note the doubling of backslashes):

  \[
  \text{domain\user}
  .\user
  \text{domain\group}
  .\group
  \text{BUILTIN\WellKnownGroup}
  \]
When invoked by the server to authenticate a client, the plugin scans the authentication string left to right for a user or group match to the Windows user. If there is a match, the plugin returns the corresponding `mysql_user_name` to the MySQL server. If there is no match, authentication fails.

A user name match takes preference over a group name match. Suppose that the Windows user named `win_user` is a member of `win_group` and the authentication string looks like this:

```
'win_group = sql_user1, win_user = sql_user2'
```

When `win_user` connects to the MySQL server, there is a match both to `win_group` and to `win_user`. The plugin authenticates the user as `sql_user2` because the more-specific user match takes precedence over the group match, even though the group is listed first in the authentication string.

Windows authentication always works for connections from the same computer on which the server is running. For cross-computer connections, both computers must be registered with Windows Active Directory. If they are in the same Windows domain, it is unnecessary to specify a domain name. It is also possible to permit connections from a different domain, as in this example:

```
CREATE USER sql_accounting
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
  AS 'SomeDomain\Accounting';
```

Here `SomeDomain` is the name of the other domain. The backslash character is doubled because it is the MySQL escape character within strings.

MySQL supports the concept of proxy users whereby a client can connect and authenticate to the MySQL server using one account but while connected has the privileges of another account (see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”). Suppose that you want Windows users to connect using a single user name but be mapped based on their Windows user and group names onto specific MySQL accounts as follows:

- The `local_user` and `MyDomain\domain_user` local and domain Windows users should map to the `local_wlad` MySQL account.
- Users in the `MyDomain\Developers` domain group should map to the `local_dev` MySQL account.
- Local machine administrators should map to the `local_admin` MySQL account.

To set this up, create a proxy account for Windows users to connect to, and configure this account so that users and groups map to the appropriate MySQL accounts (`local_wlad`, `local_dev`, `local_admin`). In addition, grant the MySQL accounts the privileges appropriate to the operations they need to perform. The following instructions use `win_proxy` as the proxy account, and `local_wlad`, `local_dev`, and `local_admin` as the proxied accounts.

1. Create the proxy MySQL account:

```
CREATE USER win_proxy
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_windows
  AS 'local_user = local_wlad,
      MyDomain\domain_user = local_wlad,
      MyDomain\Developers = local_dev,
      BUILTIN\Administrators = local_admin';
```

2. For proxying to work, the proxied accounts must exist, so create them:

```
CREATE USER local_wlad
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
CREATE USER local_dev
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
CREATE USER local_admin
```
The proxied accounts use the `mysql_no_login` authentication plugin to prevent clients from using the accounts to log in directly to the MySQL server. Instead, it is expected that users who authenticate using Windows will use the `win_proxy` proxy account. (This assumes that the plugin is installed. For instructions, see Section 6.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.) For alternative methods of protecting proxied accounts against direct use, see Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts.

You should also execute GRANT statements (not shown) that grant each proxied account the privileges required for MySQL access.

3. Grant to the proxy account the PROXY privilege for each proxied account:

```
grant proxy on local_wlad to win_proxy;
grant proxy on local_dev to win_proxy;
grant proxy on local_admin to win_proxy;
```

Now the Windows users `local_user` and `MyDomain\domain_user` can connect to the MySQL server as `win_proxy` and when authenticated have the privileges of the account given in the authentication string (in this case, `local_wlad`). A user in the `MyDomain\Developers` group who connects as `win_proxy` has the privileges of the `local_dev` account. A user in the `BUILTIN\Administrators` group has the privileges of the `local_admin` account.

To configure authentication so that all Windows users who do not have their own MySQL account go through a proxy account, substitute the default proxy account (``@``) for `win_proxy` in the preceding instructions. For information about default proxy accounts, see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

**Note**

If your MySQL installation has anonymous users, they might conflict with the default proxy user. For more information about this issue, and ways of dealing with it, see Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts.

To use the Windows authentication plugin with Connector/NET connection strings in Connector/NET 6.4.4 and higher, see Using the Windows Native Authentication Plugin.

### 6.1.9 LDAP Pluggable Authentication

**Note**

LDAP pluggable authentication is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

As of MySQL 5.7.19, MySQL Enterprise Edition supports an authentication method that enables MySQL Server to use LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) to authenticate MySQL users by accessing directory services such as X.500. MySQL uses LDAP to fetch user, credential, and group information.

LDAP pluggable authentication provides these capabilities:

- **External authentication:** LDAP authentication enables MySQL Server to accept connections from users defined outside the MySQL grant tables in LDAP directories.

- **Proxy user support:** LDAP authentication can return to MySQL a user name different from the external user name passed by the client program, based on the LDAP groups the external user is a member of. This means that an LDAP plugin can return the MySQL user that defines the privileges the external LDAP-authenticated user should have. For example, an LDAP user named `joe` can connect and have the privileges of a MySQL user named `developer`, if the LDAP group for `joe` is `developer`.
• Security: Using TLS, connections to the LDAP server can be secure.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The files must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

**Table 6.8 Plugin and Library Names for LDAP Authentication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin names</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl, authentication_ldap_simple</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin names</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_client, mysql_clear_password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file names</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl.so, authentication_ldap_sasl_client.so, authentication_ldap_simple.so</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The library files include only the `authentication_ldap_XXX` authentication plugins. The client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin is built into the `libmysqlclient` client library.

The two server-side LDAP plugins each work with a specific client-side plugin:

• The server-side `authentication_ldap_simple` plugin performs simple LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin, which sends the password to the server as cleartext. No password hashing or encryption is used, so a secure connection between the MySQL client and server is recommended to prevent password exposure.

• The server-side `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin performs SASL-based LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side `authentication_ldap_sasl_client` plugin. The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the cleartext password between the MySQL client and server.

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to LDAP pluggable authentication:

• Prerequisites for LDAP Pluggable Authentication

• How LDAP Authentication of MySQL Users Works

• Installing LDAP Pluggable Authentication

• Uninstalling LDAP Pluggable Authentication

• Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication

• Simple LDAP Authentication

• SASL-Based LDAP Authentication

• LDAP Authentication User DN Suffixes

• LDAP Authentication with Proxying

• LDAP Authentication Group Preference and Mapping Specification

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. For information about the `mysql_clear_password` plugin, see Section 6.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

**Note**

If your system supports PAM and permits LDAP as a PAM authentication method, another way to use LDAP for MySQL user authentication is to use the...
server-side authentication_pam plugin. See Section 6.1.7, “PAM Pluggable Authentication”.

Prerequisites for LDAP Pluggable Authentication

To use LDAP pluggable authentication for MySQL, these prerequisites must be satisfied:

• An LDAP server must be available for the LDAP authentication plugins to communicate with.

• LDAP users to be authenticated by MySQL must be present in the directory managed by the LDAP server.

• An LDAP client library must be available on systems where the server-side authentication_ldap_sasl or authentication_ldap_simple plugin is used. Currently, supported libraries are the Windows native LDAP library, or the OpenLDAP library on non-Windows systems.

• To use SASL-based LDAP authentication:
  • The LDAP server must be configured to communicate with a SASL server.
  • A SASL client library must be available on systems where the client-side authentication_ldap_sasl_client plugin is used. Currently, the only supported library is the Cyrus SASL library.

How LDAP Authentication of MySQL Users Works

This section provides a general overview of how MySQL and LDAP work together to authenticate MySQL users. For examples showing how to set up MySQL accounts to use specific LDAP authentication plugins, see Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication.

The client connects to the MySQL server, providing the MySQL client user name and the LDAP password:

• For simple LDAP authentication, the client-side and server-side plugins communicate the password as cleartext.

• For SASL-based LDAP authentication, the client-side and server-side plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the cleartext password between the MySQL client and server.

If the client user name and host name match no MySQL account, the connection is rejected.

If there is a matching MySQL account, authentication against LDAP occurs. The LDAP server looks for an entry matching the user and authenticates the entry against the LDAP password:

• If the MySQL account names an the LDAP user distinguished name (DN), LDAP authentication uses that value and the LDAP password provided by the client. (To associate an LDAP user DN with a MySQL account, include a BY clause that specifies an authentication string in the CREATE USER statement that creates the account.)

• If the MySQL account names no LDAP user DN, LDAP authentication uses the user name and LDAP password provided by the client. In this case, the authentication plugin first binds to the LDAP server using the root DN and password as credentials to find the user DN based on the client user name, then authenticates that user DN against the LDAP password. This bind using the root credentials fails if the root DN and password are set to incorrect values, or are empty (not set) and the LDAP server does not permit anonymous connections.

If the LDAP server finds no match or multiple matches, authentication fails and the client connection is rejected.
If the LDAP server finds a single match, LDAP authentication succeeds (assuming that the password is correct), the LDAP server returns the LDAP entry, and the authentication plugin determines the name of the authenticated user based on that entry:

- If the LDAP entry has a group attribute (by default, the `cn` attribute), the plugin returns its value as the authenticated user name.
- If the LDAP entry has no group attribute, the authentication plugin returns the client user name as the authenticated user name.

The MySQL server compares the client user name with the authenticated user name to determine whether proxying occurs for the client session:

- If the names are the same, no proxying occurs: The MySQL account matching the client user name is used for privilege checking.
- If the names differ, proxying occurs: MySQL looks for an account matching the authenticated user name. That account becomes the proxied user, which is used for privilege checking. The MySQL account that matched the client user name is treated as the external proxy user.

## Installing LDAP Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the LDAP authentication plugins. For general information about installing plugins, see [Installing and Uninstalling Plugins](#).

To be usable by the server, the plugin library files must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The server-side plugin library file base names are `authentication_ldap_sasl` and `authentication_ldap_simple`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugins at server startup, use `--plugin-load-add` options to name the library files that contain them. With this plugin-loading method, the options must be given each time the server starts. Also, specify values for any plugin-provided system variables you wish to configure.

Each server-side LDAP plugin exposes a set of system variables that enable its operation to be configured. Setting most of these is optional, but you must set the variables that specify the LDAP server host (so the plugin knows where to connect) and base distinguished name for LDAP bind operations (to limit the scope of searches and obtain faster searches). For details about all LDAP system variables, see Section 6.1.13, “Pluggable Authentication System Variables”.

To load the plugins and set the LDAP server host and base distinguished name for LDAP bind operations, put lines such as these in your `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```plaintext
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=authentication_ldap_sasl.so
authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"

plugin-load-add=authentication_ldap_simple.so
authentication_ldap_simple_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugins at runtime, use these statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_sasl
  SONAME 'authentication_ldap_sasl.so';
INSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_simple
```
LDAP Pluggable Authentication

SONAME 'authentication_ldap_simple.so';

INSTALL PLUGIN loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the mysql.plugins system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup without the need for --plugin-load-add.

After installing the plugins at runtime, their system variables become available and you can add settings for them to your my.cnf file to configure the plugins for subsequent restarts. For example:

```ini
[mysqld]
authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
authentication_ldap_simple_server_host=127.0.0.1
authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn="dc=example,dc=com"
```

After modifying my.cnf, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

To verify plugin installation, examine the INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS table or use the SHOW PLUGINS statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
    FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
    WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%ldap%';
```

If a plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with an LDAP plugin, see Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication.

### Additional Notes for SELinux

On systems running EL6 or EL that have SELinux enabled, changes to the SELinux policy are required to enable the MySQL LDAP plugins to communicate with the LDAP service:

1. Create a file mysqlldap.te with these contents:

   ```
   module mysqlldap 1.0;
   require {
     type ldap_port_t;
     type mysqld_t;
     class tcp_socket name_connect;
   }
   #============= mysqld_t ==============
   allow mysqld_t ldap_port_t::tcp_socket name_connect;
   ```

2. Compile the security policy module into a binary representation:

   ```bash
   checkmodule -M -m mysqlldap.te -o mysqlldap.mod
   ```

3. Create an SELinux policy module package:

   ```bash
   semodule_package -m mysqlldap.mod -o mysqlldap.pp
   ```

4. Install the module package:

   ```bash
   semodule -i mysqlldap.pp
   ```
5. When the SELinux policy changes have been made, restart the MySQL server:

```
service mysqld restart
```

Uninstalling LDAP Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the LDAP authentication plugins depends on how you installed them:

- If you installed the plugins at server startup using `--plugin-load-add` options, restart the server without those options.

- If you installed the plugins at runtime using `INSTALL PLUGIN`, they remain installed across server restarts. To uninstall them, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_sasl;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN authentication_ldap_simple;
```

In addition, remove from your `my.cnf` file any startup options that set LDAP plugin-related system variables.

Using LDAP Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to enable MySQL accounts to connect to the MySQL server using LDAP pluggable authentication. It is assumed that the server is running with the appropriate server-side plugins enabled, as described in Installing LDAP Pluggable Authentication, and that the appropriate client-side plugins are available on the client host.

This section does not describe LDAP configuration or administration. It is assumed that you are familiar with those topics.

The two server-side LDAP plugins each work with a specific client-side plugin:

- The server-side `authentication_ldap_simple` plugin performs simple LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin, which sends the password to the server as cleartext. No password hashing or encryption is used, so a secure connection between the MySQL client and server is recommended to prevent password exposure.

- The server-side `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin performs SASL-based LDAP authentication. For connections by accounts that use this plugin, client programs use the client-side `authentication_ldap_sasl_client` plugin. The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the cleartext password between the MySQL client and server.

Overall requirements for LDAP authentication of MySQL users:

- There must be an LDAP directory entry for each user to be authenticated.

- There must be a MySQL user account that specifies a server-side LDAP authentication plugin and optionally names the associated LDAP user distinguished name (DN). (To associate an LDAP user DN with a MySQL account, include a `BY` clause in the `CREATE USER` statement that creates the account.) If an account names no LDAP string, LDAP authentication uses the user name specified by the client to find the LDAP entry.

- Client programs connect using the connection method appropriate for the server-side authentication plugin the MySQL account uses. For LDAP authentication, connections require the MySQL user name and LDAP password. In addition, for accounts that use the server-side `authentication_ldap_simple` plugin, invoke client programs with the `--enable-cleartext-plugin` option to enable the client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin.
The instructions here assume the following scenario:

- MySQL users *betsy* and *boris* authenticate to the LDAP entries for *betsy_ldap* and *boris_ldap*, respectively. (It is not necessary that the MySQL and LDAP user names differ. The use of different names in this discussion helps clarify whether an operation context is MySQL or LDAP.)

- LDAP entries use the *uid* attribute to specify user names. This may vary depending on LDAP server. Some LDAP servers use the *cn* attribute for user names rather than *uid*. To change the attribute, modify the `authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr` or `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr` system variable appropriately.

- These LDAP entries are available in the directory managed by the LDAP server, to provide distinguished name values that uniquely identify each user:
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distinguished Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uid=betsy_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uid=boris_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- `CREATE USER` statements that create MySQL accounts name an LDAP user in the *BY* clause, to indicate which LDAP entry the MySQL account authenticates against.

The instructions for setting up an account that uses LDAP authentication depend on which server-side LDAP plugin is used. The following sections describe several usage scenarios.

### Simple LDAP Authentication

To configure a MySQL account for simple LDAP authentication, the `CREATE USER` statement specifies the `authentication_ldap_simple` plugin, and optionally names the LDAP user distinguished name (DN):

```
CREATE USER user
   IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
   [BY 'LDAP user DN'];
```

Suppose that a MySQL user *betsy* has this entry in the LDAP directory:

```
uid=betsy_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

Then the statement to create the MySQL account for *betsy* looks like this:

```
CREATE USER 'betsy'@'localhost'
   IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
   AS 'uid=betsy_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The authentication string specified in the *BY* clause does not include the LDAP password. That must be provided by the client user at connect time.

Clients connect to the MySQL server by providing the MySQL user name and LDAP password, and by enabling the client-side `mysql_clear_password` plugin:

```
shell> mysql --user=betsy --password --enable-cleartext-plugin
Enter password: betsy_password (betsy_ldap LDAP password)
```

### Note

The client-side `mysql_clear_password` authentication plugin leaves the password untouched, so client programs send it to the MySQL server as cleartext. This enables the password to be passed as is to the LDAP server. A cleartext password is necessary to use the server-side LDAP library without SASL, but may be a security problem in some configurations. These measures minimize the risk:
LDAP Pluggable Authentication

To make inadvertent use of the `mysql_clear_password` plugin less likely, MySQL clients must explicitly enable it (for example, with the `--enable-cleartext-plugin` option). See Section 6.1.6, “Client-Side Cleartext Pluggable Authentication”.

To avoid password exposure with the `mysql_clear_password` plugin enabled, MySQL clients should connect to the MySQL server using an encrypted connection. See Section 5.1, “Configuring MySQL to Use Encrypted Connections”.

The authentication process occurs as follows:

1. The client-side plugin sends `betsy` and `betsy_password` as the client user name and LDAP password to the MySQL server.

2. The connection attempt matches the `betsy'@'localhost` account. The server-side LDAP plugin finds that this account has an authentication string of `uid=betsy_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com` to name the LDAP user DN. The plugin sends this string and the LDAP password to the LDAP server.

3. The LDAP server finds the LDAP entry for `betsy_ldap` and the password matches, so LDAP authentication succeeds.

4. The LDAP entry has no group attribute, so the server-side plugin returns the client user name (`betsy`) as the authenticated user. This is the same user name supplied by the client, so no proxying occurs and the client session uses the `betsy'@'localhost` account for privilege checking.

Had the matching LDAP entry contained a group attribute, that attribute value would have been the authenticated user name and, if the value differed from `betsy`, proxying would have occurred. For examples that use the group attribute, see LDAP Authentication with Proxying.

Had the `CREATE USER` statement contained no `BY` clause to specify the `betsy_ldap` LDAP distinguished name, authentication attempts would use the user name provided by the client (in this case, `betsy`). In the absence of an LDAP entry for `betsy`, authentication would fail.

**SASL-Based LDAP Authentication**

To configure a MySQL account for SASL LDAP authentication, the `CREATE USER` statement specifies the `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin, and optionally names the LDAP user distinguished name (DN):

```sql
CREATE USER user
     IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl
     [BY 'LDAP user DN'];
```

Suppose that a MySQL user `boris` has this entry in the LDAP directory:

```text
uid=boris_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

Then the statement to create the MySQL account for `boris` looks like this:

```sql
CREATE USER 'boris'@'localhost'
     IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl
     AS 'uid=boris_ldap,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The authentication string specified in the `BY` clause does not include the LDAP password. That must be provided by the client user at connect time.

Clients connect to the MySQL server by providing the MySQL user name and LDAP password:
shell> mysql --user=boris --password
Enter password: boris_password (boris_ldap LDAP password)

For the server-side `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin, clients use the client-side
`authentication_ldap_sasl_client` plugin. If a client program does not find the client-side
plugin, specify a `--plugin-dir` option that names the directory where the plugin library file is
installed.

The authentication process for `boris` is similar to that previously described for `betsy` with simple
LDAP authentication, except that the client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL
messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the
clear-text password between the MySQL client and server.

**LDAP Authentication User DN Suffixes**

As of MySQL 5.7.21, LDAP authentication plugins permit the authentication string that provides user
DN information to begin with a `+` prefix character:

- In the absence of a `+` character, the authentication string value is treated as is without modification.
- If the authentication string begins with `+`, the plugin constructs the full user DN value from
  the user name sent by the client, together with the DN specified in the authentication
  string (with the `+` removed). In the constructed DN, the client user name becomes the
  value of the attribute that specifies LDAP user names. This is `uid` by default; to change
  the attribute, modify the `authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr` or
  `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr` system variable appropriately. The
  authentication string is stored as given in the `mysql.user` system table, with the full user DN
  constructed on the fly before authentication.

This account authentication string does not have `+` at the beginning, so it is taken as the full user DN:

```
CREATE USER 'baldwin'
IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
AS 'uid=admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The client connects with the user name specified in the account (`baldwin`). In this case, that name is
not used because the authentication string has no prefix and thus fully specifies the user DN.

This account authentication string does have `+` at the beginning, so it is taken as just part of the user
DN:

```
CREATE USER 'accounting'
IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple
AS '+ou=People,dc=example,dc=com';
```

The client connects with the user name specified in the account (`accounting`), which in this
case is used as the `uid` attribute together with the authentication string to construct the user DN:

```
uid=accounting,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

The accounts in the preceding examples have a nonempty user name, so the client always connects
to the MySQL server using the same name as specified in the account definition. If an account has
an empty user name, such as the default anonymous "@'%' proxy account described in **LDAP
Authentication with Proxying**, clients might connect to the MySQL server with varying user names. But
the principle is the same: If the authentication string begins with `+`, the plugin uses the user name sent
by the client together with the authentication string to construct the user DN.

**LDAP Authentication with Proxying**

LDAP authentication plugins support proxying, enabling a user to connect to the MySQL server as
one user but assume the privileges of a different user. This section describes basic LDAP plugin proxy
support. The LDAP plugins also support specification of group preference and proxy user mapping; see
**LDAP Authentication Group Preference and Mapping Specification**.
The authentication scheme described here uses proxying based on mapping LDAP group attribute values to connecting MySQL users who authenticate using LDAP onto other MySQL accounts that define different sets of privileges. Users do not connect directly through the accounts that define the privileges. Instead, they connect through a default proxy account authenticated with LDAP, such that all the external logins are mapped to the MySQL accounts that hold the privileges. Any user who connects using the proxy account is mapped to one of those MySQL accounts, the privileges for which determine the database operations permitted to the external user.

The instructions here assume the following scenario:

- LDAP entries use the `uid` and `cn` attributes to specify user name and group values, respectively. To use different user and group attribute names, set the appropriate system variables to configure the plugin:
  - For `authentication_ldap_simple`: Set `authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr` and `authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr`.
  - For `authentication_ldap_sasl`: Set `authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr` and `authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr`.
- These LDAP entries are available in the directory managed by the LDAP server, to provide distinguished name values that uniquely identify each user:
  
  ```
  uid=basha,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=accounting
  uid=basil,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=front_office
  ```

  The group attribute values will become the authenticated user names, so they name the `accounting` and `front_office` proxied accounts.

- The examples assume use of SASL LDAP authentication. Make the appropriate adjustments for simple LDAP authentication.

Create the default proxy MySQL account:

```sql
CREATE USER ''@'%' IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_simple;
```

The proxy account definition has no `AS 'auth_string'` clause to name an LDAP user DN. Thus:

- When clients connect, the client user name is used as the LDAP user name to search for.
- The matching LDAP entry is expected to include a group attribute naming the proxied MySQL account that defines the privileges the client should have.

**Note**

If your MySQL installation has anonymous users, they might conflict with the default proxy user. For more information about this issue, and ways of dealing with it, see Default Proxy User and Anonymous User Conflicts.

Create the proxied accounts and grant to them the privileges required for MySQL access:

```sql
CREATE USER 'accounting'@'localhost';
IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
CREATE USER 'front_office'@'localhost';
IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON accountingdb.* TO 'accounting'@'localhost';
GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON frontdb.* TO 'front_office'@'localhost';
```
The proxied accounts use the `mysql_no_login` authentication plugin to prevent clients from using the accounts to log in directly to the MySQL server. Instead, it is expected that users who authenticate using LDAP will use the default `''@'%'` proxy account. (This assumes that the plugin is installed. For instructions, see Section 6.1.10, “No-Login Pluggable Authentication”.) For alternative methods of protecting proxied accounts against direct use, see Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts.

Grant to the proxy account the `PROXY` privilege for each proxied account:

```sql
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'accounting'@'localhost'
TO ''@'%;
GRANT PROXY
  ON 'front_office'@'localhost'
TO ''@'%;
```

Use the `mysql` command-line client to connect to the MySQL server as `basha`.

```shell
shell> mysql --user=basha --password
Enter password: basha_password (basha LDAP password)
```

Authentication occurs as follows:

1. The server authenticates the connection using the default `''@'%'` proxy account, for client user `basha`.
2. The matching LDAP entry is:
   ```
   uid=basha,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=accounting
   ```
3. The matching LDAP entry has group attribute `cn=accounting`, so `accounting` becomes the authenticated user.
4. The authenticated user differs from the client user name `basha`, with the result that `basha` is treated as a proxy for `accounting`, and `basha` assumes the privileges of the `accounting` account. The following query should return output as shown:

```sql
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-----------------+----------------------+--------------+
| USER()          | CURRENT_USER()       | @@proxy_user |
+-----------------+----------------------+--------------+
| basha@localhost | accounting@localhost | ''@'%'       |
+-----------------+----------------------+--------------+
```

This demonstrates that `basha` uses the privileges granted to the `accounting` MySQL account, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy user account.

Now connect as `basil` instead:

```shell
shell> mysql --user=basil --password
Enter password: basil_password (basil LDAP password)
```

The authentication process for `basil` is similar to that previously described for `basha`:

1. The server authenticates the connection using the default `''@'%'` proxy account, for client user `basil`.
2. The matching LDAP entry is:
   ```
   uid=basil,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com,cn=front_office
   ```
3. The matching LDAP entry has group attribute `cn=front_office`, so `front_office` becomes the authenticated user.
4. The authenticated user differs from the client user name basil, with the result that basil is treated as a proxy for front_office, and basil assumes the privileges of the front_office account. The following query should return output as shown:

```
mysql> SELECT USER(), CURRENT_USER(), @@proxy_user;
+-----------------+------------------------+--------------+
| USER()          | CURRENT_USER()         | @@proxy_user |
+-----------------+------------------------+--------------+
| basil@localhost | front_office@localhost | ''@'%'       |
+-----------------+------------------------+--------------+
```

This demonstrates that basil uses the privileges granted to the front_office MySQL account, and that proxying occurred through the default proxy user account.

**LDAP Authentication Group Preference and Mapping Specification**

As described in [LDAP Authentication with Proxying](#), basic LDAP authentication proxying works by the principle that the plugin uses the first group name returned by the LDAP server as the MySQL proxy user account name. This simple capability does not enable specifying any preference about which group name to use if the LDAP server returns multiple names, or any name other than the group name as the proxy user name.

As of MySQL 5.7.25, for MySQL accounts that use LDAP authentication, the authentication string can specify the following information to enable greater proxying flexibility:

- A list of groups in preference order, such that the plugin uses the first group name in the list that matches a group returned by the LDAP server.
- A mapping from group names to proxy user names, such that a group name when matched can provide a specified name to use as the proxy user. This provides an alternative to using the group name as the proxy user.

Consider the following MySQL proxy account definition:

```
CREATE USER ''@'%'
  IDENTIFIED WITH authentication_ldap_sasl
  AS '+ou=People,dc=example,dc=com#grp1=usera,grp2,grp3=userc';
```

The authentication string has a user DN suffix `ou=People,dc=example,dc=com` prefixed by the + character. Thus, as described in [LDAP Authentication User DN Suffixes](#), the full user DN is constructed from the user DN suffix as specified, plus the client user name as the `uid` attribute.

The remaining part of the authentication string begins with #, which signifies the beginning of group preference and mapping information. This part of the authentication string lists group names in the order grp1, grp2, grp3. The LDAP plugin compares that list with the set of group names returned by the LDAP server, looking in list order for a match against the returned names. The plugin uses the first match, or if there is no match, authentication fails.

Suppose that the LDAP server returns groups grp3, grp2, and grp7. The LDAP plugin uses grp2 because it is the first group in the authentication string that matches, even though it is not the first group returned by the LDAP server. If the LDAP server returns grp4, grp2, and grp1, the plugin uses grp1 even though grp2 also matches. grp1 has a precedence higher than grp2 because it is listed earlier in the authentication string.

Assuming that the plugin finds a group name match, it performs mapping from that group name to the MySQL proxy user name, if there is one. For the example proxy account, mapping occurs as follows:

- If the matching group name is grp1 or grp3, those are associated in the authentication string with user names usera and userc, respectively. The plugin uses the corresponding associated user name as the proxy user name.
• If the matching group name is `grp2`, there is no associated user name in the authentication string. The plugin uses `grp2` as the proxy user name.

If the LDAP server returns a group in DN format, the LDAP plugin parses the group DN to extract the group name from it.

To specify LDAP group preference and mapping information, these principles apply:

• Begin the group preference and mapping part of the authentication string with a `#` prefix character.

• The group preference and mapping specification is a list of one or more items, separated by commas. Each item has the form `group_name=user_name` or `group_name`. Items should be listed in group name preference order. For a group name selected by the plugin as a match from set of group names returned by the LDAP server, the two syntaxes differ in effect as follows:
  • For an item specified as `group_name=user_name` (with a user name), the group name maps to the user name, which is used as the MySQL proxy user name.
  • For an item specified as `group_name` (with no user name), the group name is used as the MySQL proxy user name.

• To quote a group or user name that contains special characters such as space, surround it by double quote (`"`) characters. For example, if an item has group and user names of `my group name` and `my user name`, it must be written in a group mapping using quotes:

```
"my group name"="my user name"
```

If an item has group and user names of `my_group_name` and `my_user_name` (which contain no special characters), it may but need not be written using quotes. Any of the following are valid:

```
my_group_name=my_user_name
my_group_name="my_user_name"
"my_group_name"=my_user_name
"my_group_name"="my_user_name"
```

• To escape a character, precede it by a backslash (`\`). This is useful particularly to include a literal double quote or backslash, which are otherwise not included literally.

• A user DN need not be present in the authentication string, but if present, it must precede the group preference and mapping part. A user DN can be given as a full user DN, or as a user DN suffix with a `+` prefix character.

### 6.1.10 No-Login Pluggable Authentication

The `mysql_no_login` server-side authentication plugin prevents all client connections to any account that uses it. Use cases for this plugin include:

• Accounts that must be able to execute stored programs and views with elevated privileges without exposing those privileges to ordinary users.

• Proxied accounts that should never permit direct login but are intended to be accessed only through proxy accounts.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The file must be located in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

**Table 6.9 Plugin and Library Names for No-Login Authentication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td><code>mysql_no_login</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
No-Login Pluggable Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>mysql_no_login.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to no-login pluggable authentication:

- Installing No-Login Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling No-Login Pluggable Authentication
- Using No-Login Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”. For proxy user information, see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.

Installing No-Login Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the no-login authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is mysql_no_login. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, .so for Unix and Unix-like systems, .dll for Windows).

To load the plugin at server startup, use the --plugin-load-add option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server my.cnf file (adjust the .so suffix for your platform as necessary):

```conf
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=mysql_no_login.so
```

After modifying my.cnf, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the .so suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN mysql_no_login SONAME 'mysql_no_login.so';
```

INSTALL PLUGIN loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the mysql.plugins system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup without the need for --plugin-load-add.

To verify plugin installation, examine the INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS table or use the SHOW PLUGINS statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%login%';
+----------------+---------------+
| PLUGIN_NAME    | PLUGIN_STATUS |
|----------------+---------------+
| mysql_no_login | ACTIVE        |
|----------------+---------------+
```

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the no-login plugin, see Using No-Login Pluggable Authentication.
Uninstalling No-Login Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the no-login authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a\texttt{--plugin-load-add} option, restart the server without the option.
- If you installed the plugin at runtime using an\texttt{INSTALL PLUGIN} statement, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use\texttt{UNINSTALL PLUGIN}:

\begin{verbatim}
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_no_login;
\end{verbatim}

Using No-Login Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to use the no-login authentication plugin to prevent accounts from being used for connecting from MySQL client programs to the server. It is assumed that the server is running with the no-login plugin enabled, as described in Installing No-Login Pluggable Authentication.

To refer to the no-login authentication plugin in the\texttt{IDENTIFIED WITH} clause of a\texttt{CREATE USER} statement, use the name\texttt{mysql_no_login}.

An account that authenticates using\texttt{mysql_no_login} may be used as the\texttt{DEFINER} for stored program and view objects. If such an object definition also includes\texttt{SQL SECURITY DEFINER}, it executes with that account's privileges. DBAs can use this behavior to provide access to confidential or sensitive data that is exposed only through well-controlled interfaces.

The following example illustrates these principles. It defines an account that does not permit client connections, and associates with it a view that exposes only certain columns of the\texttt{mysql.user} system table:

\begin{verbatim}
CREATE DATABASE nologindb;
CREATE USER 'nologin'@'localhost'
  IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
GRANT ALL ON nologindb.*
  TO 'nologin'@'localhost';
GRANT SELECT ON mysql.user
  TO 'nologin'@'localhost';
CREATE DEFINER = 'nologin'@'localhost'
  SQL SECURITY DEFINER
  VIEW nologindb.myview
  AS SELECT User, Host FROM mysql.user;
\end{verbatim}

To provide protected access to the view to an ordinary user, do this:

\begin{verbatim}
GRANT SELECT ON nologindb.myview
  TO 'ordinaryuser'@'localhost';
\end{verbatim}

Now the ordinary user can use the view to access the limited information it presents:

\begin{verbatim}
SELECT * FROM nologindb.myview;
\end{verbatim}

Attempts by the user to access columns other than those exposed by the view result in an error, as do attempts to select from the view by users not granted access to it.

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Note}

Because the\texttt{nologin} account cannot be used directly, the operations required to set up objects that it uses must be performed by\texttt{root} or similar account that has the privileges required to create the objects and set\texttt{DEFINER} values.
\end{quote}

The\texttt{mysql_no_login} plugin is also useful in proxying scenarios. (For a discussion of concepts involved in proxying, see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.) An account that authenticates using\texttt{mysql_no_login} may be used as a proxied user for proxy accounts:
--- create proxied account
CREATE USER 'proxied_user'@'localhost'
   IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_no_login;
--- grant privileges to proxied account
GRANT ...  
  ON ...  
  TO 'proxied_user'@'localhost';
--- permit proxy_user to be a proxy account for proxied account
GRANT PROXY  
  ON 'proxied_user'@'localhost'  
  TO 'proxy_user'@'localhost';

This enables clients to access MySQL through the proxy account (proxy_user) but not to bypass the proxy mechanism by connecting directly as the proxied user (proxied_user). A client who connects using the proxy_user account has the privileges of the proxied_user account, but proxied_user itself cannot be used to connect.

For alternative methods of protecting proxied accounts against direct use, see Preventing Direct Login to Proxied Accounts.

6.1.11 Socket Peer-Credential Pluggable Authentication

The server-side auth_socket authentication plugin authenticates clients that connect from the local host through the Unix socket file. The plugin uses the SO_PEERCRED socket option to obtain information about the user running the client program. Thus, the plugin can be used only on systems that support the SO_PEERCRED option, such as Linux.

The source code for this plugin can be examined as a relatively simple example demonstrating how to write a loadable authentication plugin.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file must be located in the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable.

Table 6.10 Plugin and Library Names for Socket Peer-Credential Authentication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>auth_socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>None, see discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>auth_socket.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to socket pluggable authentication:

- Installing Socket Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling Socket Pluggable Authentication
- Using Socket Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

Installing Socket Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the socket authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.
To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:

```markdown
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=auth_socket.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugin at runtime, use this statement:

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN auth_socket SONAME 'auth_socket.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup without the need for `--plugin-load-add`.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
    FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
    WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%socket%';
```

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the socket plugin, see Using Socket Pluggable Authentication.

### Uninstalling Socket Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the socket authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.
- If you installed the plugin at runtime using an `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```sql
UNINSTALL PLUGIN auth_socket;
```

### Using Socket Pluggable Authentication

The socket plugin checks whether the socket user name (the operating system user name) matches the MySQL user name specified by the client program to the server. If the names do not match, the plugin checks whether the socket user name matches the name specified in the `authentication_string` column of the `mysql.user` system table row. If a match is found, the plugin permits the connection. The `authentication_string` value can be specified using an `IDENTIFIED ...AS` clause with `CREATE USER` or `ALTER USER`.

Suppose that a MySQL account is created for an operating system user named `valerie` who is to be authenticated by the `auth_socket` plugin for connections from the local host through the socket file:

```sql
CREATE USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket;
```

If a user on the local host with a login name of `stefanie` invokes `mysql` with the option `--user=valerie` to connect through the socket file, the server uses `auth_socket` to authenticate the client. The plugin determines that the `--user` option value (`valerie`) differs from the client user's
name (stephanie) and refuses the connection. If a user named valerie tries the same thing, the plugin finds that the user name and the MySQL user name are both valerie and permits the connection. However, the plugin refuses the connection even for valerie if the connection is made using a different protocol, such as TCP/IP.

To permit both the valerie and stephanie operating system users to access MySQL through socket file connections that use the account, this can be done two ways:

- Name both users at account-creation time, one following CREATE USER, and the other in the authentication string:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket AS 'stephanie';
  ```

- If you have already used CREATE USER to create the account for a single user, use ALTER USER to add the second user:

  ```
  CREATE USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket;
  ALTER USER 'valerie'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED WITH auth_socket AS 'stephanie';
  ```

To access the account, both valerie and stephanie specify --user=valerie at connect time.

### 6.1.12 Test Pluggable Authentication

MySQL includes a test plugin that checks account credentials and logs success or failure to the server error log. This is a loadable plugin (not built in) and must be installed prior to use.

The test plugin source code is separate from the server source, unlike the built-in native plugin, so it can be examined as a relatively simple example demonstrating how to write a loadable authentication plugin.

**Note**

This plugin is intended for testing and development purposes, and is not for use in production environments or on servers that are exposed to public networks.

The following table shows the plugin and library file names. The file name suffix might differ on your system. The file must be located in the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin or File</th>
<th>Plugin or File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Server-side plugin</td>
<td>test_plugin_server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client-side plugin</td>
<td>auth_test_plugin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library file</td>
<td>auth_test_plugin.so</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following sections provide installation and usage information specific to test pluggable authentication:

- Installing Test Pluggable Authentication
- Uninstalling Test Pluggable Authentication
- Using Test Pluggable Authentication

For general information about pluggable authentication in MySQL, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”.

### Installing Test Pluggable Authentication

This section describes how to install the test authentication plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.
To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=auth_test_plugin.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN test_plugin_server SONAME 'auth_test_plugin.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup without the need for `--plugin-load-add`.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE '%test_plugin%';
```

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

To associate MySQL accounts with the test plugin, see Using Test Pluggable Authentication.

### Uninstalling Test Pluggable Authentication

The method used to uninstall the test authentication plugin depends on how you installed it:

- If you installed the plugin at server startup using a `--plugin-load-add` option, restart the server without the option.
- If you installed the plugin at runtime using an `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement, it remains installed across server restarts. To uninstall it, use `UNINSTALL PLUGIN`:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN test_plugin_server;
```

### Using Test Pluggable Authentication

To use the test authentication plugin, create an account and name that plugin in the `IDENTIFIED WITH` clause:

```
CREATE USER 'testuser'@'localhost'
IDENTIFIED WITH test_plugin_server
BY 'testpassword';
```
Then provide the `--user` and `--password` options for that account when you connect to the server. For example:

```
shell> mysql --user=testuser --password
Enter password: testpassword
```

The plugin fetches the password as received from the client and compares it with the value stored in the `authentication_string` column of the account row in the `mysql.user` system table. If the two values match, the plugin returns the `authentication_string` value as the new effective user ID.

You can look in the server error log for a message indicating whether authentication succeeded (notice that the password is reported as the “user”):

```
[Note] Plugin test_plugin_server reported: 'successfully authenticated user testpassword'
```

### 6.1.13 Pluggable Authentication System Variables

These variables are unavailable unless the appropriate server-side plugin is installed:

- `authentication_ldap_sasl` for system variables with names of the form `authentication_ldap_sasl_xxx`
- `authentication_ldap_simple` for system variables with names of the form `authentication_ldap_simple_xxx`

#### Table 6.12 Authentication Plugin System Variable Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_pwd</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_filter</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_filter</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_filter</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_log_status</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_server_host</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_server_port</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_tls</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_windows_log_level</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication_windows_use_principal_name</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-auth-method-name=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>SCRAM-SHA-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the authentication method name. Communication between the authentication plugin and the LDAP server occurs according to this authentication method. These authentication method values are permitted:

- **SCRAM-SHA-1**: Authentication uses a SASL challenge-response mechanism to ensure password security.

  The client-side `authentication_ldap_sasl_client` plugin communicates with the SASL server, using the password to create a challenge and obtain a SASL request buffer, then passes this buffer to the server-side `authentication_ldap_sasl` plugin. The client-side and server-side SASL LDAP plugins use SASL messages for secure transmission of credentials within the LDAP protocol, to avoid sending the cleartext password between the MySQL client and server.

### authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-bind-base-dn=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_base_dn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the base distinguished name (DN). This variable can be used to limit the scope of searches by anchoring them at a certain location (the “base”) within the search tree.

Suppose that members of one set of LDAP user entries each have this form:
Pluggable Authentication System Variables

uid=user_name,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com

And that members of another set of LDAP user entries each have this form:

uid=user_name,ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com

Then searches work like this for different base DN values:

- If the base DN is ou=People,dc=example,dc=com: Searches find user entries only in the first set.
- If the base DN is ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com: Searches find user entries only in the second set.
- If the base DN is ou=dc=example,dc=com: Searches find user entries in the first or second set.

In general, more specific base DN values result in faster searches because they limit the search scope more.

- \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl\_bind\_root\_dn}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>\texttt{--authentication-ldap-sasl-bind-root-dn=value}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>\texttt{authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the root distinguished name (DN). This variable is used in conjunction with \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl\_bind\_root\_pwd} as the credentials for authenticating to the LDAP server for the purpose of performing searches. Authentication uses either one or two LDAP bind operations, depending on whether the MySQL account names an LDAP user DN:

- If the account does not name a user DN: \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl} performs an initial LDAP binding using \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl\_bind\_root\_dn} and \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl\_bind\_root\_pwd}. (These are both empty by default, so if they are not set, the LDAP server must permit anonymous connections.) The resulting bind LDAP handle is used to search for the user DN, based on the client user name. \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl} performs a second bind using the user DN and client-supplied password.

- If the account does name a user DN: The first bind operation is unnecessary in this case. \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl} performs a single bind using the user DN and client-supplied password. This is faster than if the MySQL account does not specify an LDAP user DN.

- \texttt{authentication\_ldap\_sasl\_bind\_root\_pwd}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>\texttt{--authentication-ldap-sasl-bind-root-pwd=value}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>\texttt{authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_pwd}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the password for the root distinguished name. This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_sasl_bind_root_dn`. See the description of that variable.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-ca-path=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the absolute path of the certificate authority file. Specify this file if it is desired that the authentication plugin perform verification of the LDAP server certificate.

**Note**

In addition to setting the `authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path` variable to the file name, you must add the appropriate certificate authority certificates to the file and enable the `authentication_ldap_sasl_tls` system variable.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-group-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>cn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies group names in LDAP directory entries. If `authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_attr` has its default value of `cn`, searches return the `cn` value as the group name. For example, if an LDAP entry with a `uid` value of `user1` has a `cn` attribute of `mygroup`, searches for `user1` return `mygroup` as the group name.

This variable should be the empty string if you want no group or proxy authentication.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, if the group search attribute is `isMemberOf`, LDAP authentication directly retrieves the user attribute `isMemberOf` value and assigns it as group information. If the group search attribute is not `isMemberOf`, LDAP authentication searches for all groups where the user is a member.
member. (The latter is the default behavior.) This behavior is based on how LDAP group information can be stored two ways: 1) A group entry can have an attribute named `memberUid` or `member` with a value that is a user name; 2) A user entry can have an attribute named `memberOf` with values that are group names.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_filter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-group-search-filter=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_group_search_filter</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>`(</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the custom group search filter.

As of MySQL 5.7.22, the search filter value can contain `{UA}` and `{UD}` notation to represent the user name and the full user DN. For example, `{UA}` is replaced with a user name such as "admin", whereas `{UD}` is replaced with a use full DN such as "uid=admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com". The following value is the default, which supports both OpenLDAP and Active Directory:

```
(|(&{objectClass=posixGroup}(memberUid={UA})) &(&{objectClass=group}(member={UD})))
```

Previously, if the group search attribute was `memberOf` or `memberOf`, it was treated as a user attribute that has group information. However, in some cases for the user scenario, `memberOf` was a simple user attribute that held no group information. For additional flexibility, an optional `{GA}` prefix now can be used with the group search attribute. (Previously, it was assumed that if the group search attribute is `memberOf`, it will be treated differently. Now any group attribute with a `{GA}` prefix is treated as a user attribute having group names.) For example, with a value of `{GA}MemberOf`, if the group value is the DN, the first attribute value from the group DN is returned as the group name.

In MySQL 5.7.21, the search filter used `%s` notation, expanding it to the user name for OpenLDAP `(&{objectClass=posixGroup}(memberUid=%s))` and to the full user DN for Active Directory `(&{objectClass=group}(member=%s))`.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-init-pool-size=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For SASL LDAP authentication, the initial size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. Choose the value for this variable based on the average number of concurrent authentication requests to the LDAP server.

The plugin uses `authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size` and `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size` together for connection-pool management:

- When the authentication plugin initializes, it creates `authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size` connections, unless `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling.
- If the plugin receives an authentication request when there are no free connections in the current connection pool, the plugin can create a new connection, up to the maximum connection pool size given by `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size`.
- If the plugin receives a request when the pool size is already at its maximum and there are no free connections, authentication fails.
- When the plugin unloads, it closes all pooled connections.

Changes to plugin system variable settings may have no effect on connections already in the pool. For example, modifying the LDAP server host, port, or TLS settings does not affect existing connections. However, if the original variable values were invalid and the connection pool could not be initialized, the plugin attempts to reinitialize the pool for the next LDAP request. In this case, the new system variable values are used for the reinitialization attempt.

If `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling, each LDAP connection opened by the plugin uses the values the system variables have at that time.

- `authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-log-status=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the logging level for messages written to the error log. The following table shows the permitted level values and their meanings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option Value</th>
<th>Types of Messages Logged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Error messages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On the client side, messages can be logged to the standard output by setting the `AUTHENTICATION_LDAP_CLIENT_LOG` environment variable. The permitted and default values are the same as for `authentication_ldap_sasl_log_status`.

The `AUTHENTICATION_LDAP_CLIENT_LOG` environment variable applies only to SASL LDAP authentication. It has no effect for simple LDAP authentication because the client plugin in that case is `mysql_clear_password`, which knows nothing about LDAP operations.

• `authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-max-pool-size=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_max_pool_size</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>32767</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the maximum size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. To disable connection pooling, set this variable to 0.

This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_sasl_init_pool_size`. See the description of that variable.

• `authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-server-host=host_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_host</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the LDAP server host. The permitted values for this variable depend on the authentication method:

• For `authentication_ldap_sasl_auth_method_name=SCRAM-SHA-1`: The LDAP server host can be a host name or IP address.

• `authentication_ldap_sasl_server_port`
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-server-port=port_num</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_server_port</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td>389</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minimum Value</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maximum Value</strong></td>
<td>32376</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the LDAP server TCP/IP port number.

As of MySQL 5.7.25, if the LDAP port number is configured as 636 or 3269, the plugin uses LDAPS (LDAP over SSL) instead of LDAP. (LDAPS differs from startTLS.)

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_tls**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td>`--authentication-ldap-sasl-tls={OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_tls</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, whether connections by the plugin to the LDAP server are secure. If this variable is enabled, the plugin uses TLS to connect securely to the LDAP server. If you enable this variable, you may also wish to set the `authentication_ldap_sasl_ca_path` variable.

MySQL LDAP plugins support the StartTLS method, which initializes TLS on top of a plain LDAP connection. The `ldaps` method is deprecated and MySQL does not support it.

- **authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-sasl-user-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td><code>uid</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For SASL LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies user names in LDAP directory entries. If a user distinguished name is not provided, the authentication plugin searches for the name using this attribute. For example, if the...
**authentication_ldap_sasl_user_search_attr** value is `uid`, a search for the user name `user1` finds entries with a `uid` value of `user1`.

- **authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-auth-method-name=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>SIMPLE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the authentication method name. Communication between the authentication plugin and the LDAP server occurs according to this authentication method. These authentication method values are permitted:

- **SIMPLE**: This authentication method uses either one or two LDAP bind operations, depending on whether the MySQL account names an LDAP user distinguished name. See the description of `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn`.

- **AD-FOREST**: `authentication_ldap_simple` searches all the domains in the Active Directory forest, performing an LDAP bind to each Active Directory domain until the user is found in some domain.

**Note**

For simple LDAP authentication, it is recommended to also set TLS parameters to require that communication with the LDAP server take place over secure connections.

- **authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-bind-base-dn=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_base_dn</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the base distinguished name (DN). This variable can be used to limit the scope of searches by anchoring them at a certain location (the “base”) within the search tree.

Suppose that members of one set of LDAP user entries each have this form:

```plaintext
uid=user_name,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com
```

And that members of another set of LDAP user entries each have this form:
Pluggable Authentication System Variables

- uid=user_name,ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com

Then searches work like this for different base DN values:

- If the base DN is ou=People,dc=example,dc=com: Searches find user entries only in the first set.
- If the base DN is ou=Admin,dc=example,dc=com: Searches find user entries only in the second set.
- If the base DN is ou=dc=example,dc=com: Searches find user entries in the first or second set.

In general, more specific base DN values result in faster searches because they limit the search scope more.

- authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-bind-root-dn=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the root distinguished name (DN). This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd` as the credentials for authenticating to the LDAP server for the purpose of performing searches. Authentication uses either one or two LDAP bind operations, depending on whether the MySQL account names an LDAP user DN:

- If the account does not name a user DN: `authentication_ldap_simple` performs an initial LDAP binding using `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn` and `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd`. (These are both empty by default, so if they are not set, the LDAP server must permit anonymous connections.) The resulting bind LDAP handle is used to search for the user DN, based on the client user name. `authentication_ldap_simple` performs a second bind using the user DN and client-supplied password.

- If the account does name a user DN: The first bind operation is unnecessary in this case. `authentication_ldap_simple` performs a single bind using the user DN and client-supplied password. This is faster than if the MySQL account does not specify an LDAP user DN.

- authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-bind-root-pwd=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_pwd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For simple LDAP authentication, the password for the root distinguished name. This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_simple_bind_root_dn`. See the description of that variable.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-ca-path=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NULL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the absolute path of the certificate authority file. Specify this file if it is desired that the authentication plugin perform verification of the LDAP server certificate.

**Note**

In addition to setting the `authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path` variable to the file name, you must add the appropriate certificate authority certificates to the file and enable the `authentication_ldap_simple_tls` system variable.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-group-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>cn</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies group names in LDAP directory entries. If `authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_attr` has its default value of `cn`, searches return the `cn` value as the group name. For example, if an LDAP entry with a `uid` value of `user1` has a `cn` attribute of `mygroup`, searches for `user1` return `mygroup` as the group name.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, if the group search attribute is `isMemberOf`, LDAP authentication directly retrieves the user attribute `isMemberOf` value and assigns it as group information. If the group search attribute is not `isMemberOf`, LDAP authentication searches for all groups where the user is a member. (The latter is the default behavior.) This behavior is based on how LDAP group information can be stored two ways: 1) A group entry can have an attribute named `memberUid` or `member` with a value that is a user name; 2) A user entry can have an attribute named `isMemberOf` with values that are group names.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_group_search_filter`
For simple LDAP authentication, the custom group search filter.

As of MySQL 5.7.22, the search filter value can contain $\{UA\}$ and $\{UD\}$ notation to represent the user name and the full user DN. For example, $\{UA\}$ is replaced with a user name such as "admin", whereas $\{UD\}$ is replaced with a use full DN such as "uid=admin,ou=People,dc=example,dc=com". The following value is the default, which supports both OpenLDAP and Active Directory:

\[
(|(&(objectClass=posixGroup)(memberUid={UA}))
  (&(objectClass=group)(member={UD})))
\]

Previously, if the group search attribute was $isMemberOf$ or $memberOf$, it was treated as a user attribute that has group information. However, in some cases for the user scenario, $memberOf$ was a simple user attribute that held no group information. For additional flexibility, an optional $\{GA\}$ prefix now can be used with the group search attribute. (Previously, it was assumed that if the group search attribute is $isMemberOf$, it will be treated differently. Now any group attribute with a $\{GA\}$ prefix is treated as a user attribute having group names.) For example, with a value of $\{GA\}MemberOf$, if the group value is the DN, the first attribute value from the group DN is returned as the group name.

In MySQL 5.7.21, the search filter used $\%s$ notation, expanding it to the user name for OpenLDAP ($&(objectClass=posixGroup) (memberOf=\%s)$) and to the full user DN for Active Directory ($&(objectClass=group) (member=\%s)$).

- $authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size$
The plugin uses `authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size` and `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size` together for connection-pool management:

- When the authentication plugin initializes, it creates `authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size` connections, unless `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling.

- If the plugin receives an authentication request when there are no free connections in the current connection pool, the plugin can create a new connection, up to the maximum connection pool size given by `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size`.

- If the plugin receives a request when the pool size is already at its maximum and there are no free connections, authentication fails.

- When the plugin unloads, it closes all pooled connections.

Changes to plugin system variable settings may have no effect on connections already in the pool. For example, modifying the LDAP server host, port, or TLS settings does not affect existing connections. However, if the original variable values were invalid and the connection pool could not be initialized, the plugin attempts to reinitialize the pool for the next LDAP request. In this case, the new system variable values are used for the reinitialization attempt.

If `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size=0` to disable pooling, each LDAP connection opened by the plugin uses the values the system variables have at that time.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_log_status`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-log-status=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_log_status</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the logging level for messages written to the error log. The following table shows the permitted level values and their meanings.

Table 6.14 Log Levels for `authentication_ldap_simple_log_status`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option Value</th>
<th>Types of Messages Logged</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>No messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Error messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Error and warning messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Error, warning, and information messages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Same as previous level plus debugging messages from MySQL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size`
### Pluggable Authentication System Variables

**Property** | **Value**
---|---
Command-Line Format | `--authentication-ldap-simple-max-pool-size=#`
Introduced | 5.7.19
System Variable | `authentication_ldap_simple_max_pool_size`
Scope | Global
Dynamic | Yes
Type | Integer
Default Value | 1000
Minimum Value | 0
Maximum Value | 32767

For simple LDAP authentication, the maximum size of the pool of connections to the LDAP server. To disable connection pooling, set this variable to 0.

This variable is used in conjunction with `authentication_ldap_simple_init_pool_size`. See the description of that variable.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_server_host`

**Property** | **Value**
---|---
Command-Line Format | `--authentication-ldap-simple-server-host=host_name`
Introduced | 5.7.19
System Variable | `authentication_ldap_simple_server_host`
Scope | Global
Dynamic | Yes
Type | String

For simple LDAP authentication, the LDAP server host. The permitted values for this variable depend on the authentication method:

- For `authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name=SIMPLE`: The LDAP server host can be a host name or IP address.

- For `authentication_ldap_simple_auth_method_name=AD-FOREST`: The LDAP server host can be an Active Directory domain name. For example, for an LDAP server URL of `ldap://example.mem.local:389`, the server name can be `mem.local`.

An Active Directory forest setup can have multiple domains (LDAP server IPs), which can be discovered using DNS. On Unix and Unix-like systems, some additional setup may be required to configure your DNS server with SRV records that specify the LDAP servers for the Active Directory domain. Suppose that your configuration has these properties:

- The name server that provides information about Active Directory domains has IP address `10.172.166.100`.

- The LDAP servers have names `ldap1.mem.local` through `ldap3.mem.local` and IP addresses `10.172.166.101` through `10.172.166.103`.

You want the LDAP servers to be discoverable using SRV searches. For example, at the command line, a command like this should list the LDAP servers:

```bash
host -t SRV _ldap._tcp.mem.local
```
Perform the DNS configuration as follows:

1. Add a line to `/etc/resolv.conf` to specify the name server that provides information about Active Directory domains:

```
nameserver 10.172.166.100
```

2. Configure the appropriate zone file for the name server with SRV records for the LDAP servers:

```
_ldap._tcp.mem.local. 86400 IN SRV 0 100 389 ldap1.mem.local.
_ldap._tcp.mem.local. 86400 IN SRV 0 100 389 ldap2.mem.local.
_ldap._tcp.mem.local. 86400 IN SRV 0 100 389 ldap3.mem.local.
```

3. It may also be necessary to specify the IP address for the LDAP servers in `/etc/hosts` if the server host cannot be resolved. For example, add lines like this to the file:

```
10.172.166.101 ldap1.mem.local
10.172.166.102 ldap2.mem.local
10.172.166.103 ldap3.mem.local
```

With the DNS configured as just described, the server-side LDAP plugin can discover the LDAP servers and will try to authenticate in all domains until authentication succeeds or there are no more servers.

Windows needs no such settings as just described. Given the LDAP server host in the `authentication_ldap_simple_server_host` value, the Windows LDAP library searches all domains and attempts to authenticate.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_server_port`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Command-Line Format</th>
<th>Introduced</th>
<th>System Variable</th>
<th>Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Minimum Value</th>
<th>Maximum Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
<td><strong>Value</strong></td>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
<td><strong>Scope</strong></td>
<td><strong>Dynamic</strong></td>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Default Value</strong></td>
<td><strong>Minimum Value</strong></td>
<td><strong>Maximum Value</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-server-port=port_num</code></td>
<td></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_server_port</code></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Integer</td>
<td>389</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>32376</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the LDAP server TCP/IP port number.

As of MySQL 5.7.25, if the LDAP port number is configured as 636 or 3269, the plugin uses LDAPS (LDAP over SSL) instead of LDAP. (LDAPS differs from `startTLS`.)

- `authentication_ldap_simple_tls`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Command-Line Format</th>
<th>Introduced</th>
<th>System Variable</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
<td><strong>Value</strong></td>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td><strong>Introduced</strong></td>
<td><strong>System Variable</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Command-Line Format</strong></td>
<td>`--authentication-ldap-simple-tls=[OFF</td>
<td>ON]`</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```
The Connection-Control Plugins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, whether connections by the plugin to the LDAP server are secure. If this variable is enabled, the plugin uses TLS to connect securely to the LDAP server. If you enable this variable, you may also wish to set the `authentication_ldap_simple_ca_path` variable.

MySQL LDAP plugins support the StartTLS method, which initializes TLS on top of a plain LDAP connection. The `ldaps` method is deprecated and MySQL does not support it.

- `authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--authentication-ldap-simple-user-search-attr=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>uid</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For simple LDAP authentication, the name of the attribute that specifies user names in LDAP directory entries. If a user distinguished name is not provided, the authentication plugin searches for the name using this attribute. For example, if the `authentication_ldap_simple_user_search_attr` value is `uid`, a search for the user name `user1` finds entries with a `uid` value of `user1`.

6.2 The Connection-Control Plugins

As of MySQL 5.7.17, MySQL Server includes a plugin library that enables administrators to introduce an increasing delay in server response to clients after a certain number of consecutive failed connection attempts. This capability provides a deterrent that slows down brute force attacks that attempt to access MySQL user accounts. The plugin library contains two plugins:

- **CONNECTION_CONTROL** checks incoming connections and adds a delay to server responses as necessary. This plugin also exposes system variables that enable its operation to be configured and a status variable that provides rudimentary monitoring information.

  The `CONNECTION_CONTROL` plugin uses the audit plugin interface (see Writing Audit Plugins). To collect information, it subscribes to the `MYSQL_AUDIT_CONNECTION_CLASSMASK` event class, and processes `MYSQL_AUDIT_CONNECTION_CONNECT` and `MYSQL_AUDIT_CONNECTION_CHANGE_USER` subevents to check whether the server should introduce a delay before responding to client connection attempts.

- **CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS** implements an `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` table that exposes more detailed monitoring information for failed connection attempts.

  The following sections provide information about connection-control plugin installation and configuration. For information about the `CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` table, see The `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` Table.

6.2.1 Connection-Control Plugin Installation
This section describes how to install the connection-control plugins, **CONNECTION_CONTROL** and **CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS**. For general information about installing plugins, see [Installing and Uninstalling Plugins](#).

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is `connection_control`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugins at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains them. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[[mysqld]]
plugin-load-add=connection_control.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugins at runtime, use these statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN CONNECTION_CONTROL SONAME 'connection_control.so';
INSTALL PLUGIN CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS SONAME 'connection_control.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin immediately, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the server to load it for each subsequent normal startup without the need for `--plugin-load-add`.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW TABLES` statement (see [Obtaining Server Plugin Information](#)). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'connection%';
+------------------------------------------+---------------+
| PLUGIN_NAME                              | PLUGIN_STATUS |
|------------------------------------------+---------------|
| CONNECTION_CONTROL                       | ACTIVE        |
| CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS | ACTIVE        |
+------------------------------------------+---------------+
```

If a plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

If the plugins have been previously registered with `INSTALL PLUGIN` or are loaded with `--plugin-load-add`, you can use the `--connection-control` and `--connection-control-failed-login-attempts` options at server startup to control plugin activation. For example, to load the plugins at startup and prevent them from being removed at runtime, use these options:

```
[[mysqld]]
plugin-load-add=connection_control.so
connection-control=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
connection-control-failed-login-attempts=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
```

If it is desired to prevent the server from running without a given connection-control plugin, use an option value of `FORCE` or `FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` to force server startup to fail if the plugin does not initialize successfully.
Note

It is possible to install one plugin without the other, but both must be installed for full connection-control capability. In particular, installing only the `CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` plugin is of little use because without the `CONNECTION_CONTROL` plugin to provide the data that populates the `CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` table, retrievals from the table will always be empty.

- Connection Delay Configuration
- Connection Failure Assessment
- Connection Failure Monitoring

**Connection Delay Configuration**

To enable you to configure its operation, the `CONNECTION_CONTROL` plugin exposes several system variables:

- `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold`: The number of consecutive failed connection attempts permitted to clients before the server adds a delay for subsequent connection attempts.

- `connection_control_min_connection_delay`: The amount of delay to add for each consecutive connection failure above the threshold.

- `connection_control_max_connection_delay`: The maximum delay to add.

To entirely disable checking for failed connection attempts, set `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` to zero. If `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` is nonzero, the amount of delay is zero up through that many consecutive failed connection attempts. Thereafter, the amount of delay is the number of failed attempts above the threshold, multiplied by `connection_control_min_connection_delay` milliseconds. For example, with the default `connection_control_min_connection_delay` and `connection_control_max_connection_delay` values of 3 and 1000, respectively, there is no delay for the first three consecutive failed connection attempts by a client, a delay of 1000 milliseconds for the fourth failed attempt, 2000 milliseconds for the fifth failed attempt, and so on, up to the maximum delay permitted by `connection_control_max_connection_delay`.

You can set the `CONNECTION_CONTROL` system variables at server startup or runtime. Suppose that you want to permit four consecutive failed connection attempts before the server starts delaying its responses, and to increase the delay by 1500 milliseconds for each additional failure after that. To set the relevant variables at server startup, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file:

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=connection_control.so
connection_control_failed_connections_threshold=4
connection_control_min_connection_delay=1500
```

To set the variables at runtime, use these statements:

```
SET GLOBAL connection_control_failed_connections_threshold = 4;
SET GLOBAL connection_control_min_connection_delay = 1500;
```

`SET GLOBAL` sets the value for the running MySQL instance. To make the change permanent, add a line in your `my.cnf` file, as shown previously.

The `connection_control_min_connection_delay` and `connection_control_max_connection_delay` system variables have fixed minimum and maxima.
maximum values of 1000 and 2147483647, respectively. In addition, the permitted range of values of each variable also depends on the current value of the other:

- `connection_control_min_connection_delay` cannot be set greater than the current value of `connection_control_max_connection_delay`.
- `connection_control_max_connection_delay` cannot be set less than the current value of `connection_control_min_connection_delay`.

Thus, to make the changes required for some configurations, you might need to set the variables in a specific order. Suppose that the current minimum and maximum delays are 1000 and 2000, and that you want to set them to 3000 and 5000. You cannot first set `connection_control_min_connection_delay` to 3000 because that is greater than the current `connection_control_max_connection_delay` value of 2000. Instead, set `connection_control_max_connection_delay` to 5000, then set `connection_control_min_connection_delay` to 3000.

### Connection Failure Assessment

When the `CONNECTION_CONTROL` plugin is installed, it checks connection attempts and tracks whether they fail or succeed. For this purpose, a failed connection attempt is one for which the client user and host match a known MySQL account but the provided credentials are incorrect, or do not match any known account.

Failed-connection counting is based on the user/host combination for each connection attempt. Determination of the applicable user name and host name takes proxying into account and occurs as follows:

- If the client user proxies another user, the proxying user's information is used. For example, if `external_user@example.com` proxies `proxy_user@example.com`, connection counting uses the proxying user, `external_user@example.com`, rather than the proxied user, `proxy_user@example.com`. Both `external_user@example.com` and `proxy_user@example.com` must have valid entries in the `mysql.user` system table and a proxy relationship between them must be defined in the `mysql.proxies_priv` system table (see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”).

- If the client user does not proxy another user, but does match a `mysql.user` entry, counting uses the `CURRENT_USER()` value corresponding to that entry. For example, if a user `user1` connecting from a host `host1.example.com` matches a `user1@host1.example.com` entry, counting uses `user1@host1.example.com`. If the user matches a `user1@%.example.com`, `user1@%.com`, or `user1%@` entry instead, counting uses `user1@%.example.com`, `user1@%.com`, or `user1%@`, respectively.

For the cases just described, the connection attempt matches some `mysql.user` entry, and whether the request succeeds or fails depends on whether the client provides the correct authentication credentials. For example, if the client presents an incorrect password, the connection attempt fails.

If the connection attempt matches no `mysql.user` entry, the attempt fails. In this case, no `CURRENT_USER()` value is available and connection-failure counting uses the user name provided by the client and the client host as determined by the server. For example, if a client attempts to connect as user `user2` from host `host2.example.com`, the user name part is available in the client request and the server determines the host information. The user/host combination used for counting is `user2@host2.example.com`.

#### Note

The server maintains information about which client hosts can possibly connect to the server (essentially the union of host values for `mysql.user` entries). If a client attempts to connect from any other host, the server rejects the attempt at an early stage of connection setup:
Because this type of rejection occurs so early, \texttt{CONNECTION\_CONTROL} does not see it, and does not count it.

\textbf{Connection Failure Monitoring}

To monitor failed connections, use these information sources:

- The \texttt{Connection\_control\_delay\_generated} status variable indicates the number of times the server added a delay to its response to a failed connection attempt. This does not count attempts that occur before reaching the threshold defined by the \texttt{connection\_control\_failed\_connections\_threshold} system variable.

- The \texttt{INFORMATION\_SCHEMA CONNECTION\_CONTROL\_FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS} table provides information about the current number of consecutive failed connection attempts per client user/host combination. This counts all failed attempts, regardless of whether they were delayed.

Assigning a value to \texttt{connection\_control\_failed\_connections\_threshold} at runtime resets all accumulated failed-connection counters to zero, which has these visible effects:

- The \texttt{Connection\_control\_delay\_generated} status variable is reset to zero.

- The \texttt{CONNECTION\_CONTROL\_FAILED\_LOGIN\_ATTEMPTS} table becomes empty.

\textbf{6.2.2 Connection-Control System and Status Variables}

This section describes the system and status variables that the \texttt{CONNECTION\_CONTROL} plugin provides to enable its operation to be configured and monitored.

- Connection-Control System Variables

- Connection-Control Status Variables

\textbf{Connection-Control System Variables}

If the \texttt{CONNECTION\_CONTROL} plugin is installed, it exposes these system variables:

- \texttt{connection\_control\_failed\_connections\_threshold}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>\texttt{--connection-control_failed_connections_threshold=#}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>\texttt{connection_control_failed_connections_threshold}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The number of consecutive failed connection attempts permitted to clients before the server adds a delay for subsequent connection attempts:

- If the variable has a nonzero value \( N \), the server adds a delay beginning with consecutive failed attempt \( N+1 \). If a client has reached the point where connection responses are delayed, the delay also occurs for the next subsequent successful connection.
Connection-Control System and Status Variables

• Setting this variable to zero disables failed-connection counting. In this case, the server never adds delays.

For information about how connection_control_failed_connections_threshold interacts with other connection-control system and status variables, see Section 6.2.1, “Connection-Control Plugin Installation”.

• connection_control_max_connection_delay

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--connection-control-max-connection-delay=#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>connection_control_max_connection_delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum delay in milliseconds for server response to failed connection attempts, if connection_control_failed_connections_threshold is greater than zero.

For information about how connection_control_max_connection_delay interacts with other connection-control system and status variables, see Section 6.2.1, “Connection-Control Plugin Installation”.

• connection_control_min_connection_delay

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--connection-control-min-connection-delay=#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>connection_control_min_connection_delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value</td>
<td>2147483647</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum delay in milliseconds for server response to failed connection attempts, if connection_control_failed_connections_threshold is greater than zero. This is also the amount by which the server increases the delay for additional successive failures once it begins delaying.

For information about how connection_control_min_connection_delay interacts with other connection-control system and status variables, see Section 6.2.1, “Connection-Control Plugin Installation”.

Connection-Control Status Variables

If the CONNECTION_CONTROL plugin is installed, it exposes this status variable:
The Password Validation Plugin

• **Connection_control_delay_generated**

  The number of times the server added a delay to its response to a failed connection attempt. This does not count attempts that occur before reaching the threshold defined by the `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` system variable.

  This variable provides a simple counter. For more detailed connection-control monitoring information, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS` table; see the [INFORMATION_SCHEMA CONNECTION_CONTROL_FAILED_LOGIN_ATTEMPTS Table](#).

  Assigning a value to `connection_control_failed_connections_threshold` at runtime resets `Connection_control_delay_generated` to zero.

  This variable was added in MySQL 5.7.17.

### 6.3 The Password Validation Plugin

The `validate_password` plugin serves to improve security by requiring account passwords and enabling strength testing of potential passwords. This plugin exposes a set of system variables that enable you to configure password policy.

The `validate_password` plugin implements these capabilities:

• For SQL statements that assign a password supplied as a cleartext value, `validate_password` checks the password against the current password policy and rejects the password if it is weak (the statement returns an `ER_NOT_VALID_PASSWORD` error). This applies to the `ALTER_USER`, `CREATE_USER`, `GRANT`, and `SET_PASSWORD` statements, and passwords given as arguments to the `PASSWORD()` and `OLD_PASSWORD()` functions.

• For `CREATE_USER` statements, `validate_password` requires that a password be given, and that it satisfies the password policy. This is true even if an account is locked initially because otherwise unlocking the account later would cause it to become accessible without a password that satisfies the policy.

• `validate_password` implements a `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()` SQL function that assesses the strength of potential passwords. This function takes a password argument and returns an integer from 0 (weak) to 100 (strong).

  **Note**

  For statements that assign, modify, or generate account passwords (`ALTER_USER`, `CREATE_USER`, `GRANT`, and `SET_PASSWORD` statements that use `PASSWORD()` and `OLD_PASSWORD()`), the `validate_password` capabilities described here apply only to accounts that use an authentication plugin that stores credentials internally to MySQL. For accounts that use plugins that perform authentication against a credentials system external to MySQL, password management must be handled externally against that system as well. For more information about internal credentials storage, see Section 4.11, "Password Management".

  The preceding restriction does not apply to use of the `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()` function because it does not affect accounts directly.

**Examples:**

• `validate_password` checks the cleartext password in the following statement. Under the default password policy, which requires passwords to be at least 8 characters long, the password is weak and the statement produces an error:
The Password Validation Plugin

- Passwords specified as hashed values are not checked because the original password value is not available for checking:

```sql
mysql> ALTER USER 'jeffrey'@'localhost'
    > IDENTIFIED WITH mysql_native_password
    > AS '*0D3CED9BEC10A777AEC23CCC353A8C08A633045E';
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.01 sec)
```

- This account-creation statement fails, even though the account is locked initially, because it does not include a password that satisfies the current password policy:

```sql
mysql> CREATE USER 'juanita'@'localhost' ACCOUNT LOCK;
ERROR 1819 (HY000): Your password does not satisfy the current policy requirements
```

- To check a password, use the `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()` function:

```sql
mysql> SELECT VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH('weak');
+------------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH('weak')</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH('lessweak$_@123');
+----------------------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH('lessweak$_@123')</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+----------------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH('NOTweak$_@123!');
+----------------------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH('NOTweak$_@123!')</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+----------------------------------------------+
```

To configure password checking, modify the system variables having names of the form `validate_password_`xxx`; these are the parameters that control password policy. See Section 6.3.2, "Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables".

If `validate_password` is not installed, the `validate_password_`xxx` system variables are not available, passwords in statements are not checked, and the `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()` function always returns 0. For example, without the plugin installed, accounts can be assigned passwords shorter than 8 characters, or no password at all.

Assuming that `validate_password` is installed, it implements three levels of password checking: LOW, MEDIUM, and STRONG. The default is MEDIUM; to change this, modify the value of `validate_password_policy`. The policies implement increasingly strict password tests. The following descriptions refer to default parameter values, which can be modified by changing the appropriate system variables.

- **LOW** policy tests password length only. Passwords must be at least 8 characters long. To change this length, modify `validate_password_length`.

- **MEDIUM** policy adds the conditions that passwords must contain at least 1 numeric character, 1 lowercase character, 1 uppercase character, and 1 special (nonalphanumeric) character. To change these values, modify `validate_password_number_count`, `validate_password_mixed_case_count`, and `validate_password_special_char_count`. 
**Password Validation Plugin Installation**

- **STRONG** policy adds the condition that password substrings of length 4 or longer must not match words in the dictionary file, if one has been specified. To specify the dictionary file, modify `validate_password_dictionary_file`.

  In addition, as of MySQL 5.7.15, `validate_password` supports the capability of rejecting passwords that match the user name part of the effective user account for the current session, either forward or in reverse. To provide control over this capability, `validate_password` exposes a `validate_password_check_user_name` system variable, which is enabled by default.

### 6.3.1 Password Validation Plugin Installation

This section describes how to install the `validate_password` password-validation plugin. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

**Note**

If you installed MySQL 5.7 using the MySQL Yum repository, MySQL SLES Repository, or RPM packages provided by Oracle, `validate_password` is enabled by default after you start your MySQL Server for the first time.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is `validate_password`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To load the plugin at server startup, use the `--plugin-load-add` option to name the library file that contains it. With this plugin-loading method, the option must be given each time the server starts. For example, put these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=validate_password.so
```

After modifying `my.cnf`, restart the server to cause the new settings to take effect.

Alternatively, to load the plugin at runtime, use this statement (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN validate_password SONAME 'validate_password.so';
```

`INSTALL PLUGIN` loads the plugin, and also registers it in the `mysql.plugins` system table to cause the plugin to be loaded for each subsequent normal server startup without the need for `--plugin-load-add`.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS 
FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS 
WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'validate%';
+-------------------+---------------+
| PLUGIN_NAME       | PLUGIN_STATUS |
|-------------------+---------------+
| validate_password | ACTIVE        |
+-------------------+---------------+
```

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

If the plugin has been previously registered with `INSTALL PLUGIN` or is loaded with `--plugin-load-add`, you can use the `--validate-password` option at server startup to control plugin
activation. For example, to load the plugin at startup and prevent it from being removed at runtime, use these options:

```sql
[mysqld]
plugin-load-add=validate_password.so
validate-password=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
```

If it is desired to prevent the server from running without the password-validation plugin, use `--validate-password` with a value of `FORCE` or `FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` to force server startup to fail if the plugin does not initialize successfully.

### 6.3.2 Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables

This section describes the options, system variables, and status variables that `validate_password` provides to enable its operation to be configured and monitored.

- **Password Validation Plugin Options**
- **Password Validation Plugin System Variables**
- **Password Validation Plugin Status Variables**

#### Password Validation Plugin Options

To control activation of the `validate_password` plugin, use this option:

- `--validate-password[=value]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--validate-password[=value]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ON, OFF, FORCE, FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This option controls how the server loads the `validate_password` plugin at startup. The value should be one of those available for plugin-loading options, as described in [Installing and Uninstalling Plugins](#). For example, `--validate-password=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` tells the server to load the plugin at startup and prevents it from being removed while the server is running.

This option is available only if the `validate_password` plugin has been previously registered with `INSTALL PLUGIN` or is loaded with `--plugin-load-add`. See Section 6.3.1, "Password Validation Plugin Installation".

#### Password Validation Plugin System Variables

If the `validate_password` plugin is enabled, it exposes several system variables that enable configuration of password checking:

```sql
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'validate_password%';
+-----------------+------------------+
| Variable_name   | Value            |
+-----------------+------------------+
| validate_password_check_user_name | OFF              |
```
To change how passwords are checked, you can set these system variables at server startup or at runtime. The following list describes the meaning of each variable.

- **validate_password_check_user_name**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>`--validate-password-check-user-name=[{OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_check_user_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether `validate_password` compares passwords to the user name part of the effective user account for the current session and rejects them if they match. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

By default, `validate_password_check_user_name` is disabled. This variable controls user name matching independent of the value of `validate_password_policy`.

When `validate_password_check_user_name` is enabled, it has these effects:

- Checking occurs in all contexts for which `validate_password` is invoked, which includes use of statements such as `ALTER USER` or `SET PASSWORD` to change the current user's password, and invocation of functions such as `PASSWORD()` and `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()`.

- The user names used for comparison are taken from the values of the `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` functions for the current session. An implication is that a user who has sufficient privileges to set another user’s password can set the password to that user’s name, and cannot set that user’s password to the name of the user executing the statement. For example, `root'@'localhost` can set the password for `jeffrey'@'localhost` to `jeffrey`, but cannot set the password to `root`.

- Only the user name part of the `USER()` and `CURRENT_USER()` function values is used, not the host name part. If a user name is empty, no comparison occurs.

- If a password is the same as the user name or its reverse, a match occurs and the password is rejected.

- User-name matching is case sensitive. The password and user name values are compared as binary strings on a byte-by-byte basis.

- If a password matches the user name, `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()` returns 0 regardless of how other `validate_password` system variables are set.

- **validate_password_dictionary_file**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--validate-password-dictionary-file=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>validate_password_dictionary_file</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic (&gt;= 5.7.8)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic (&lt;= 5.7.7)</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the dictionary file that `validate_password` uses for checking passwords. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

By default, this variable has an empty value and dictionary checks are not performed. For dictionary checks to occur, the variable value must be nonempty. If the file is named as a relative path, it is interpreted relative to the server data directory. File contents should be lowercase, one word per line. Contents are treated as having a character set of `utf8`. The maximum permitted file size is 1MB.

For the dictionary file to be used during password checking, the password policy must be set to 2 (`STRONG`); see the description of the `validate_password_policy` system variable. Assuming that is true, each substring of the password of length 4 up to 100 is compared to the words in the dictionary file. Any match causes the password to be rejected. Comparisons are not case sensitive.

For `VALIDATE_PASSWORD_STRENGTH()`, the password is checked against all policies, including `STRONG`, so the strength assessment includes the dictionary check regardless of the `validate_password_policy` value.

`validate_password_dictionary_file` can be set at runtime and assigning a value causes the named file to be read without a server restart.

- `validate_password_length`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--validate-password-length=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>validate_password_length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of characters that `validate_password` requires passwords to have. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

The `validate_password_length` minimum value is a function of several other related system variables. The value cannot be set less than the value of this expression:

```
validate_password_number_count + validate_password_special_char_count + (2 * validate_password_mixed_case_count)
```

If `validate_password` adjusts the value of `validate_password_length` due to the preceding constraint, it writes a message to the error log.

- `validate_password_mixed_case_count`
### Password Validation Plugin Options and Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--validate-password-mixed-case-count=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_mixed_case_count</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of lowercase and uppercase characters that `validate_password` requires passwords to have if the password policy is `MEDIUM` or stronger. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

For a given `validate_password_mixed_case_count` value, the password must have that many lowercase characters, and that many uppercase characters.

- `validate_password_number_count`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--validate-password-number-count=#</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_number_count</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of numeric (digit) characters that `validate_password` requires passwords to have if the password policy is `MEDIUM` or stronger. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.

- `validate_password_policy`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--validate-password-policy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>validate_password_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>0 1 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The password policy enforced by `validate_password`. This variable is unavailable unless `validate_password` is installed.
validate_password_policy affects how validate_password uses its other policy-setting system variables, except for checking passwords against user names, which is controlled independently by validate_password_check_user_name.

The validate_password_policy value can be specified using numeric values 0, 1, 2, or the corresponding symbolic values LOW, MEDIUM, STRONG. The following table describes the tests performed for each policy. For the length test, the required length is the value of the validate_password_length system variable. Similarly, the required values for the other tests are given by other validate_password_xxx variables.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Policy</th>
<th>Tests Performed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or LOW</td>
<td>Length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or MEDIUM</td>
<td>Length; numeric, lowercase/uppercase, and special characters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or STRONG</td>
<td>Length; numeric, lowercase/uppercase, and special characters; dictionary file</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- validate_password_special_char_count

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--validate-password-special-char-count=#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>validate_password_special_char_count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The minimum number of nonalphanumeric characters that validate_password requires passwords to have if the password policy is MEDIUM or stronger. This variable is unavailable unless validate_password is installed.

Password Validation Plugin Status Variables

If the validate_password plugin is enabled, it exposes status variables that provide operational information:

```
mysql> SHOW STATUS LIKE 'validate_password%';
+-----------------------------------------------+---------------------+
| Variable_name                                 | Value               |
+-----------------------------------------------+---------------------+
| validate_password_dictionary_file_last_parsed | 2015-06-29 11:08:51 |
| validate_password_dictionary_file_words_count | 1902                |
+-----------------------------------------------+---------------------+
```

The following list describes the meaning of each status variable.

- validate_password_dictionary_file_last_parsed

When the dictionary file was last parsed.

- validate_password_dictionary_file_words_count

The number of words read from the dictionary file.

6.4 The MySQL Keyring
MySQL Server supports a keyring that enables internal server components and plugins to securely store sensitive information for later retrieval. The implementation is plugin-based:

- MySQL 5.7.11 and higher includes a keyring plugin, `keyring_file`, that stores keyring data in a file local to the server host. This plugin is available in all MySQL distributions, Community Edition and Enterprise Edition included. See Section 6.4.2, “Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.21 and higher includes a keyring plugin, `keyring_encrypted_file`, that stores keyring data in an encrypted file local to the server host. This plugin is available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions. See Section 6.4.3, “Using the keyring_encrypted_file Keyring Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.12 and higher includes `keyring_okv`, a KMIP 1.1 plugin for use with KMIP-compatible back end keyring storage products such as Oracle Key Vault and Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance. This plugin is available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions. See Section 6.4.4, “Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.19 and higher includes `keyring_aws`, a plugin that communicates with the Amazon Web Services Key Management Service for key generation and uses a local file for key storage. This plugin is available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions. See Section 6.4.5, “Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin”.

- MySQL 5.7.21 and higher supports a server operational mode that enables migration of keys between underlying keyring keystores. This enables DBAs to switch a MySQL installation from one keyring plugin to another. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

- MySQL 5.7.13 and higher includes an SQL interface for keyring key management, implemented as a set of user-defined functions (UDFs). See Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

**Warning**

The `keyring_file` and `keyring_encrypted_file` plugins for encryption key management are not intended as a regulatory compliance solution. Security standards such as PCI, FIPS, and others require use of key management systems to secure, manage, and protect encryption keys in key vaults or hardware security modules (HSMs).

Uses for the keyring within MySQL include:

- The InnoDB storage engine uses the keyring to store its key for tablespace encryption. InnoDB can use any supported keyring plugin.

- MySQL Enterprise Audit uses the keyring to store the audit log file encryption password. The audit log plugin can use any supported keyring plugin.

For general keyring installation instructions, see Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”. For information specific to a given keyring plugin, see the section describing that plugin.

For information about using the keyring UDFs, see Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

Keyring plugins and UDFs access a keyring service that provides the interface for server components to the keyring. For information about accessing the keyring plugin service and writing keyring plugins, see The Keyring Service, and Writing Keyring Plugins.

### 6.4.1 Keyring Plugin Installation

Keyring service consumers require a keyring plugin to be installed. MySQL provides these plugin choices:

- `keyring_file`: A plugin that stores keyring data in a file local to the server host. Available in all MySQL distributions as of MySQL 5.7.11.
Keyring Plugin Installation

- **keyring_encrypted_file**: A plugin that stores keyring data in an encrypted file local to the server host. Available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions as of MySQL 5.7.21.

- **keyring_okv**: A plugin that uses KMIP-compatible back end keyring storage products such as Oracle Key Vault and Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance. Available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions as of MySQL 5.7.12.

- **keyring_aws**: A plugin that communicates with the Amazon Web Services Key Management Service as a back end for key generation and uses a local file for key storage. Available in MySQL Enterprise Edition distributions as of MySQL 5.7.19.

This section describes how to install the keyring plugin of your choosing. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

If you intend to use keyring user-defined functions (UDFs) in conjunction with the keyring plugin, install the UDFs following keyring installation using the instructions in Section 6.4.8, "General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions".

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

Installation for each keyring plugin is similar. The following instructions use `keyring_file`. Users of a different keyring plugin can substitute its name for `keyring_file`.

The `keyring_file` plugin library file base name is `keyring_file`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

**Note**

Only one keyring plugin should be enabled at a time. Enabling multiple keyring plugins is unsupported and results may not be as anticipated.

The keyring plugin must be loaded early during the server startup sequence so that server components can access it as necessary during their own initialization. For example, the InnoDB storage engine uses the keyring for tablespace encryption, so the keyring plugin must be loaded and available prior to InnoDB initialization.

To load the plugin, use the `--early-plugin-load` option to name the plugin library file that contains it. For example, on platforms where the plugin library file suffix is `.so`, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_file.so
```

As of MySQL 5.7.12, the default `--early-plugin-load` value is empty. To load a keyring plugin, you must use an explicit `--early-plugin-load` option with a nonempty value.

**Important**

In MySQL 5.7.11, the default `--early-plugin-load` value was the name of the `keyring_file` plugin library file, so that plugin was loaded by default. InnoDB tablespace encryption requires the `keyring_file` plugin to be loaded prior to InnoDB initialization, so this change of default `--early-plugin-load` value introduces an incompatibility for upgrades from 5.7.11 to 5.7.12 or higher. Administrators who have encrypted InnoDB tablespace must take explicit action to ensure continued loading of the `keyring_file` plugin: Start the server with an `--early-plugin-load` option that names the plugin library file.
Before starting the server, check the notes for your chosen keyring plugin to see whether it permits or requires additional configuration:

- For `keyring_file`: Section 6.4.2, “Using the keyring_file File-Based Plugin”.
- For `keyring_okv`: Section 6.4.4, “Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin”.
- For `keyring_aws`: Section 6.4.5, “Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin”.

After performing any plugin-specific configuration, verify plugin installation. With the MySQL server running, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
    FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS
    WHERE PLUGIN_NAME LIKE 'keyring%';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLUGIN_NAME</th>
<th>PLUGIN_STATUS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keyring_file</td>
<td>ACTIVE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

If no keyring plugin is available when a server component tries to access the keyring service, the service cannot be used by that component. As a result, the component may fail to initialize or may initialize with limited functionality. For example, if InnoDB finds that there are encrypted tablespaces when it initializes, it attempts to access the keyring. If the keyring is unavailable, InnoDB can access only unencrypted tablespaces. To ensure that InnoDB can access encrypted tablespaces as well, use `--early-plugin-load` to load the keyring plugin.

Plugins can be loaded by other methods, such as the `--plugin-load` or `--plugin-load-add` option or the `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement. However, keyring plugins loaded using those methods may be available too late in the server startup sequence for certain server components, such as InnoDB:

- Plugin loading using `--plugin-load` or `--plugin-load-add` occurs after InnoDB initialization.
- Plugins installed using `INSTALL PLUGIN` are registered in the `mysql.plugin` system table and loaded automatically for subsequent server restarts. However, because `mysql.plugin` is an InnoDB table, any plugins named in it can be loaded during startup only after InnoDB initialization.

### 6.4.2 Using the `keyring_file` File-Based Plugin

The `keyring_file` plugin is a keyring plugin that stores keyring data in a file local to the server host.

**Warning**

The `keyring_file` plugin for encryption key management is not intended as a regulatory compliance solution. Security standards such as PCI, FIPS, and others require use of key management systems to secure, manage, and protect encryption keys in key vaults or hardware security modules (HSMs).

To install the `keyring_file` plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the configuration information specific to `keyring_file` found here.

To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_file` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. The `keyring_file_data` system variable optionally configures the location of the file used by the `keyring_file` plugin for data storage. The default value is platform specific. To configure the file location explicitly, set the variable value at startup. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and file location for your platform as necessary):
Using the `keyring_encrypted_file` Keyring Plugin

```sql
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_file.so
keyring_file_data=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring
```

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

For additional information about `keyring_file_data`, see Section 6.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

As of MySQL 5.7.17, to ensure that keys are flushed only when the correct keyring storage file exists, `keyring_file` stores a SHA-256 checksum of the keyring in the file. Before updating the file, the plugin verifies that it contains the expected checksum.

The `keyring_file` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by those functions are accessible at two levels:

- SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.
- C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in The Keyring Service.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

The key types permitted by `keyring_file` are described in Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

### 6.4.3 Using the `keyring_encrypted_file` Keyring Plugin

**Note**

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin is a keyring plugin that stores keyring data in an encrypted file local to the server host. This plugin is available as of MySQL 5.7.21.

**Warning**

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin for encryption key management is not intended as a regulatory compliance solution. Security standards such as PCI, FIPS, and others require use of key management systems to secure, manage, and protect encryption keys in key vaults or hardware security modules (HSMs).

To install the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the configuration information specific to `keyring_encrypted_file` found here.

To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_encrypted_file` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. To specify the password for encrypting the keyring data file, set the `keyring_encrypted_file_password` system variable. (The password is mandatory; if not specified at server startup, `keyring_encrypted_file` initialization fails.) The `keyring_encrypted_file_data` system variable optionally configures the location of the file used by the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin for data storage. The default value is platform specific. To configure the file location explicitly, set the variable value at startup. For example, use these lines in the
server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and file location for your platform as necessary and substitute your chosen password):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_encrypted_file.so
keyring_encrypted_file_data=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring-encrypted
keyring_encrypted_file_password=password
```

Because the `my.cnf` file stores a password when written as shown, it should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server.

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_encrypted_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

For additional information about the system variables used to configure the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin, see Section 6.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

To ensure that keys are flushed only when the correct keyring storage file exists, `keyring_encrypted_file` stores a SHA-256 checksum of the keyring in the file. Before updating the file, the plugin verifies that it contains the expected checksum. In addition, `keyring_encrypted_file` encrypts file contents using AES before writing the file, and decrypts file contents after reading the file.

The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by those functions are accessible at two levels:

- SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.
- C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in The Keyring Service.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

The key types permitted by `keyring_encrypted_file` are described in Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

### 6.4.4 Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

**Note**

The `keyring_okv` plugin is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

The Key Management Interoperability Protocol (KMIP) enables communication of cryptographic keys between a key management server and its clients. The `keyring_okv` keyring plugin uses the KMIP 1.1 protocol to communicate securely as a client of a KMIP back end. Keyring material is generated exclusively by the back end, not by `keyring_okv`. The plugin works with these KMIP-compatible products:

- Oracle Key Vault
- Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance

The `keyring_okv` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by those functions are accessible at two levels:
Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

- SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

- C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in The Keyring Service.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

The key types permitted by keyring_okv are described in Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

To install the keyring_okv plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the configuration information specific to keyring_okv found here.

- General keyring_okv Configuration

General keyring_okv Configuration

Regardless of which KMIP back end the keyring_okv plugin uses for keyring storage, the keyring_okv_conf_dir system variable configures the location of the directory used by keyring_okv for its support files. The default value is empty, so you must set the variable to name a properly configured directory before the plugin can communicate with the KMIP back end. Unless you do so, keyring_okv writes a message to the error log during server startup that it cannot communicate:

```
[Warning] Plugin keyring_okv reported: 'For keyring_okv to be initialized, please point the keyring_okv_conf_dir variable to a directory containing Oracle Key Vault configuration file and ssl materials'
```

The keyring_okv_conf_dir variable must name a directory that contains the following items:

- **okvclient.ora**: A file that contains details of the KMIP back end with which keyring_okv will communicate.

- **ssl**: A directory that contains the certificate and key files required to establish a secure connection with the KMIP back end: CA.pem, cert.pem, and key.pem. As of MySQL 5.7.20, if the key file is password-protected, the ssl directory can contain a single-line text file named password.txt containing the password needed to decrypt the key file.

Both the okvclient.ora file and ssl directory with the certificate and key files are required for keyring_okv to work properly. The procedure used to populate the configuration directory with these files depends on the KMIP back end used with keyring_okv, as described elsewhere.

The configuration directory used by keyring_okv as the location for its support files should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the /usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring-okv directory, the following commands (executed as root) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring-okv
chmod 750 mysql-keyring-okv
chown mysql mysql-keyring-okv
```
Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

chgrp mysql mysql-keyring-okv

To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_okv` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. Also, set the `keyring_okv_conf_dir` system variable to tell `keyring_okv` where to find its configuration directory. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and directory location for your platform as necessary):

```plaintext
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_okv.so
keyring_okv_conf_dir=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring-okv
```

For additional information about `keyring_okv_conf_dir`, see Section 6.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

Configuring keyring_okv for Oracle Key Vault

The discussion here assumes that you are familiar with Oracle Key Vault. Some pertinent information sources:

- Oracle Key Vault site
- Oracle Key Vault documentation

In Oracle Key Vault terminology, clients that use Oracle Key Vault to store and retrieve security objects are called endpoints. To communicate with Oracle Key Vault, it is necessary to register as an endpoint and enroll by downloading and installing endpoint support files.

The following procedure briefly summarizes the process of setting up `keyring_okv` for use with Oracle Key Vault:

1. Create the configuration directory for the `keyring_okv` plugin to use.
2. Register an endpoint with Oracle Key Vault to obtain an enrollment token.
3. Use the enrollment token to obtain the `okvclient.jar` client software download.
4. Install the client software to populate the `keyring_okv` configuration directory that contains the Oracle Key Vault support files.

Use the following procedure to configure `keyring_okv` and Oracle Key Vault to work together. This description only summarizes how to interact with Oracle Key Vault. For details, visit the Oracle Key Vault site and consult the Oracle Key Vault Administrator’s Guide.

1. Create the configuration directory that will contain the Oracle Key Vault support files, and make sure that the `keyring_okv_conf_dir` system variable is set to name that directory (for details, see General keyring_okv Configuration).
2. Log in to the Oracle Key Vault management console as a user who has the System Administrator role.
4. Provide the required endpoint information and click Register. The endpoint type should be Other. Successful registration results in an enrollment token.
5. Log out from the Oracle Key Vault server.
6. Connect again to the Oracle Key Vault server, this time without logging in. Use the endpoint enrollment token to enroll and request the `okvclient.jar` software download. Save this file to your system.
7. Install the `okvclient.jar` file using the following command (you must have JDK 1.4 or higher):
Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin

```
java -jar okvclient.jar -d dir_name [-v]
```

The directory name following the `-d` option is the location in which to install extracted files. The `-v` option, if given, causes log information to be produced that may be useful if the command fails.

When the command asks for an Oracle Key Vault endpoint password, do not provide one. Instead, press Enter. (The result is that no password will be required when the endpoint connects to Oracle Key Vault.)

8. The preceding command produces an `okvclient.ora` file, which should be in this location under the directory named by the `-d` option in the preceding `java -jar` command:

```
install_dir/conf/okvclient.ora
```

The file contents include lines that look something like this:

```
SERVER=host_ip:port_num
STANDBY_SERVER=host_ip:port_num
```

The `keyring_okv` plugin attempts to communicate with the server running on the host named by the `SERVER` variable and falls back to `STANDBY_SERVER` if that fails:

- For the `SERVER` variable, a setting in the `okvclient.ora` file is mandatory.
- For the `STANDBY_SERVER` variable, a setting in the `okvclient.ora` file is optional, as of MySQL 5.7.19. Prior to MySQL 5.7.19, a setting for `STANDBY_SERVER` is mandatory; if `okvclient.ora` is generated with no setting for `STANDBY_SERVER`, `keyring_okv` fails to initialize. The workaround is to check `oraclient.ora` and add a “dummy” setting for `STANDBY_SERVER`, if one is missing. For example:

```
STANDBY_SERVER=127.0.0.1:5696
```

9. Go to the Oracle Key Vault installer directory and test the setup by running this command:

```
okvutil/bin/okvutil list
```

The output should look something like this:

```
Unique ID                               Type            Identifier
255AB8DE-C97F-482C-E053-0100007F28B9 Symmetric Key -
264BF6E0-A20E-7C42-E053-0100007FB29C Symmetric Key -
```

For a fresh Oracle Key Vault server (a server without any key in it), the output looks like this instead, to indicate that there are no keys in the vault:

```
no objects found
```

10. Use this command to extract the `ssl` directory containing SSL materials from the `okvclient.jar` file:

```
jar xf okvclient.jar ssl
```

11. Copy the Oracle Key Vault support files (the `okvclient.ora` file and the `ssl` directory) into the configuration directory.

12. (Optional) If you wish to password-protect the key file, use the instructions in Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File.
After completing the preceding procedure, restart the MySQL server. It loads the `keyring_okv` plugin and `keyring_okv` uses the files in its configuration directory to communicate with Oracle Key Vault.

**Configuring keyring_okv for Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance**

Gemalto SafeNet KeySecure Appliance uses the KMIP protocol (version 1.1 or 1.2). As of MySQL 5.7.18, the `keyring_okv` keyring plugin (which supports KMIP 1.1) can use KeySecure as its KMIP back end for keyring storage.

Use the following procedure to configure `keyring_okv` and KeySecure to work together. The description only summarizes how to interact with KeySecure. For details, consult the section named Add a KMIP Server in the KeySecure User Guide.

1. Create the configuration directory that will contain the KeySecure support files, and make sure that the `keyring_okv_conf_dir` system variable is set to name that directory (for details, see General keyring_okv Configuration).

2. In the configuration directory, create a subdirectory named `ssl` to use for storing the required SSL certificate and key files.

3. In the configuration directory, create a file named `okvclient.ora`. It should have following format:

   ```
   SERVER=host_ip:port_num
   STANDBY_SERVER=host_ip:port_num
   ```

   For example, if KeySecure is running on host 198.51.100.20 and listening on port 9002, the `okvclient.ora` file looks like this:

   ```
   SERVER=198.51.100.20:9002
   STANDBY_SERVER=198.51.100.20:9002
   ```

4. Connect to the KeySecure Management Console as an administrator with credentials for Certificate Authorities access.

5. Navigate to Security >> Local CAs and create a local certificate authority (CA).

6. Go to Trusted CA Lists. Select Default and click on Properties. Then select Edit for Trusted Certificate Authority List and add the CA just created.

7. Download the CA and save it in the `ssl` directory as a file named `CA.pem`.

8. Navigate to Security >> Certificate Requests and create a certificate. Then you will be able to download a compressed `tar` file containing certificate PEM files.

9. Extract the PEM files from in the downloaded file. For example, if the file name is `csr_w_pk_pkcs8.gz`, decompress and unpack it using this command:

   ```
   tar zxvf csr_w_pk_pkcs8.gz
   ```

   Two files result from the extraction operation: `certificate_request.pem` and `private_key_pkcs8.pem`.

10. Use this `openssl` command to decrypt the private key and create a file named `key.pem`:

    ```
    openssl pkcs8 -in private_key_pkcs8.pem -out key.pem
    ```

11. Copy the `key.pem` file into the `ssl` directory.

12. Copy the certificate request in `certificate_request.pem` into the clipboard.
13. Navigate to Security >> Local CAs. Select the same CA that you created earlier (the one you downloaded to create the **CA.pem** file), and click Sign Request. Paste the Certificate Request from the clipboard, choose a certificate purpose of Client (the keyring is a client of KeySecure), and click Sign Request. The result is a certificate signed with the selected CA in a new page.

14. Copy the signed certificate to the clipboard, then save the clipboard contents as a file named **cert.pem** in the **ssl** directory.

15. (Optional) If you wish to password-protect the key file, use the instructions in **Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File**.

After completing the preceding procedure, restart the MySQL server. It loads the **keyring_okv** plugin and **keyring_okv** uses the files in its configuration directory to communicate with KeySecure.

**Password-Protecting the keyring_okv Key File**

As of MySQL 5.7.20, you can optionally protect the key file with a password and supply a file containing the password to enable the key file to be decrypted. To so do, change location to the **ssl** directory and perform these steps:

1. Encrypt the **key.pem** key file. For example, use a command like this, and enter the encryption password at the prompts:

   ```shell
   openssl rsa -des3 -in key.pem -out key.pem.new
   Enter PEM pass phrase:
   Verifying - Enter PEM pass phrase:
   ```

2. Save the encryption password in a single-line text file named **password.txt** in the **ssl** directory.

3. Verify that the encrypted key file can be decrypted using the following command. The decrypted file should display on the console:

   ```shell
   openssl rsa -in key.pem.new -passin file:password.txt
   ```

4. Remove the original **key.pem** file and rename **key.pem.new** to **key.pem**.

5. Change the ownership and access mode of new **key.pem** file and **password.txt** file as necessary to ensure that they have the same restrictions as other files in the **ssl** directory.

6.4.5 Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin

**Note**

The **keyring_aws** plugin is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

The **keyring_aws** plugin is a keyring plugin that communicates with the Amazon Web Services Key Management Service (AWS KMS) as a back end for key generation and uses a local file for key storage. All keyring material is generated exclusively by the AWS server, not by **keyring_aws**.

**keyring_aws** is available on these platforms:

- Debian 8
- EL7
- macOS 10.13 and 10.14
- SLES 12
Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin

- Ubuntu 14.04 and 16.04
- Windows

The discussion here assumes that you are familiar with AWS in general and KMS in particular. Some pertinent information sources:

- AWS site
- KMS documentation

The following sections provide configuration and usage information for the keyring_aws keyring plugin:

- keyring_aws Configuration
- keyring_aws Operation
- keyring_aws Credential Changes

keyring_aws Configuration

To install the keyring_aws plugin, use the general keyring installation instructions found in Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”, together with the plugin-specific configuration information found here.

The plugin library file contains the keyring_aws plugin and two user-defined functions (UDFs), keyring_aws_rotate_cmk() and keyring_aws_rotate_keys().

To configure keyring_aws, you must obtain a secret access key that provides credentials for communicating with AWS KMS and write it to a configuration file:

1. Create an AWS KMS account.
2. Use AWS KMS to create a secret access key ID and secret access key. The access key serves to verify your identity and that of your applications.
3. Use the AWS KMS account to create a customer master key (CMK) ID. At MySQL startup, set the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable to the CMK ID value. This variable is mandatory and there is no default. (Its value can be changed at runtime if desired using SET GLOBAL.)
4. If necessary, create the directory in which the configuration file will be located. The directory should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server.
   For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use /usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_conf as the file name, the following commands (executed as root) create its parent directory and set the directory mode and ownership:

```shell
shell> cd /usr/local/mysql
shell> mkdir mysql-keyring
shell> chmod 750 mysql-keyring
shell> chown mysql mysql-keyring
shell> chgrp mysql mysql-keyring
```
   At MySQL startup, set the keyring_aws_conf_file system variable to /usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_conf to indicate the configuration file location to the server.
5. Prepare the keyring_aws configuration file, which should contain two lines:
   - Line 1: The secret access key ID
   - Line 2: The secret access key
For example, if the key ID is `wwwwwwwwwwwwEXAMPLE` and the key is `xxxxxxxxxxxxx/yyyyyyy/zzzzzzzzEXAMPLEKEY`, the configuration file looks like this:

```
wwwwwwwwwwwwEXAMPLE
xxxxxxxxxxxxx/yyyyyyy/zzzzzzzzEXAMPLEKEY
```

To be usable during the server startup process, `keyring_aws` must be loaded using the `--early-plugin-load` option. The `keyring_aws_cmk_id` system variable is mandatory and configures the customer master key (CMK) ID obtained from the AWS KMS server. The `keyring_aws_conf_file` and `keyring_aws_data_file` system variables optionally configure the locations of the files used by the `keyring_aws` plugin for configuration information and data storage. The file location variable default values are platform specific. To configure the locations explicitly, set the variable values at startup. For example, use these lines in the server `my.cnf` file (adjust the `.so` suffix and file locations for your platform as necessary):

```
[mysqld]
early-plugin-load=keyring_aws.so
keyring_aws_cmk_id='arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:key/abcd1234.ef56-ab12-cd34-ef56abcd1234'
keyring_aws_conf_file=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_conf
keyring_aws_data_file=/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring/keyring_aws_data
```

For the `keyring_aws` plugin to start successfully, the configuration file must exist and contain valid secret access key information, initialized as described previously. The storage file need not exist. If it does not, `keyring_aws` attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary).

For additional information about the system variables used to configure the `keyring_aws` plugin, see Section 6.4.11, “Keyring System Variables”.

Start the MySQL server and install the UDFs associated with the `keyring_aws` plugin. This is a one-time operation, performed by executing the following statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_aws_rotate_cmk RETURNS INTEGER SONAME 'keyring_aws.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_aws_rotate_keys RETURNS INTEGER SONAME 'keyring_aws.so';
```

For additional information about the `keyring_aws` UDFs, see Section 6.4.9, “Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

**keyring_aws Operation**

At plugin startup, the `keyring_aws` plugin reads the AWS secret access key ID and key from its configuration file. It also reads any encrypted keys contained in its storage file into its in-memory cache.

During operation, `keyring_aws` maintains encrypted keys in the in-memory cache and uses the storage file as local persistent storage. Each keyring operation is transactional: `keyring_aws` either successfully changes both the in-memory key cache and the keyring storage file, or the operation fails and the keyring state remains unchanged.

To ensure that keys are flushed only when the correct keyring storage file exists, `keyring_aws` stores a SHA-256 checksum of the keyring in the file. Before updating the file, the plugin verifies that it contains the expected checksum.

The `keyring_aws` plugin supports the functions that comprise the standard keyring service interface. Keyring operations performed by these functions are accessible at two levels:

- C interface: In C-language code, call the keyring service functions described in *The Keyring Service*. 
Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores

- SQL interface: In SQL statements, call the user-defined functions (UDFs) described in Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

Example (using UDFs):

```sql
SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'AES', 32);
SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
```

In addition, the `keyring_aws_rotate_cmk()` and `keyring_aws_rotate_keys()` UDFs “extend” the keyring plugin interface to provide AWS-related capabilities not covered by the standard keyring service interface. These capabilities are accessible only by calling the UDFs. There are no corresponding C-language key service functions.

The key types permitted by `keyring_aws` are described in Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

**keyring_aws Credential Changes**

Assuming that the `keyring_aws` plugin has initialized properly at server startup, it is possible to change the credentials used for communicating with AWS KMS:

1. Use AWS KMS to create a new secret access key ID and secret access key.
2. Store the new credentials in the configuration file (the file named by the `keyring_aws_conf_file` system variable). The file format is as described previously.
3. Reinitialize the `keyring_aws` plugin so that it rereads the configuration file. Assuming that the new credentials are valid, the plugin should initialize successfully.

There are two ways to reinitialize the plugin:

- Restart the server. This is simpler and has no side effects, but is not suitable for installations that require minimal server downtime with as few restarts as possible.
- Reinitialize the plugin without restarting the server by executing the following statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```sql
UNINSTALL PLUGIN keyring_aws;
INSTALL PLUGIN keyring_aws SONAME 'keyring_aws.so';
```

**Note**

In addition to loading a plugin at runtime, `INSTALL PLUGIN` has the side effect of registering the plugin in the `mysql.plugin` system table. Because of this, if you decide to stop using `keyring_aws`, it is not sufficient to remove the `--early-plugin-load` option from the set of options used to start the server. That stops the plugin from loading early, but the server still attempts to load it when it gets to the point in the startup sequence where it loads the plugins registered in `mysql.plugin`.

Consequently, if you execute the `UNINSTALL PLUGIN` plus `INSTALL PLUGIN` sequence just described to change the AWS KMS credentials, then to stop using `keyring_aws`, it is necessary to execute `UNINSTALL PLUGIN` again to unregister the plugin in addition to removing the `--early-plugin-load` option.

### 6.4.6 Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores

As of MySQL 5.7.21, the MySQL server supports an operational mode that enables migration of keys between underlying keyring keystores. This enables DBAs to switch a MySQL installation from one keyring plugin to another. A migration server (that is, a server started in key migration mode) does not
accept client connections. Instead, it runs only long enough to migrate keys, then exits. A migration server reports errors to the console (the standard error output).

It is possible to perform offline or online key migration:

• If you are sure that no running server on the local host is using the source or destination keystore, an offline migration is possible. In this case, the migration server can modify the keystores without possibility of a running server modifying keystore content during the migration.

• If a running server on the local host is using the source or destination keystore, an online migration must be performed. In this case, the migration server connects to the running server and instructs it to pause keyring operations while key migration is in progress.

The result of a key migration operation is that the destination keystore contains the keys it had prior to the migration, plus the keys from the source keystore. The source keystore is the same before and after the migration because keys are copied, not moved. If a key to be copied already exists in the destination keystore, an error occurs and the destination keystore is restored to its premigration state.

The user who invokes the server in key-migration mode must not be the root operating system user, and must have permission to read and write the keyring files.

To perform a key migration operation, determine which key migration options are needed. Migration options indicate which keyring plugins are involved, and whether to perform an offline or online migration:

• To indicate the source and destination keyring plugins, specify these options:
  • --keyring-migration-source: The source keyring plugin that manages the keys to be migrated.
  • --keyring-migration-destination: The destination keyring plugin to which the migrated keys are to be copied.

These options tell the server to run in key migration mode. Both options are mandatory for all key migration operations. The source and destination plugins must differ, and the migration server must support both plugins.

• For an offline migration, no additional key migration options are needed.

  Warning
  Do not perform offline migration involving a keystore that is in use by a running server.

• For an online migration, some running server currently is using the source or destination keystore. Specify the key migration options that indicate how to connect to the running server. This is necessary so that the migration server can connect to the running server and tell it to pause keyring use during the migration operation.

Use of any of the following options signifies an online migration:

• --keyring-migration-host: The host where the running server is located. This is always the local host.

• --keyring-migration-user, --keyring-migration-password: The user name and password for the account to use to connect to the running server.

• --keyring-migration-port: For TCP/IP connections, the port number to connect to on the running server.

• --keyring-migration-socket: For Unix socket file or Windows named pipe connections, the socket file or named pipe to connect to on the running server.
Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores

For additional details about the key migration options, see Section 6.4.10, “Keyring Command Options”.

Start the migration server with the key migration options determined as just described, possibly with other options. Keep the following considerations in mind:

- Other server options might be required, such as other configuration parameters for the two keyring plugins. For example, if `keyring_file` is one of the plugins, you must set the `keyring_file_data` system variable if the keyring data file location is not the default location. Other non-keyring options may be required as well. One way to specify these options is by using `--defaults-file` to name an option file that contains the required options.

- If you invoke the migration server from a system account different from that normally used to run MySQL, it might create keyring directories or files that are inaccessible to the server during normal operation. Suppose that `mysqld` normally runs as the `mysql` operating system user, but you invoke the migration server while logged in as `isabel`. Any new directories or files created by the migration server will be owned by `isabel`. Subsequent startup will fail when a server run as the `mysql` operating system user attempts to access file system objects owned by `isabel`.

To avoid this issue, start the migration server as the `root` operating system user and provide a `--user=user_name` option, where `user_name` is the system account normally used to run MySQL.

- The migration server expects path name option values to be full paths. Relative path names may not be resolved as you expect.

Example command line for offline key migration:

```
mysqld --defaults-file=/usr/local/mysql/etc/my.cnf
    --keyring-migration-source=keyring_file.so
    --keyring-migration-destination=keyring_encrypted_file.so
    --keyring_encrypted_file_password=password
```

Example command line for online key migration:

```
mysqld --defaults-file=/usr/local/mysql/etc/my.cnf
    --keyring-migration-source=keyring_file.so
    --keyring-migration-destination=keyring_encrypted_file.so
    --keyring_encrypted_file_password=password
    --keyring-migration-host=localhost
    --keyring-migration-user=root
    --keyring-migration-password=root_password
```

The key migration server performs the migration operation as follows:

1. (Online migration only) Connect to the running server using the connection options. The account used to connect must have the `SUPER` privilege required to modify the global `keyring_operations` system variable.

2. (Online migration only) Disable `keyring_operations` on the running server. (The running server must support `keyring_operations`, which means it must be from MySQL 5.7.21 or higher.)

3. Load the source and destination keyring plugins.

4. Copy keys from the source keyring to the destination keyring.

5. Unload the keyring plugins.

6. (Online migration only) Enable `keyring_operations` on the running server.

7. (Online migration only) Disconnect from the running server.

8. Exit.
If an error occurs during key migration, any keys that were copied to the destination plugin are removed, leaving the destination keystore unchanged.

**Important**

For an online migration operation, the migration server takes care of enabling and disabling `keyring_operations` on the running server. However, if the migration server exits abnormally (for example, if someone forcibly terminates it), it is possible that `keyring_operations` will not have been re-enabled on the running server, leaving it unable to perform keyring operations. In this case, it may be necessary to connect to the running server and enable `keyring_operations` manually.

After a successful online key migration operation, the running server might need to be restarted:

- If the running server was using the source keystore, it need not be restarted after the migration.
- If the running server was using the source keystore before the migration but should use the destination keystore after the migration, it must be reconfigured to use the destination keyring plugin and restarted.
- If the running server was using the destination keystore and will continue to use it, it should be restarted after the migration to load all keys migrated into the destination keystore.

**Note**

MySQL server key migration mode supports pausing a single running server. To perform a key migration if multiple key servers are using the keystores involved, use this procedure:

1. Connect to each running server manually and set `keyring_operations=OFF`.
2. Use the migration server to perform an offline key migration.
3. Connect to each running server manually and set `keyring_operations=ON`.

All running servers must support the `keyring_operations=ON` system variable.

### 6.4.7 Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths

MySQL Keyring supports keys of different types (encryption algorithms) and lengths. The available key types depend on which keyring plugin is installed. Table 6.15, "Keyring Plugin Key Types and Lengths" indicates for each keyring plugin the key types it permits. A given plugin may impose constraints on key lengths per key type. In addition, see later in this section for general length limits due to the keyring user-defined function (UDF) interface or other factors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Permitted Key Type</th>
<th>Permitted Key Lengths for Key Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>keyring_encrypted_file</td>
<td>AES, DSA, RSA</td>
<td>No special restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyring_file</td>
<td>AES</td>
<td>No special restrictions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plugin Name</th>
<th>Permitted Key Type</th>
<th>Permitted Key Lengths for Key Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DSA</td>
<td>No special restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>No special restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyring_okv</td>
<td>AES</td>
<td>16, 24, 32 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keyring_aws</td>
<td>AES</td>
<td>16, 24, 32 bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to plugin-specific limits, key lengths are subject to general keyring UDF interface limits (for keys managed using one of the keyring UDFs described in Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”), or limits from factors such as the back end implementation. These length limits can vary by key operation type. The lower limits for keyring_aws are imposed by the AWS KMS interface, not the keyring UDFs.

**Table 6.16 General Keyring Key Length Limits**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key Operation</th>
<th>Maximum Key Length</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generate key</td>
<td>2,048 bytes; 1,024 for keyring_aws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Store key</td>
<td>2,048 bytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetch key</td>
<td>2,048 bytes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6.4.8 General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions

MySQL Server supports a keyring service that enables internal server components and plugins to securely store sensitive information for later retrieval.

As of MySQL 5.7.13, MySQL Server includes an SQL interface for keyring key management, implemented as a set of general-purpose user-defined functions (UDFs) that access the functions provided by the internal keyring service. The keyring UDFs are contained in a plugin library file, which also contains a keyring_udf plugin that must be enabled prior to UDF invocation. For these UDFs to be used, a keyring plugin such as keyring_file or keyring_okv must be enabled.

The UDFs described here are general purpose and intended for use with any keyring plugin. A given keyring plugin might have UDFs of its own that are intended for use only with that plugin; see Section 6.4.9, “Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

The following sections provide installation instructions for the keyring UDFs and demonstrate how to use them. For information about the keyring service functions invoked by the UDFs, see The Keyring Service. For general keyring information, see Section 6.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

- Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions
- Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions
- General-Purpose Keyring Function Reference

### Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions

This section describes how to install or uninstall the keyring user-defined functions (UDFs), which are implemented in a plugin library file that also contains a keyring_udf plugin. For general information about installing or uninstalling plugins and UDFs, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins, and Installing and Uninstalling User-Defined Functions.

The keyring UDFs enable keyring key management operations, but the keyring_udf plugin must also be installed because the UDFs will not work correctly without it. Attempts to use the UDFs without the keyring_udf plugin result in an error.
To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is keyring_udf. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, .so for Unix and Unix-like systems, .dll for Windows).

To install the keyring_udf plugin and the UDFs, use the INSTALL PLUGIN and CREATE FUNCTION statements (adjust the .so suffix for your platform as necessary):

```sql
INSTALL PLUGIN keyring_udf SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_generate RETURNS INTEGER
  SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_fetch RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_length_fetch RETURNS INTEGER
  SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_type_fetch RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_store RETURNS INTEGER
  SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
CREATE FUNCTION keyring_key_remove RETURNS INTEGER
  SONAME 'keyring_udf.so';
```

If the plugin and UDFs are used on a master replication server, install them on all slave servers as well to avoid replication issues.

Once installed as just described, the plugin and UDFs remain installed until uninstalled. To remove them, use the UNINSTALL PLUGIN and DROP FUNCTION statements:

```sql
UNINSTALL PLUGIN keyring_udf;
DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_generate;
DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_fetch;
DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_length_fetch;
DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_type_fetch;
DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_store;
DROP FUNCTION keyring_key_remove;
```

### Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions

Before using the keyring user-defined functions (UDFs), install them according to the instructions provided in Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions.

The keyring UDFs are subject to these constraints:

- To use any keyring UDF, the keyring_udf plugin must be enabled. Otherwise, an error occurs:

  ```sql
  ERROR 1123 (HY000): Can't initialize function 'keyring_key_generate';
  This function requires keyring_udf plugin which is not installed.
  Please install
  ```

  To install the keyring_udf plugin, see Installing or Uninstalling General-Purpose Keyring Functions.

- The keyring UDFs invoke keyring service functions (see The Keyring Service). The service functions in turn use whatever keyring plugin is installed (for example, keyring_file or keyring_okv). Therefore, to use any keyring UDF, some underlying keyring plugin must be enabled. Otherwise, an error occurs:

  ```sql
  ERROR 3188 (HY000): Function 'keyring_key_generate' failed because underlying keyring service returned an error. Please check if a keyring plugin is installed and that provided arguments are valid
  ```
General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions

for the keyring you are using.

To install a keyring plugin, see Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”.

• To use any keyring UDF, a user must possess the global EXECUTE privilege. Otherwise, an error occurs:

```
ERROR 1123 (HY000): Can't initialize function 'keyring_key_generate';
The user is not privileged to execute this function. User needs to have EXECUTE
```

To grant the global EXECUTE privilege to a user, use this statement:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON *.* TO user;
```

Alternatively, should you prefer to avoid granting the global EXECUTE privilege while still permitting users to access specific key-management operations, “wrapper” stored programs can be defined (a technique described later in this section).

• A key stored in the keyring by a given user can be manipulated later only by the same user. That is, the value of the CURRENT_USER() function at the time of key manipulation must have the same value as when the key was stored in the keyring. (This constraint rules out the use of the keyring UDFs for manipulation of instance-wide keys, such as those created by InnoDB to support tablespace encryption.)

To enable multiple users to perform operations on the same key, “wrapper” stored programs can be defined (a technique described later in this section).

• Keyring UDFs support the key types and lengths supported by the underlying keyring plugin. For information about keys specific to a particular keyring plugin, see Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

To create a new random key and store it in the keyring, call `keyring_key_generate()` , passing to it an ID for the key, along with the key type (encryption method) and its length in bytes. The following call creates a 2,048-bit DSA-encrypted key named `MyKey`:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'DSA', 256);
+-------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('MyKey', 'DSA', 256) |
|                                         1 |
+-------------------------------------------+
```

A return value of 1 indicates success. If the key cannot be created, the return value is NULL and an error occurs. One reason this might be is that the underlying keyring plugin does not support the specified combination of key type and key length; see Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

To be able to check the return type regardless of whether an error occurs, use `SELECT ... INTO @var_name` and test the variable value:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('', '', -1) INTO @x;
ERROR 3188 (HY000): Function 'keyring_key_generate' failed because underlying keyring service returned an error. Please check if a keyring plugin is installed and that provided arguments are valid for the keyring you are using.
mysql> SELECT @x;
+------+
| @x   |
| NULL |
```
This technique also applies to other keyring UDFs that for failure return a value and an error.

The ID passed to `keyring_key_generate()` provides a means by which to refer to the key in subsequent UDF calls. For example, use the key ID to retrieve its type as a string or its length in bytes as an integer:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_type_fetch('MyKey');
+---------------------------------+
| keyring_key_type_fetch('MyKey') |
| DSA                             |
+---------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_length_fetch('MyKey');
+-----------------------------------+
| keyring_key_length_fetch('MyKey') |
|                               256 |
+-----------------------------------+
```

To retrieve a key value, pass the key ID to `keyring_key_fetch()`. The following example uses `HEX()` to display the key value because it may contain nonprintable characters. The example also uses a short key for brevity, but be aware that longer keys provide better security:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('MyShortKey', 'DSA', 8);
+----------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('MyShortKey', 'DSA', 8) |
|                                            1 |
+----------------------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT HEX(keyring_key_fetch('MyShortKey'));
+--------------------------------------+
| HEX(keyring_key_fetch('MyShortKey')) |
| 1DB3B0FC3328A24C                     |
+--------------------------------------+
```

Keyring UDFs treat key IDs, types, and values as binary strings, so comparisons are case-sensitive. For example, IDs of `MyKey` and `mykey` refer to different keys.

To remove a key, pass the key ID to `keyring_key_remove()`:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_remove('MyKey');
+-----------------------------+
| keyring_key_remove('MyKey') |
|                           1 |
+-----------------------------+
```

To obfuscate and store a key that you provide, pass the key ID, type, and value to `keyring_key_store()`:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_store('AES_key', 'AES', 'Secret string');
+------------------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_store('AES_key', 'AES', 'Secret string') |
+------------------------------------------------------+
```
As indicated previously, a user must have the global EXECUTE privilege to call keyring UDFs, and the user who stores a key in the keyring initially must be the same user who performs subsequent operations on the key later, as determined from the CURRENT_USER() value in effect for each UDF call. To permit key operations to users who do not have the global EXECUTE privilege or who may not be the key “owner,” use this technique:

1. Define “wrapper” stored programs that encapsulate the required key operations and have a DEFINER value equal to the key owner.

2. Grant the EXECUTE privilege for specific stored programs to the individual users who should be able to invoke them.

3. If the operations implemented by the wrapper stored programs do not include key creation, create any necessary keys in advance, using the account named as the DEFINER in the stored program definitions.

This technique enables keys to be shared among users and provides to DBAs more fine-grained control over who can do what with keys, without having to grant global privileges.

The following example shows how to set up a shared key named SharedKey that is owned by the DBA, and a get_shared_key() stored function that provides access to the current key value. The value can be retrieved by any user with the EXECUTE privilege for that function, which is created in the key_schema schema.

From a MySQL administrative account (‘root’@‘localhost’ in this example), create the administrative schema and the stored function to access the key:

```
mysql> CREATE SCHEMA key_schema;
mysql> CREATE DEFINER = ‘root’@’localhost’ FUNCTION key_schema.get_shared_key()
               RETURNS BLOB READS SQL DATA
               RETURN keyring_key_fetch(‘SharedKey’);
```

From the administrative account, ensure that the shared key exists:

```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate(‘SharedKey’, ‘DSA’, 8);
+---------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate(‘SharedKey’, ‘DSA’, 8) |
+---------------------------------------------+
|                                           1 |
+---------------------------------------------+
```

From the administrative account, create an ordinary user account to which key access is to be granted:

```
mysql> CREATE USER ‘key_user’@’localhost’ IDENTIFIED BY ‘key_user_pwd’;
```

From the key_user account, verify that, without the proper EXECUTE privilege, the new account cannot access the shared key:

```
mysql> SELECT HEX(key_schema.get_shared_key());
ERROR 1370 (42000): execute command denied to user 'key_user'@'localhost'
for routine 'key_schema.get_shared_key'
```

From the administrative account, grant EXECUTE to key_user for the stored function:
From the `key_user` account, verify that the key is now accessible:

```
mysql> SELECT HEX(key_schema.get_shared_key());
+----------------------------------+
| HEX(key_schema.get_shared_key()) |
+----------------------------------+
| 9BAFB9E75CEEB013                 |
+----------------------------------+
```

General-Purpose Keyring Function Reference

For each general-purpose keyring user-defined function (UDF), this section describes its purpose, calling sequence, and return value. For information about the conditions under which these UDFs can be invoked, see Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions.

- **keyring_key_fetch(key_id)**

  Given a key ID, deobfuscates and returns the key value.

  Arguments:

  - **key_id**: A string that specifies the key ID.

  Return value:

  Returns the key value as a string for success, `NULL` if the key does not exist, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

  **Note**

  Key values retrieved using `keyring_key_fetch()` are subject to the general keyring UDF limits described in Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”. A key value longer than that length can be stored using a keyring service function (see The Keyring Service), but if retrieved using `keyring_key_fetch()` is truncated to the general keyring UDF limit.

  **Example:**

  ```
  mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 16);
  +--------------------------------------------+
  | keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 16) |
  +--------------------------------------------+
  |                                          1 |
  +--------------------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT HEX(keyring_key_fetch('RSA_key'));
  +-----------------------------------+
  | HEX(keyring_key_fetch('RSA_key'))  |
  +-----------------------------------+
  | 91C2253B696064D3556984B6630F891A    |
  +-----------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT keyring_key_type_fetch('RSA_key');
  +-----------------------------------+
  | keyring_key_type_fetch('RSA_key')  |
  +-----------------------------------+
  | RSA                               |
  +-----------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT keyring_key_length_fetch('RSA_key');
  +-------------------------------------+
  | keyring_key_length_fetch('RSA_key') |
  +-------------------------------------+
  |                                  16 |
  +-------------------------------------+
  ```
The example uses `HEX()` to display the key value because it may contain nonprintable characters. The example also uses a short key for brevity, but be aware that longer keys provide better security.

- **keyring_key_generate(key_id, key_type, key_length)**

Generates a new random key with a given ID, type, and length, and stores it in the keyring. The type and length values must be consistent with the values supported by the underlying keyring plugin. See Section 6.4.7, “Supported Keyring Key Types and Lengths”.

Arguments:
- **key_id**: A string that specifies the key ID.
- **key_type**: A string that specifies the key type.
- **key_length**: An integer that specifies the key length in bytes.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

Example:
```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 384);
+---------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_generate('RSA_key', 'RSA', 384)  |
| +---------------------------------------------+ 1 |
```

- **keyring_key_length_fetch(key_id)**

Given a key ID, returns the key length.

Arguments:
- **key_id**: A string that specifies the key ID.

Return value:
Returns the key length in bytes as an integer for success, `NULL` if the key does not exist, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

Example:
```
See the description of keyring_key_fetch().
```

- **keyring_key_remove(key_id)**

Removes the key with a given ID from the keyring.

Arguments:
- **key_id**: A string that specifies the key ID.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or `NULL` for failure.

Example:
```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_remove('AES_key');
```
- `keyring_key_remove('AES_key')` 1

`keyring_key_store(key_id, key_type, key)`

Obfuscates and stores a key in the keyring.

Arguments:
- `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.
- `key_type`: A string that specifies the key type.
- `key`: A string that specifies the key value.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

Example:
```
mysql> SELECT keyring_key_store('new key', 'DSA', 'My key value');
+-----------------------------------------------------+
| keyring_key_store('new key', 'DSA', 'My key value') |
|                                                   1 |
+-----------------------------------------------------+
```

- `keyring_key_type_fetch(key_id)`

Given a key ID, returns the key type.

Arguments:
- `key_id`: A string that specifies the key ID.

Return value:
Returns the key type as a string for success, `NULL` if the key does not exist, or `NULL` and an error for failure.

Example:

See the description of `keyring_key_fetch()`.

**6.4.9 Plugin-Specific Keyring Key-Management Functions**

For each keyring plugin-specific user-defined function (UDF), this section describes its purpose, calling sequence, and return value. For information about general-purpose keyring UDFs, see Section 6.4.8, “General-Purpose Keyring Key-Management Functions”.

- `keyring_aws_rotate_cmk()`

This UDF is associated with the `keyring_aws` plugin. Its use requires the `SUPER` privilege.

`keyring_aws_rotate_cmk()` rotates the customer master key (CMK). Rotation changes only the key that AWS KMS uses for subsequent data key-encryption operations. AWS KMS maintains previous CMK versions, so keys generated using previous CMKs remain decryptable after rotation.
Rotation changes the CMK value used inside AWS KMS but does not change the ID used to refer to it, so there is no need to change the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable after calling keyring_aws_rotate_cmk().

Arguments:
None.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

keyring_aws_rotate_keys()

This UDF is associated with the keyring_aws plugin. Its use requires the SUPER privilege.

keyring_aws_rotate_keys() rotates keys stored in the keyring_aws storage file named by the keyring_aws_data_file system variable. Rotation sends each key stored in the file to AWS KMS for re-encryption using the value of the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable as the CMK value, and stores the new encrypted keys in the file.

keyring_aws_rotate_keys() is useful for key re-encryption under these circumstances:

- After rotating the CMK; that is, after invoking the keyring_aws_rotate_cmk() UDF
- After changing the keyring_aws_cmk_id system variable to a different key value

Arguments:
None.

Return value:
Returns 1 for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

6.4.10 Keyring Command Options

MySQL supports the following keyring-related command-line options:

- --keyring-migration-destination=plugin

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--keyring-migration-destination=plugin_name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The destination keyring plugin for key migration. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”. The format and interpretation of the option value is the same as described for the --keyring-migration-source option.

Note

--keyring-migration-source and --keyring-migration-destination are mandatory for all keyring migration operations. The source and destination plugins must differ, and the migration server must support both plugins.

- --keyring-migration-host=host_name
### Property | Value
--- | ---
**Command-Line Format** | `--keyring-migration-host=host_name`
**Introduced** | 5.7.21
**Type** | String
**Default Value** | `localhost`

The host location of the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”. Migration always occurs on the local host, so the option always specifies a value for connecting to a local server, such as `localhost`, `127.0.0.1`, `::1`, or the local host IP address or host name.

- `--keyring-migration-password[=password]`

### Property | Value
--- | ---
**Command-Line Format** | `--keyring-migration-password[=password]`
**Introduced** | 5.7.21
**Type** | String

The password for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”. If you omit the `password` value following the option name on the command line, the server prompts for one.

Specifying a password on the command line should be considered insecure. See Section 2.2.1, “End-User Guidelines for Password Security”. You can use an option file to avoid giving the password on the command line. In this case, the file should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the migration server.

- `--keyring-migration-port=port_num`

### Property | Value
--- | ---
**Command-Line Format** | `--keyring-migration-port=port_num`
**Introduced** | 5.7.21
**Type** | Numeric
**Default Value** | `3306`

For TCP/IP connections, the port number for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

- `--keyring-migration-socket=path`

### Property | Value
--- | ---
**Command-Line Format** | `--keyring-migration-socket={file_name|pipe_name}`
**Introduced** | 5.7.21
**Type** | String

For Unix socket file or Windows named pipe connections, the socket file or named pipe for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

- `--keyring-migration-source=plugin`
Keyring System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-migration-source=plugin_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The source keyring plugin for key migration. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

The option value is similar to that for `--plugin-load`, except that only one plugin library can be specified. The value is given as `name=plugin_library` or `plugin_library`. The `name` is the name of a plugin to load, and `plugin_library` is the name of the library file that contains the plugin code. If the plugin library is named without any preceding plugin name, the server loads all plugins in the library. The server looks for plugin library files in the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable.

```
Note

`--keyring-migration-source` and `--keyring-migration-destination` are mandatory for all keyring migration operations. The source and destination plugins must differ, and the migration server must support both plugins.
```

- `--keyring-migration-user=user_name`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-migration-user=user_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The user name for connecting to the running server that is currently using one of the key migration keystores. See Section 6.4.6, “Migrating Keys Between Keyring Keystores”.

6.4.11 Keyring System Variables

MySQL Keyring plugins support the following system variables. Use them to configure keyring plugin operation. These variables are unavailable unless the appropriate keyring plugin is installed (see Section 6.4.1, “Keyring Plugin Installation”).

- `keyring_aws_cmk_id`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-aws-cmk-id=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_aws_cmk_id</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The customer master key (CMK) ID obtained from the AWS KMS server and used by the `keyring_aws` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed, but if it is installed, a value for this variable is mandatory.

- `keyring_aws_conf_file`
### Keyring System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-aws-conf-file=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_aws_conf_file</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>platform specific</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The location of the configuration file for the `keyring_aws` keyring plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed.

At plugin startup, `keyring_aws` reads the AWS secret access key ID and key from the configuration file. For the `keyring_aws` plugin to start successfully, the configuration file must exist and contain valid secret access key information, initialized as described in Section 6.4.5, “Using the keyring_aws Amazon Web Services Keyring Plugin”.

The default file name is `keyring_aws_conf`, located in the default keyring file directory. The location of this default directory is the same as for the `keyring_file_data` system variable. See the description of that variable for details, as well as for considerations to take into account if you create the directory manually.

- **keyring_aws_data_file**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-aws-data-file</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_aws_data_file</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>platform specific</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The location of the storage file for the `keyring_aws` keyring plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed.

At plugin startup, if the value assigned to `keyring_aws_data_file` specifies a file that does not exist, the `keyring_aws` plugin attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary). If the file does exist, `keyring_aws` reads any encrypted keys contained in the file into its in-memory cache. `keyring_aws` does not cache unencrypted keys in memory.

The default file name is `keyring_aws_data`, located in the default keyring file directory. The location of this default directory is the same as for the `keyring_file_data` system variable. See the description of that variable for details, as well as for considerations to take into account if you create the directory manually.

- **keyring_aws_region**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-aws-region=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Keyring System Variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>keyring_aws_region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>us-east-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ap-northeast-1, ap-northeast-2, ap-south-1, ap-southeast-1, ap-southeast-2, eu-central-1, eu-west-1, sa-east-1, us-east-1, us-west-1, us-west-2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The AWS region.

- **keyring_encrypted_file_data**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-encrypted-file-data=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>keyring_encrypted_file_data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>platform specific</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the data file used for secure data storage by the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The file location should be in a directory considered for use only by keyring plugins. For example, do not locate the file under the data directory.

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_encrypted_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

Do not use the same `keyring_encrypted_file` data file for multiple MySQL instances. Each instance should have its own unique data file.
The default file name is `keyring_encrypted`, located in a directory that is platform specific and depends on the value of the `INSTALL_LAYOUT` CMake option, as shown in the following table. To specify the default directory for the file explicitly if you are building from source, use the `INSTALL_MYSQLKEYRINGDIR` CMake option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>INSTALL_LAYOUT</code> Value</th>
<th>Default <code>keyring_encrypted_file_data</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEB, RPM, SLES, SVR4</td>
<td><code>/var/lib/mysql-keyring/keyring_encrypted</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td><code>keyring/keyring_encrypted</code> under the <code>CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX</code> value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At plugin startup, if the value assigned to `keyring_encrypted_file_data` specifies a file that does not exist, the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary).

If you create the directory manually, it should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring` directory, the following commands (executed as `root`) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring
chmod 750 mysql-keyring
chown mysql mysql-keyring
chgrp mysql mysql-keyring
```

If the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin cannot create or access its data file, it writes an error message to the error log. If an attempted runtime assignment to `keyring_encrypted_file_data` results in an error, the variable value remains unchanged.

**Important**

Once the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin has created its data file and started to use it, it is important not to remove the file. Loss of the file will cause data encrypted using its keys to become inaccessible. (It is permissible to rename or move the file, as long as you change the value of `keyring_encrypted_file_data` to match.)

- `keyring_encrypted_file_password`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-encrypted-file-password=password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_encrypted_file_password</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The password used by the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The password is mandatory for plugin operation; if not specified at server startup, `keyring_encrypted_file` initialization fails.

If this variable is specified in an option file, the file should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server.
Once the `keyring_encrypted_file_password` value has been set, changing it does not rotate the keyring password and could make the server inaccessible. If an incorrect password is provided, the `keyring_encrypted_file` plugin cannot load keys from the encrypted keyring file.

The password value cannot be displayed at runtime with `SHOW VARIABLES` or the Performance Schema `global_variables` table because the display value is obfuscated.

- `keyring_file_data`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-file-data=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_file_data</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>File name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>platform specific</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the data file used for secure data storage by the `keyring_file` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The file location should be in a directory considered for use only by keyring plugins. For example, do not locate the file under the data directory.

Keyring operations are transactional: The `keyring_file` plugin uses a backup file during write operations to ensure that it can roll back to the original file if an operation fails. The backup file has the same name as the value of the `keyring_file_data` system variable with a suffix of `.backup`.

Do not use the same `keyring_file` data file for multiple MySQL instances. Each instance should have its own unique data file.

The default file name is `keyring`, located in a directory that is platform specific and depends on the value of the `INSTALL_LAYOUT` CMake option, as shown in the following table. To specify the default directory for the file explicitly if you are building from source, use the `INSTALL_MYSQLKEYRINGDIR` CMake option.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INSTALL_LAYOUT Value</th>
<th>Default <code>keyring_file_data</code> Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DEB, RPM, SLES, SVR4</td>
<td><code>/var/lib/mysql-keyring/keyring</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise</td>
<td><code>keyring/keyring</code> under the <code>CMAKE_INSTALL_PREFIX</code> value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At plugin startup, if the value assigned to `keyring_file_data` specifies a file that does not exist, the `keyring_file` plugin attempts to create it (as well as its parent directory, if necessary).

If you create the directory manually, it should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring` directory, the following commands (executed as `root`) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring
chmod 750 mysql-keyring
chown mysql mysql-keyring
```
If the `keyring_file` plugin cannot create or access its data file, it writes an error message to the error log. If an attempted runtime assignment to `keyring_file_data` results in an error, the variable value remains unchanged.

Important

Once the `keyring_file` plugin has created its data file and started to use it, it is important not to remove the file. For example, InnoDB uses the file to store the master key used to decrypt the data in tables that use InnoDB tablespace encryption; see InnoDB Data-at-Rest Encryption. Loss of the file will cause data in such tables to become inaccessible. (It is permissible to rename or move the file, as long as you change the value of `keyring_file_data` to match.) It is recommended that you create a separate backup of the keyring data file immediately after you create the first encrypted table and before and after master key rotation.

- `keyring_okv_conf_dir`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--keyring-okv-conf-dir=dir_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>keyring_okv_conf_dir</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Directory name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>empty string</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The path name of the directory that stores configuration information used by the `keyring_okv` plugin. This variable is unavailable unless that plugin is installed. The location should be a directory considered for use only by the `keyring_okv` plugin. For example, do not locate the directory under the data directory.

The default `keyring_okv_conf_dir` value is empty. For the `keyring_okv` plugin to be able to access Oracle Key Vault, the value must be set to a directory that contains Oracle Key Vault configuration and SSL materials. For instructions on setting up this directory, see Section 6.4.4, “Using the keyring_okv KMIP Plugin”.

The directory should have a restrictive mode and be accessible only to the account used to run the MySQL server. For example, on Unix and Unix-like systems, to use the `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-keyring-okv` directory, the following commands (executed as `root`) create the directory and set its mode and ownership:

```bash
cd /usr/local/mysql
mkdir mysql-keyring-okv
chmod 750 mysql-keyring-okv
chown mysql mysql-keyring-okv
chgrp mysql mysql-keyring-okv
```

If the value assigned to `keyring_okv_conf_dir` specifies a directory that does not exist, or that does not contain configuration information that enables a connection to Oracle Key Vault to be established, `keyring_okv` writes an error message to the error log. If an attempted runtime assignment to `keyring_okv_conf_dir` results in an error, the variable value and keyring operation remain unchanged.

- `keyring_operations`
6.5 MySQL Enterprise Audit

Note

MySQL Enterprise Audit is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see https://www.mysql.com/products/.

MySQL Enterprise Edition includes MySQL Enterprise Audit, implemented using a server plugin named `audit_log`. MySQL Enterprise Audit uses the open MySQL Audit API to enable standard, policy-based monitoring, logging, and blocking of connection and query activity executed on specific MySQL servers. Designed to meet the Oracle audit specification, MySQL Enterprise Audit provides an out of box, easy to use auditing and compliance solution for applications that are governed by both internal and external regulatory guidelines.

When installed, the audit plugin enables MySQL Server to produce a log file containing an audit record of server activity. The log contents include when clients connect and disconnect, and what actions they perform while connected, such as which databases and tables they access.

After you install the audit plugin (see Section 6.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”), it writes an audit log file. By default, the file is named `audit.log` in the server data directory. To change the name of the file, set the `audit_log_file` system variable at server startup.

By default, audit log file contents are written in new-style XML format, without compression or encryption. To select the file format, set the `audit_log_format` system variable at server startup. For details on file format and contents, see Section 6.5.4, “Audit Log File Formats”.

For more information about controlling how logging occurs, including audit log file naming and format selection, see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”. To perform filtering of audited events, see Section 6.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”. For descriptions of the parameters used to configure the audit log plugin, see Audit Log Options and Variables.

If the audit log plugin is enabled, the Performance Schema (see MySQL Performance Schema) has instrumentation for it. To identify the relevant instruments, use this query:

```
SELECT NAME FROM performance_schema.setup_instruments
WHERE NAME LIKE '%/alog/%';
```

6.5.1 Audit Log Components

MySQL Enterprise Audit is based on the audit log plugin and related components:

- A server-side plugin named `audit_log` examines auditable events and determines whether to write them to the audit log.
• User-defined functions enable manipulation of filtering definitions that control logging behavior, the encryption password, and log file reading.

• Tables in the mysql system database provide persistent storage of filter and user account data.

• System variables enable audit log configuration and status variables provide runtime operational information.

Note
Prior to MySQL 5.7.13, MySQL Enterprise Audit consists only of the audit_log plugin and operates in legacy mode. See Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

6.5.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit

This section describes how to install or uninstall MySQL Enterprise Audit, which is implemented using the audit log plugin and related components described in Section 6.5.1, “Audit Log Components”. For general information about installing plugins, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins.

Important
Read this entire section before following its instructions. Parts of the procedure differ depending on your environment.

Note
If installed, the audit_log plugin involves some minimal overhead even when disabled. To avoid this overhead, do not install MySQL Enterprise Audit unless you plan to use it.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the plugin_dir system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of plugin_dir at server startup.

Note
The instructions here apply for MySQL 5.7.13 or higher. For MySQL versions prior to 5.7.13, see Installing MySQL Enterprise Audit in MySQL 5.6 Reference Manual.

Also, prior to MySQL 5.7.13, MySQL Enterprise Audit consists only of the audit_log plugin and includes none of the other components described in Section 6.5.1, “Audit Log Components”. As of MySQL 5.7.13, if the audit_log plugin is already installed from a version of MySQL prior to 5.7.13, uninstall it using the following statement and restart the server before installing the current version:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN audit_log;
```

To install MySQL Enterprise Audit, look in the share directory of your MySQL installation and choose the script that is appropriate for your platform. The available scripts differ in the suffix used to refer to the plugin library file:

• audit_log_filter_win_install.sql: Choose this script for Windows systems that use .dll as the file name suffix.

• audit_log_filter_linux_install.sql: Choose this script for Linux and similar systems that use .so as the file name suffix.

Run the script as follows. The example here uses the Linux installation script. Make the appropriate substitution for your system.
Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit

shell> `mysql -u root -p < audit_log_filter_linux_install.sql`
Enter password: (enter root password here)

Note
Some MySQL versions have introduced changes to the structure of the MySQL Enterprise Audit tables. To ensure that your tables are up to date for upgrades from earlier versions of MySQL 5.7, run `mysql_upgrade --force` (which will also perform any other needed updates). If you prefer to run the update statements only for the MySQL Enterprise Audit tables, see the following discussion.

As of MySQL 5.7.23, for new MySQL installations, the `USER` and `HOST` columns in the `audit_log_user` table used by MySQL Enterprise Audit have definitions that better correspond to the definitions of the `User` and `Host` columns in the `mysql.user` system table. For upgrades to 5.7.23 or higher of an installation for which MySQL Enterprise Audit is already installed, it is recommended that you alter the table definitions as follows:

```
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  DROP FOREIGN KEY audit_log_user_ibfk_1;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_filter
  ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_filter
  CONVERT TO CHARACTER SET utf8 COLLATE utf8_bin;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  CONVERT TO CHARACTER SET utf8 COLLATE utf8_bin;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  MODIFY COLUMN USER VARCHAR(32);
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user
  ADD FOREIGN KEY (FILTERNAME) REFERENCES mysql.audit_log_filter(NAME);
```

As of MySQL 5.7.21, for a new installation of MySQL Enterprise Audit, InnoDB is used instead of MyISAM for the audit log tables. For upgrades to 5.7.21 or higher of an installation for which MySQL Enterprise Audit is already installed, it is recommended that you alter the audit log tables to use InnoDB:

```
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_user ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.audit_log_filter ENGINE=InnoDB;
```

Note
To use MySQL Enterprise Audit in the context of master/slave replication, Group Replication, or InnoDB cluster, you must use MySQL 5.7.21 or higher, and ensure that the audit log tables use InnoDB as just described. Then you must prepare the slave or secondary nodes prior to running the installation script on the master or primary node. This is necessary because the `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement in the script is not replicated.

1. On each slave or secondary node, extract the `INSTALL PLUGIN` statement from the installation script and execute it manually.
2. On the master or primary node, run the installation script as described previously.

To verify plugin installation, examine the `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.PLUGINS` table or use the `SHOW PLUGINS` statement (see Obtaining Server Plugin Information). For example:

```
mysql> SELECT PLUGIN_NAME, PLUGIN_STATUS
```
If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

After MySQL Enterprise Audit is installed, you can use the `--audit-log` option for subsequent server startups to control `audit_log` plugin activation. For example, to prevent the plugin from being removed at runtime, use this option:

```
[mysqld]
audit-log=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT
```

If it is desired to prevent the server from running without the audit plugin, use `--audit-log` with a value of `FORCE` or `FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` to force server startup to fail if the plugin does not initialize successfully.

### Important

By default, rule-based audit log filtering logs no auditable events for any users. This differs from legacy audit log behavior (prior to MySQL 5.7.13), which logs all auditable events for all users (see Section 6.5.8, "Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering"). Should you wish to produce log-everything behavior with rule-based filtering, create a simple filter to enable logging and assign it to the default account:

```
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_all', '{ "filter": { "log": true } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('%', 'log_all');
```

The filter assigned to `%` is used for connections from any account that has no explicitly assigned filter (which initially is true for all accounts).

Once installed as just described, MySQL Enterprise Audit remains installed until uninstalled. To remove it, execute the following statements:

```
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS mysql.audit_log_user;
DROP TABLE IF EXISTS mysql.audit_log_filter;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN audit_log;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_set_filter;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_remove_filter;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_set_user;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_remove_user;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_filter_flush;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_encryption_password_get;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_encryption_password_set;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_read;
DROP FUNCTION audit_log_read_bookmark;
```

### 6.5.3 MySQL Enterprise Audit Security Considerations

By default, contents of audit log files produced by the audit log plugin are not encrypted and may contain sensitive information, such as the text of SQL statements. For security reasons, audit log files should be written to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and to users with a legitimate reason to view the log. The default file name is `audit.log` in the data directory. This can be changed by setting the `audit_log_file` system variable at server startup. Other audit log files may exist due to log rotation.

For additional security, enable audit log file encryption. See Audit Log File Encryption.
6.5.4 Audit Log File Formats

The MySQL server calls the audit log plugin to write an audit record to its log file whenever an auditable event occurs. Typically the first audit record written after plugin startup contains the server description and startup options. Elements following that one represent events such as client connect and disconnect events, executed SQL statements, and so forth. Only top-level statements are logged, not statements within stored programs such as triggers or stored procedures. Contents of files referenced by statements such as `LOAD DATA` are not logged.

To select the log format that the audit log plugin uses to write its log file, set the `audit_log_format` system variable at server startup. These formats are available:

- New-style XML format (`audit_log_format=NEW`): An XML format that has better compatibility with Oracle Audit Vault than old-style XML format. MySQL 5.7 uses new-style XML format by default.
- Old-style XML format (`audit_log_format=OLD`): The original audit log format used by default in older MySQL series.
- JSON format (`audit_log_format=JSON`)

By default, audit log file contents are written in new-style XML format, without compression or encryption.

Note
For information about issues to consider when changing the log format, see Audit Log File Format.

The following sections describe the available audit logging formats:

- New-Style XML Audit Log File Format
- Old-Style XML Audit Log File Format
- JSON Audit Log File Format

New-Style XML Audit Log File Format

Here is a sample log file in new-style XML format (`audit_log_format=NEW`), reformatted slightly for readability:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<AUDIT>
  <AUDIT_RECORD>
    <TIMESTAMP>2017-10-16T14:06:33 UTC</TIMESTAMP>
    <RECORD_ID>1_2017-10-16T14:06:33</RECORD_ID>
    <NAME>Audit</NAME>
    <SERVER_ID>1</SERVER_ID>
    <VERSION>1</VERSION>
    <STARTUP_OPTIONS>/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld
      --socket=/usr/local/mysql/mysql.sock
      --port=3306</STARTUP_OPTIONS>
    <OS_VERSION>i686-Linux</OS_VERSION>
    <MYSQL_VERSION>5.7.21-log</MYSQL_VERSION>
  </AUDIT_RECORD>
  <AUDIT_RECORD>
    <TIMESTAMP>2017-10-16T14:09:38 UTC</TIMESTAMP>
    <RECORD_ID>2_2017-10-16T14:06:33</RECORD_ID>
    <NAME>Connect</NAME>
    <CONNECTION_ID>5</CONNECTION_ID>
    <STATUS>0</STATUS>
    <STATUS_CODE>0</STATUS_CODE>
    <USER>root</USER>
    <OS_LOGIN/>
    <HOST>localhost</HOST>
    <IP>127.0.0.1</IP>
  </AUDIT_RECORD>
</AUDIT>
```
The audit log file is written as XML, using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character). The root element is `<AUDIT>`. The root element contains `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements, each of which provides information about an audited event. When the audit log plugin begins writing a new log file, it writes the XML declaration and opening `<AUDIT>` root element tag. When the plugin closes a log file, it writes the closing `</AUDIT>` root element tag. The closing tag is not present while the file is open.

Elements within `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements have these characteristics:

- Some elements appear in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element. Others are optional and may appear depending on the audit record type.
- Order of elements within an `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element is not guaranteed.
Audit Log File Formats

- Element values are not fixed length. Long values may be truncated as indicated in the element descriptions given later.

- The `<`, `>`, `,`, and `&` characters are encoded as `&lt;`, `&gt;`, `&quot;`, and `&amp;`, respectively. NUL bytes (U+00) are encoded as the `?` character.

- Characters not valid as XML characters are encoded using numeric character references. Valid XML characters are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code 1</th>
<th>Code 2</th>
<th>Code 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>#x9</td>
<td>#xA</td>
<td>#xD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>#x20-#xD7FF</td>
<td>#xE000-#xFFFD</td>
<td>#xE100-#x10FFFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following elements are mandatory in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element:

- `<NAME>`

  A string representing the type of instruction that generated the audit event, such as a command that the server received from a client.

  Example:

  `<NAME>Query</NAME>`

  Some common `<NAME>` values:

  - Audit: When auditing starts, which may be server startup time
  - Connect: When a client connects, also known as logging in
  - Query: An SQL statement (executed directly)
  - Prepare: Preparation of an SQL statement; usually followed by Execute
  - Execute: Execution of an SQL statement; usually follows Prepare
  - Shutdown: Server shutdown
  - Quit: When a client disconnects
  - NoAudit: Auditing has been turned off

  The possible values are Audit, Binlog Dump, Change user, Close stmt, Connect Out, Connect, Create DB, Daemon, Debug, Delayed insert, Drop DB, Execute, Fetch, Field List, Init DB, Kill, Long Data, NoAudit, Ping, Prepare, Processlist, Query, Quit, Refresh, Register Slave, Reset stmt, Set option, Shutdown, Sleep, Statistics, Table Dump, Time.

  With the exception of Audit and NoAudit, these values correspond to the COM_xxx command values listed in the `my_command.h` header file. For example, Create DB and Change user correspond to COM_CREATE_DB and COM_CHANGE_USER, respectively.

- `<RECORD_ID>`

  A unique identifier for the audit record. The value is composed from a sequence number and timestamp, in the format `SEQ_TIMESTAMP`. When the audit log plugin opens the audit log file, it initializes the sequence number to the size of the audit log file, then increments the sequence by 1 for each record logged. The timestamp is a UTC value in `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss` format indicating the date and time when the audit log plugin opened the file.

  Example:

  `<RECORD_ID>12_2017-10-16T14:06:33</RECORD_ID>`

- `<TIMESTAMP>`

  A string representing a UTC value in `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss` UTC format indicating the date and time when the audit event was generated. For example, the event corresponding to execution of an SQL statement received from a client has a `<TIMESTAMP>` value occurring after the statement finishes, not when it was received.
The following elements are optional in `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements. Many of them occur only with specific `<NAME>` element values.

- `<COMMAND_CLASS>`
  A string that indicates the type of action performed.
  Example:

  `<COMMAND_CLASS>drop_table</COMMAND_CLASS>`

  The values correspond to the `statement/sql/xxx` command counters. For example, `xxx` is `drop_table` and `select` for `DROP TABLE` and `SELECT` statements, respectively. The following statement displays the possible names:

  ```
  SELECT REPLACE(EVENT_NAME, 'statement/sql/', '') AS name
  FROM performance_schema.events_statements_summary_global_by_event_name
  WHERE EVENT_NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%'
  ORDER BY name;
  ```

- `<CONNECTION_ID>`
  An unsigned integer representing the client connection identifier. This is the same as the value returned by the `CONNECTION_ID()` function within the session.
  Example:

  `<CONNECTION_ID>127</CONNECTION_ID>`

- `<CONNECTION_TYPE>`
  The security state of the connection to the server. Permitted values are `TCP/IP` (TCP/IP connection established without encryption), `SSL/TLS` (TCP/IP connection established with encryption), `Socket` (Unix socket file connection), `Named Pipe` (Windows named pipe connection), and `Shared Memory` (Windows shared memory connection).
  Example:

  `<CONNECTION_TYPE>SSL/TLS</CONNECTION_TYPE>`

- `<DB>`
  A string representing the default database name.
  Example:

  `<DB>test</DB>`

- `<HOST>`
  A string representing the client host name.
  Example:
Audit Log File Formats

- `<HOST>localhost</HOST>`

  A string representing the client IP address.
  
  Example:

  `<IP>127.0.0.1</IP>`

- `<MYSQL_VERSION>`

  A string representing the MySQL server version. This is the same as the value of the `VERSION()` function or `version` system variable.
  
  Example:

  `<MYSQL_VERSION>5.7.21-log</MYSQL_VERSION>`

- `<OS_LOGIN>`

  A string representing the external user name used during the authentication process, as set by the plugin used to authenticate the client. With native (built-in) MySQL authentication, or if the plugin does not set the value, this element is empty. The value is the same as that of the `external_user` system variable (see Section 4.14, "Proxy Users").
  
  Example:

  `<OS_LOGIN>jeffrey</OS_LOGIN>`

- `<OS_VERSION>`

  A string representing the operating system on which the server was built or is running.
  
  Example:

  `<OS_VERSION>x86_64-Linux</OS_VERSION>`

- `<PRIV_USER>`

  A string representing the user that the server authenticated the client as. This is the user name that the server uses for privilege checking, and may differ from the `<USER>` value.
  
  Example:

  `<PRIV_USER>jeffrey</PRIV_USER>`

- `<PROXY_USER>`

  A string representing the proxy user (see Section 4.14, "Proxy Users"). The value is empty if user proxying is not in effect.
  
  Example:

  `<PROXY_USER>developer</PROXY_USER>`

- `<SERVER_ID>`

  An unsigned integer representing the server ID. This is the same as the value of the `server_id` system variable.
Audit Log File Formats

Example:

```
<SERVER_ID>1</SERVER_ID>
```

- `<SQLTEXT>`

A string representing the text of an SQL statement. The value can be empty. Long values may be truncated. The string, like the audit log file itself, is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character), so the value may be the result of conversion. For example, the original statement might have been received from the client as an SJIS string.

Example:

```
<SQLTEXT>DELETE FROM t1</SQLTEXT>
```

- `<STARTUP_OPTIONS>`

A string representing the options that were given on the command line or in option files when the MySQL server was started. The first option is the path to the server executable.

Example:

```
<STARTUP_OPTIONS>/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld
   --port=3306 --log_output=FILE</STARTUP_OPTIONS>
```

- `<STATUS>`

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, nonzero if an error occurred. This is the same as the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. See the description for `<STATUS_CODE>` for information about how it differs from `<STATUS>`.

The audit log does not contain the SQLSTATE value or error message. To see the associations between error codes, SQLSTATE values, and messages, see Server Error Message Reference.

Warnings are not logged.

Example:

```
<STATUS>1051</STATUS>
```

- `<STATUS_CODE>`

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, 1 if an error occurred.

The `STATUS_CODE` value differs from the `STATUS` value: `STATUS_CODE` is 0 for success and 1 for error, which is compatible with the EZ_collector consumer for Audit Vault. `STATUS` is the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. This is 0 for success and nonzero for error, and thus is not necessarily 1 for error.

Example:

```
<STATUS_CODE>0</STATUS_CODE>
```

- `<USER>`

A string representing the user name sent by the client. This may differ from the `<PRIV_USER>` value.

Example:
Audit Log File Formats

- `<VERSION>`

An unsigned integer representing the version of the audit log file format.

Example:

```xml
<VERSION>1</VERSION>
```

Old-Style XML Audit Log File Format

Here is a sample log file in old-style XML format (audit_log_format=OLD), reformatted slightly for readability:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<AUDIT>
  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:00 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="1_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Audit"
    SERVER_ID="1"
    VERSION="1"
    STARTUP_OPTIONS="--port=3306"
    OS_VERSION="i686-Linux"
    MYSQL_VERSION="5.7.21-log"/>
  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:24 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="2_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Connect"
    CONNECTION_ID="4"
    STATUS="0"
    STATUS_CODE="0"
    USER="root"
    OS_LOGIN=""
    HOST="localhost"
    IP="127.0.0.1"
    COMMAND_CLASS="connect"
    CONNECTION_TYPE="SSL/TLS"
    PRIV_USER="root"
    PROXY_USER=""
    DB="test"/>
  ...
  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:24 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="6_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Query"
    CONNECTION_ID="4"
    STATUS="0"
    STATUS_CODE="0"
    USER="root[root] @ localhost [127.0.0.1]"
    OS_LOGIN=""
    HOST="localhost"
    IP="127.0.0.1"
    COMMAND_CLASS="drop_table"
    SQLTEXT="DROP TABLE IF EXISTS t"/>
  ...
  <AUDIT_RECORD
    TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:24 UTC"
    RECORD_ID="8_2017-10-16T14:25:00"
    NAME="Quit"
    CONNECTION_ID="4"
    STATUS="0"
    STATUS_CODE="0"
    USER="root"
    OS_LOGIN=""
    HOST="localhost"
  </AUDIT>
```
Audit Log File Formats

The audit log file is written as XML, using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character). The root element is `<AUDIT>`. The root element contains `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements, each of which provides information about an audited event. When the audit log plugin begins writing a new log file, it writes the XML declaration and opening `<AUDIT>` root element tag. When the plugin closes a log file, it writes the closing </AUDIT> root element tag. The closing tag is not present while the file is open.

Attributes of `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements have these characteristics:

- Some attributes appear in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element. Others are optional and may appear depending on the audit record type.
- Order of attributes within an `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element is not guaranteed.
- Attribute values are not fixed length. Long values may be truncated as indicated in the attribute descriptions given later.
- The <, >, " , and & characters are encoded as &lt;, &gt;, &quot;, and &amp;, respectively. NUL bytes (U+00) are encoded as the ? character.
- Characters not valid as XML characters are encoded using numeric character references. Valid XML characters are:

  #x9 | #xA | #xD | [#x20-#xD7FF] | [#xE000-#xFFFD] | [#x10000-#x10FFFF]

The following attributes are mandatory in every `<AUDIT_RECORD>` element:

- NAME

  A string representing the type of instruction that generated the audit event, such as a command that the server received from a client.

  **Example:** NAME="Query"

  Some common NAME values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audit</td>
<td>When auditing starts, which may be server startup time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect</td>
<td>When a client connects, also known as logging in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Query</td>
<td>An SQL statement (executed directly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepare</td>
<td>Preparation of an SQL statement; usually followed by Execute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Execute</td>
<td>Execution of an SQL statement; usually follows Prepare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shutdown</td>
<td>Server shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quit</td>
<td>When a client disconnects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoAudit</td>
<td>Auditing has been turned off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The possible values are Audit, Binlog Dump, Change user, Close stmt, Connect Out, Connect, Create DB, Daemon, Debug, Delayed insert, Drop DB, Execute, Fetch, Field List, Init DB, Kill, Long Data, NoAudit, Ping, Prepare, Processlist, Query, Quit, Refresh, Register Slave, Reset stmt, Set option, Shutdown, Sleep, Statistics, Table Dump, Time.

With the exception of "Audit" and "NoAudit", these values correspond to the COM_xxx command values listed in the my_command.h header file. For example, "Create DB" and "Change user" correspond to COM_CREATE_DB and COM_CHANGE_USER, respectively.
• **RECORD_ID**

A unique identifier for the audit record. The value is composed from a sequence number and timestamp, in the format  `SEQ_TIMESTAMP`. When the audit log plugin opens the audit log file, it initializes the sequence number to the size of the audit log file, then increments the sequence by 1 for each record logged. The timestamp is a UTC value in  `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss` format indicating the date and time when the audit log plugin opened the file.

Example: `RECORD_ID="12_2017-10-16T14:25:00"`

• **TIMESTAMP**

A string representing a UTC value in  `YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss UTC` format indicating the date and time when the audit event was generated. For example, the event corresponding to execution of an SQL statement received from a client has a TIMESTMP value occurring after the statement finishes, not when it was received.

Example: `TIMESTAMP="2017-10-16T14:25:32 UTC"`

The following attributes are optional in `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements. Many of them occur only for elements with specific values of the **NAME** attribute.

• **COMMAND_CLASS**

A string that indicates the type of action performed.

Example: `COMMAND_CLASS="drop_table"`

The values correspond to the `statement/sql/xxx` command counters. For example, `xxx` is `drop_table` and `select` for `DROP TABLE` and `SELECT` statements, respectively. The following statement displays the possible names:

```sql
SELECT REPLACE(EVENT_NAME, 'statement/sql/', '') AS name
FROM performance_schema.events_statements_summary_global_by_event_name
WHERE EVENT_NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%'
ORDER BY name;
```

• **CONNECTION_ID**

An unsigned integer representing the client connection identifier. This is the same as the value returned by the `CONNECTION_ID()` function within the session.

Example: `CONNECTION_ID="127"`

• **CONNECTION_TYPE**

The security state of the connection to the server. Permitted values are `TCP/IP` (TCP/IP connection established without encryption), `SSL/TLS` (TCP/IP connection established with encryption), `Socket` (Unix socket file connection), `Named Pipe` (Windows named pipe connection), and `Shared Memory` (Windows shared memory connection).

Example: `CONNECTION_TYPE="SSL/TLS"`

• **DB**

A string representing the default database name.

Example: `DB="test"`

• **HOST**

A string representing the client host name.
Audit Log File Formats

Example: HOST="localhost"

• **IP**

A string representing the client IP address.

Example: IP="127.0.0.1"

• **MYSQL_VERSION**

A string representing the MySQL server version. This is the same as the value of the VERSION() function or version system variable.

Example: MYSQL_VERSION="5.7.21-log"

• **OS_LOGIN**

A string representing the external user name used during the authentication process, as set by the plugin used to authenticate the client. With native (built-in) MySQL authentication, or if the plugin does not set the value, this attribute is empty. The value is the same as that of the external_user system variable (see Section 4.14, "Proxy Users").

Example: OS_LOGIN="jeffrey"

• **OS_VERSION**

A string representing the operating system on which the server was built or is running.

Example: OS_VERSION="x86_64-Linux"

• **PRIV_USER**

A string representing the user that the server authenticated the client as. This is the user name that the server uses for privilege checking, and it may differ from the USER value.

Example: PRIV_USER="jeffrey"

• **PROXY_USER**

A string representing the proxy user (see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”). The value is empty if user proxying is not in effect.

Example: PROXY_USER="developer"

• **SERVER_ID**

An unsigned integer representing the server ID. This is the same as the value of the server_id system variable.

Example: SERVER_ID="1"

• **SQLTEXT**

A string representing the text of an SQL statement. The value can be empty. Long values may be truncated. The string, like the audit log file itself, is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character), so the value may be the result of conversion. For example, the original statement might have been received from the client as an SJIS string.

Example: SQLTEXT="DELETE FROM t1"

• **STARTUP_OPTIONS**
Audit Log File Formats

A string representing the options that were given on the command line or in option files when the MySQL server was started.

Example: `STARTUP_OPTIONS="--port=3306 --log_output=FILE"

- **STATUS**

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, nonzero if an error occurred. This is the same as the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. See the description for `STATUS_CODE` for information about how it differs from `STATUS`.

The audit log does not contain the SQLSTATE value or error message. To see the associations between error codes, SQLSTATE values, and messages, see Server Error Message Reference.

Warnings are not logged.

Example: `STATUS="1051"

- **STATUS_CODE**

An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, 1 if an error occurred.

The `STATUS_CODE` value differs from the `STATUS` value: `STATUS_CODE` is 0 for success and 1 for error, which is compatible with the EZ_collector consumer for Audit Vault. `STATUS` is the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function. This is 0 for success and nonzero for error, and thus is not necessarily 1 for error.

Example: `STATUS_CODE="0"

- **USER**

A string representing the user name sent by the client. This may differ from the `PRIV_USER` value.

- **VERSION**

An unsigned integer representing the version of the audit log file format.

Example: `VERSION="1"

**JSON Audit Log File Format**

For JSON-format audit logging (`audit_log_format=JSON`), the log file contents form a JSON array with each array element representing an audited event as a JSON hash of key-value pairs. Examples of complete event records appear later in this section. The following is an excerpt of partial events:

```
[
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:50:01",
    "id": 0,
    "class": "audit",
    "event": "startup",
    ...
  },
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 15:02:32",
    "id": 0,
    "class": "connection",
    "event": "connect",
    ...
  },
  ...
]
```
Audit Log File Formats

The audit log file is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character). When the audit log plugin begins writing a new log file, it writes the opening \[ array marker. When the plugin closes a log file, it writes the closing \] array marker. The closing marker is not present while the file is open.

Items within audit records have these characteristics:

- Some items appear in every audit record. Others are optional and may appear depending on the audit record type.
- Order of items within an audit record is not guaranteed.
- Item values are not fixed length. Long values may be truncated as indicated in the item descriptions given later.
- The " and \ characters are encoded as \\" and \\, respectively.

The following examples show the JSON object formats for different event types (as indicated by the class and event items), reformatted slightly for readability:

Auditing startup event:

```
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:21:56", "id": 0, "class": "audit", "event": "startup", "connection_id": 0, "startup_data": { "server_id": 1, "os_version": "i686-Linux", "mysql_version": "5.7.21-log", "args": ["/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld", "--loose-audit-log-format=JSON", "--log-error=log.err", "--pid-file=mysqld.pid", "--port=3306" ] } }
```

When the audit log plugin starts as a result of server startup (as opposed to being enabled at runtime), connection_id is set to 0, and account and login are not present.

Auditing shutdown event:

```
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:28:20", "id": 3, "class": "audit", "event": "shutdown", "connection_id": 0, "shutdown_data": { "server_id": 1 } }
```

When the audit log plugin is uninstalled as a result of server shutdown (as opposed to being disabled at runtime), connection_id is set to 0, and account and login are not present.

Connect or change-user event:

```
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:23:18", "id": 1, "class": "connection", "event": "connect", } 
```
Audit Log File Formats

Disconnect event:

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:24:45",
  "id": 3,
  "class": "connection",
  "event": "disconnect",
  "connection_id": 5,
  "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" },
  "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": "::1", "proxy": "" },
  "connection_data": { "connection_type": "ssl", "status": 0, "db": "test" } }
```

Query event:

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:23:35",
  "id": 2,
  "class": "general",
  "event": "status",
  "connection_id": 5,
  "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" },
  "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": "::1", "proxy": "" },
  "general_data": { "command": "Query", "sql_command": "show_variables", "query": "SHOW VARIABLES", "status": 0 } }
```

Table access event (read, delete, insert, update):

```json
{ "timestamp": "2018-01-15 14:23:41",
  "id": 0,
  "class": "table_access",
  "event": "insert",
  "connection_id": 5,
  "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" },
  "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": "127.0.0.1", "proxy": "" },
  "table_access_data": { "db": "test", "table": "t1", "query": "INSERT INTO t1 (i) VALUES(1),(2),(3)", "sql_command": "insert" } }
```

The items in the following list appear at the top level of JSON-format audit records: Each item value is either a scalar or a JSON hash. For items that have a hash value, the description lists only the item names within that hash. For more complete descriptions of second-level hash items, see later in this section.

- **account**

  The MySQL account associated with the event. The value is a hash containing these items equivalent to the value of the `CURRENT_USER()` function within the section: `user`, `host`.

  **Example:**

  ```json
  "account": { "user": "root", "host": "localhost" }
  ```

- **class**

  A string representing the event class. The class defines the type of event, when taken together with the `event` item that specifies the event subclass.
Audit Log File Formats

Example:

```
"class": "connection"
```

The following table shows the permitted combinations of `class` and `event` values.

**Table 6.17 Audit Log Class and Event Combinations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class Value</th>
<th>Permitted Event Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>audit</code></td>
<td><code>startup, shutdown</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>connection</code></td>
<td><code>connect, change_user, disconnect</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general</code></td>
<td><code>status</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>table_access_data</code></td>
<td><code>read, delete, insert, update</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **connection_data**

  Information about a client connection. The value is a hash containing these items: `connection_type, status, db`. This item occurs only for audit records with a `class` value of `connection`.

  Example:

  ```
  "connection_data": { "connection_type": "ssl", "status": 0, "db": "test" }
  ```

- **connection_id**

  An unsigned integer representing the client connection identifier. This is the same as the value returned by the `CONNECTION_ID()` function within the session.

  Example:

  ```
  "connection_id": 5
  ```

- **event**

  A string representing the subclass of the event class. The subclass defines the type of event, when taken together with the `class` item that specifies the event class. For more information, see the `class` item description.

  Example:

  ```
  "event": "connect"
  ```

- **general_data**

  Information about an executed statement or command. The value is a hash containing these items: `command, sql_command, query, status`. This item occurs only for audit records with a `class` value of `general`.

  Example:

  ```
  "general_data": { "command": "Query", "sql_command": "show_variables", "query": "SHOW VARIABLES", } 
  ```
Audit Log File Formats

"status": 0

- **id**
  
  An unsigned integer representing an event ID.
  
  Example:

  ```json
  "id": 2
  ```

  For audit records that have the same `timestamp` value, their `id` values distinguish them and form a sequence. Within the audit log, `timestamp/id` pairs are unique. These pairs are bookmarks that identify event locations within the log.

- **login**
  
  Information indicating how a client connected to the server. The value is a hash containing these items: `user`, `os`, `ip`, `proxy`.
  
  Example:

  ```json
  "login": { "user": "root", "os": "", "ip": "::1", "proxy": "" }
  ```

- **shutdown_data**
  
  Information pertaining to audit log plugin termination. The value is a hash containing these items: `server_id` This item occurs only for audit records with `class` and `event` values of `audit` and `shutdown`, respectively.
  
  Example:

  ```json
  "shutdown_data": { "server_id": 1 }
  ```

- **startup_data**
  
  Information pertaining to audit log plugin initialization. The value is a hash containing these items: `server_id`, `os_version`, `mysql_version`, `args`. This item occurs only for audit records with `class` and `event` values of `audit` and `startup`, respectively.
  
  Example:

  ```json
  "startup_data": { "server_id": 1,
  "os_version": "i686-Linux",
  "mysql_version": "5.7.21-log",
  "args": ["/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld",
    "--loose-audit-log-format=JSON",
    "--log-error=log.err",
    "--pid-file=mysqld.pid",
    "--port=3306"] }
  ```

- **table_access_data**
  
  Information about an access to a table. The value is a hash containing these items: `db`, `table`, `query`, `sql_command`, This item occurs only for audit records with a `class` value of `table_access`.
  
  Example:

  ```json
  "table_access_data": { "db": "test",
  "table": "t1",
  "query": "INSERT INTO t1 (i) VALUES(1),(2),(3)",
  ```
Audit Log File Formats

"sql_command": "insert"

- **timestamp**

  A string representing a UTC value in `YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss` format indicating the date and time when the audit event was generated. For example, the event corresponding to execution of an SQL statement received from a client has a `timestamp` value occurring after the statement finishes, not when it was received.

  Example:

  "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:50:01"

  For audit records that have the same `timestamp` value, their `id` values distinguish them and form a sequence. Within the audit log, `timestamp/id` pairs are unique. These pairs are bookmarks that identify event locations within the log.

  These items appear within hash values associated with top-level items of JSON-format audit records:

- **args**

  An array of options that were given on the command line or in option files when the MySQL server was started. The first option is the path to the server executable.

  Example:

  "args": ["/usr/local/mysql/bin/mysqld", "--loose-audit-log-format=JSON", "--log-error=log.err", "--pid-file=mysqld.pid", "--port=3306"]

- **command**

  A string representing the type of instruction that generated the audit event, such as a command that the server received from a client.

  Example:

  "command": "Query"

- **connection_type**

  The security state of the connection to the server. Permitted values are `tcp/ip` (TCP/IP connection established without encryption), `ssl` (TCP/IP connection established with encryption), `socket` (Unix socket file connection), `named_pipe` (Windows named pipe connection), and `shared_memory` (Windows shared memory connection).

  Example:

  "connection_type": "tcp/tcp"

- **db**

  A string representing a database name. For `connection_data`, it is the default database. For `table_access_data`, it is the table database.

  Example:

  "db": "test"
Audit Log File Formats

- **host**
  A string representing the client host name.
  Example:
  ```json
  "host": "localhost"
  ```

- **ip**
  A string representing the client IP address.
  Example:
  ```json
  "ip": ":1"
  ```

- **mysql_version**
  A string representing the MySQL server version. This is the same as the value of the `VERSION()` function or `version` system variable.
  Example:
  ```json
  "mysql_version": "5.7.21-log"
  ```

- **os**
  A string representing the external user name used during the authentication process, as set by the plugin used to authenticate the client. With native (built-in) MySQL authentication, or if the plugin does not set the value, this attribute is empty. The value is the same as that of the `external_user` system variable. See Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”.
  Example:
  ```json
  "os": "jeffrey"
  ```

- **os_version**
  A string representing the operating system on which the server was built or is running.
  Example:
  ```json
  "os_version": "i686-Linux"
  ```

- **proxy**
  A string representing the proxy user (see Section 4.14, “Proxy Users”). The value is empty if user proxying is not in effect.
  Example:
  ```json
  "proxy": "developer"
  ```

- **query**
  A string representing the text of an SQL statement. The value can be empty. Long values may be truncated. The string, like the audit log file itself, is written using UTF-8 (up to 4 bytes per character), so the value may be the result of conversion. For example, the original statement might have been received from the client as an SJIS string.
Audit Log File Formats

Example:

"query": "DELETE FROM t1"

- **server_id**

  An unsigned integer representing the server ID. This is the same as the value of the `server_id` system variable.

  Example:

  "server_id": 1

- **sql_command**

  A string that indicates the SQL statement type.

  Example:

  "sql_command": "insert"

  The values correspond to the `statement/sql/xxx` command counters. For example, `xxx` is `drop_table` and `select` for `DROP TABLE` and `SELECT` statements, respectively. The following statement displays the possible names:

  ```
  SELECT REPLACE(EVENT_NAME, 'statement/sql/', '') AS name
  FROM performance_schema.events_statements_summary_global_by_event_name
  WHERE EVENT_NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%'
  ORDER BY name;
  ```

- **status**

  An unsigned integer representing the command status: 0 for success, nonzero if an error occurred. This is the same as the value of the `mysql_errno()` C API function.

  The audit log does not contain the SQLSTATE value or error message. To see the associations between error codes, SQLSTATE values, and messages, see [Server Error Message Reference](#).

  Warnings are not logged.

  Example:

  "status": 1051

- **table**

  A string representing a table name.

  Example:

  "table": "t1"

- **user**

  A string representing a user name. The meaning differs depending on the item within which `user` occurs:

  - Within `account` items, `user` is a string representing the user that the server authenticated the client as. This is the user name that the server uses for privilege checking.
• Within login items, user is a string representing the user name sent by the client.

Example:

```
"user": "root"
```

### 6.5.5 Audit Log Logging Configuration

This section describes how to configure audit logging characteristics, such as the file to which the audit log plugin writes events, the format of written events, and whether to enable log file compression and encryption.

- Audit Log File Name
- Audit Log File Format
- Audit Log File Compression
- Audit Log File Encryption
- Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption
- Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation
- Audit Logging Write Strategy
- Audit Log File Reading

For additional information about the user-defined functions and system variables that affect audit logging, see Audit Log Functions, and Audit Log Options and Variables.

The audit log plugin can also control which audited events are written to the audit log file, based on event content or the account from which events originate. See Section 6.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.

#### Audit Log File Name

To configure the audit log file name, set the `audit_log_file` system variable at server startup. By default, the name is `audit.log` in the server data directory. For security reasons, write the audit log file to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and to users with a legitimate reason to view the log.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, the plugin interprets the `audit_log_file` value as composed of a base name and an optional suffix. If compression or encryption are enabled, the effective file name (the name actually used to create the log file) differs from the configured file name because it has additional suffixes:

- If compression is enabled, the plugin adds a suffix of `.gz`.
- If encryption is enabled, the plugin adds a suffix of `.enc`.

The effective audit log file name is the name resulting from the addition of applicable compression and encryption suffixes to the configured file name. For example, if the configured `audit_log_file` value is `audit.log`, the effective file name is one of the values shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enabled Features</th>
<th>Effective File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No compression or encryption</td>
<td><code>audit.log</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression</td>
<td><code>audit.log.gz</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption</td>
<td><code>audit.log.enc</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression, encryption</td>
<td><code>audit.log.gz.enc</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, the configured and effective log file names are the same. For example, if the configured `audit_log_file` value is `audit.log`, the audit log plugin writes to `audit.log`.

The audit log plugin performs certain actions during initialization and termination based on the effective audit log file name:

As of MySQL 5.7.21:

- During initialization, the plugin checks whether a file with the audit log file name already exists and renames it if so. (In this case, the plugin assumes that the previous server invocation exited unexpectedly with the audit log plugin running.) The plugin then writes to a new empty audit log file.
- During termination, the plugin renames the audit log file.
- File renaming (whether during plugin initialization or termination) occurs according to the usual rules for automatic log file rotation; see Automatic Audit Log File Rotation.

Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, only the XML log formats are available and the plugin performs rudimentary integrity checking:

- During initialization, the plugin checks whether the file ends with an `</AUDIT>` tag and truncates the tag before writing any `<AUDIT_RECORD>` elements. If the log file exists but does not end with `</AUDIT>` or the `</AUDIT>` tag cannot be truncated, the plugin considers the file malformed and renames it. (Such renaming can occur if the server exits unexpectedly with the audit log plugin running.) The plugin then writes to a new empty audit log file.
- At termination, no file renaming occurs.
- When renaming occurs at plugin initialization, the renamed file has `.corrupted`, a timestamp, and `.xml` added to the end. For example, if the file name is `audit.log`, the plugin renames it to a value such as `audit.log.corrupted.15081807937726520.xml`. The timestamp value is similar to a Unix timestamp, with the last 7 digits representing the fractional second part. For information about interpreting the timestamp, see Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation.

### Audit Log File Format

To configure the audit log file format, set the `audit_log_format` system variable at server startup. By default, the format is `NEW` (new-style XML format). For details about each format, see Section 6.5.4, "Audit Log File Formats".

If you change `audit_log_format`, it is recommended that you also change `audit_log_file`. Otherwise, there will be two sets of log files with the same base name but different formats.

**Note**

Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, changing the value of `audit_log_format` can result in writing log entries in one format to an existing log file that contains entries in a different format. To avoid this issue, use the following procedure:

1. Stop the server.
2. Either change the value of the `audit_log_file` system variable so the plugin writes to a different file, or rename the current audit log file manually.
3. Restart the server with the new value of `audit_log_format`. The audit log plugin creates a new log file and writes entries to it in the selected format.

### Audit Log File Compression

Audit log file compression is available as of MySQL 5.7.21. Compression can be enabled for any log format.
To configure audit log file compression, set the `audit_log_compression` system variable at server startup. Permitted values are `NONE` (no compression; the default) and `GZIP` (GNU Zip compression).

If both compression and encryption are enabled, compression occurs before encryption. To recover the original file manually, first decrypt it, then uncompress it. See Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption.

**Audit Log File Encryption**

Audit log file encryption is available as of MySQL 5.7.21. Encryption can be enabled for any log format. Encryption is based on a user-defined password (with the exception of the initial password, which the audit log plugin generates). To use this feature, the MySQL keyring must be enabled because audit logging uses it for password storage. Any keyring plugin can be used; for instructions, see Section 6.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

To configure audit log file encryption, set the `audit_log_encryption` system variable at server startup. Permitted values are `NONE` (no encryption; the default) and `AES` (AES-256-CBC cipher encryption).

To set or get an encryption password, use these user-defined functions (UDFs):

- To set the current encryption password, invoke `audit_log_encryption_password_set()`. This function stores the new password in the keyring. If encryption is enabled, it also performs a log file rotation operation that renames the current log file, and begins a new log file encrypted with the password. File renaming occurs according to the usual rules for automatic log file rotation; see Automatic Audit Log File Rotation.

  Previously written audit log files are not re-encrypted with the new password. Keep a record of the previous password should you need to decrypt those files manually.

- To get the current encryption password, invoke `audit_log_encryption_password_get()`, which retrieves the password from the keyring.

For additional information about audit log encryption functions, see Audit Log Functions.

When the audit log plugin initializes, if it finds that log file encryption is enabled, it checks whether the keyring contains an audit log encryption password. If not, the plugin automatically generates a random initial encryption password and stores it in the keyring. To discover this password, invoke `audit_log_encryption_password_get()`.

If both compression and encryption are enabled, compression occurs before encryption. To recover the original file manually, first decrypt it, then uncompress it. See Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption.

**Audit Log File Manual Uncompression and Decryption**

Audit log files can be uncompressed and decrypted using standard tools. This should be done only for log files that have been closed (archived) and are no longer in use, not for the log file that the audit log plugin is currently writing. You can recognize archived log files because they have been renamed by the audit log plugin to include a timestamp in the file name just after the base name.

For this discussion, assume that `audit_log_file` is set to `audit.log`. In that case, an archived audit log file has one of the names shown in the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enabled Features</th>
<th>Archived File Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No compression or encryption</td>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression</td>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log.gz</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encryption</td>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log.enc</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression, encryption</td>
<td><code>audit.timestamp.log.gz.enc</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To uncompress a compressed log file manually, use `gunzip`, `gzip -d`, or equivalent command. For example:

```
gunzip -c audit.timestamp.log.gz > audit.timestamp.log
```

To decrypt an encrypted log file manually, use the `openssl` command. For example:

```
openssl enc -d -aes-256-cbc -pass pass:password -md sha256
   -in audit.timestamp.log.enc
   -out audit.timestamp.log.gz
```

Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation

The audit log file has the potential to grow very large and consume a lot of disk space. To enable management of the space used by its log files, the audit log plugin provides for log file rotation, either manually or automatically. Rotation capabilities use the `audit_log_flush` and `audit_log_rotate_on_size` system variables:

- By default, `audit_log_rotate_on_size=0` and no log rotation occurs unless performed manually. In this case, use `audit_log_flush` to close and reopen the current log file after manually renaming it.

- If `audit_log_rotate_on_size` is greater than 0, automatic rotation occurs when a write to the current log file causes its size to exceed this value. The audit log plugin closes the file, renames it, and opens a new log file. With automatic rotation enabled, `audit_log_flush` has no effect.

- Automatic rotation also occurs under several other conditions, described later.

Note

Renamed log files are not removed automatically. For example, with size-based log file rotation, renamed log files do not rotate off the end of the name sequence. Instead, they have unique names and accumulate indefinitely. To avoid excessive space use, remove old files periodically, backing them up first as necessary.

The following discussion describes log file rotation methods in greater detail.

- **Manual Audit Log File Rotation**

- **Automatic Audit Log File Rotation**

Manual Audit Log File Rotation

If `audit_log_rotate_on_size=0` (the default), no log rotation occurs unless performed manually. In this case, the audit log plugin closes and reopens the log file when the `audit_log_flush` value changes from disabled to enabled. Log file renaming must be done externally to the server. Suppose that the log file name is `audit.log` and you want to maintain the three most recent log files, cycling through the names `audit.log.1` through `audit.log.3`. On Unix, perform rotation manually like this:

1. From the command line, rename the current log files:
mv audit.log.2 audit.log.3
mv audit.log.1 audit.log.2
mv audit.log audit.log.1

This strategy overwrites the current audit.log.3 contents, placing a bound on the number of archived log files and the space they use.

2. At this point, the plugin is still writing to the current log file, which has been renamed to audit.log.1. Connect to the server and flush the log file so the plugin closes it and reopens a new audit.log file:

SET GLOBAL audit_log_flush = ON;

Audit Log File Rotation

If audit_log_rotate_on_size is greater than 0, setting audit_log_flush has no effect. Instead, whenever a write to the current log file causes its size to exceed the audit_log_rotate_on_size value, the audit log plugin closes the file, renames it, and opens a new log file.

Automatic rotation also occurs under these conditions:

• During plugin initialization, if a file with the audit log file name already exists (see Audit Log File Name).
• During plugin termination.
• When the audit_log_encryption_password_set() function is called to set the encryption password.

The plugin renames the original file as follows:

• As of MySQL 5.7.21, the renamed file has a timestamp inserted after its base name and before its suffix. For example, if the file name is audit.log, the plugin renames it to a value such as audit.20180115T140633.log. The timestamp is a UTC value in YYYYMMDDThhmmss format. The timestamp indicates rotation time for XML logging, and the timestamp of the last event written to the file for JSON logging.

• Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, the renamed file has a timestamp and .xml added to the end. For example, if the file name is audit.log, the plugin renames it to a value such as audit.log.15159344437726520.xml. The timestamp value is similar to a Unix timestamp, with the last 7 digits representing the fractional second part. By inserting a decimal point, the value can be interpreted using the FROM_UNIXTIME() function:

mysql> SELECT FROM_UNIXTIME(1515934443.7726520);
+--------------------------+
| FROM_UNIXTIME(1515934443.7726520) |
+--------------------------+
| 2018-01-14 06:54:03.772652 |
+--------------------------+
Audit Logging Write Strategy

The audit log plugin can use any of several strategies for log writes. Regardless of strategy, logging occurs on a best-effort basis, with no guarantee of consistency.

To specify a write strategy, set the `audit_log_strategy` system variable at server startup. By default, the strategy value is `ASYNCHRONOUS` and the plugin logs asynchronously to a buffer, waiting if the buffer is full. It's possible to tell the plugin not to wait (`PERFORMANCE`) or to log synchronously, either using file system caching (`SEMISYNCHRONOUS`) or forcing output with a `sync()` call after each write request (`SYNCHRONOUS`).

For asynchronous write strategy, the `audit_log_buffer_size` system variable is the buffer size in bytes. Set this variable at server startup to change the buffer size. The plugin uses a single buffer, which it allocates when it initializes and removes when it terminates. The plugin does not allocate this buffer for nonasynchronous write strategies.

Asynchronous logging strategy has these characteristics:

- Minimal impact on server performance and scalability.
- Blocking of threads that generate audit events for the shortest possible time; that is, time to allocate the buffer plus time to copy the event to the buffer.
- Output goes to the buffer. A separate thread handles writes from the buffer to the log file.

With asynchronous logging, the integrity of the log file may be compromised if a problem occurs during a write to the file or if the plugin does not shut down cleanly (for example, in the event that the server host exits unexpectedly). To reduce this risk, set `audit_log_strategy` to use synchronous logging.

A disadvantage of `PERFORMANCE` strategy is that it drops events when the buffer is full. For a heavily loaded server, the audit log may have events missing.

Audit Log File Reading

The audit log plugin enables bookmarking and reading of JSON-format audit log files. (These capabilities do not apply to files written in other log formats.)

When the audit log plugin initializes and is configured for JSON logging, it uses the directory containing the audit log file (determined from the `audit_log_file` value) as the location to search for readable audit log files. To do this, it uses the value of `audit_log_file` to determine the file base name and suffix values, then looks for files with names that match the following pattern, where ` [...] ` indicates optional file name parts:

```
basename [.timestamp].suffix[.gz][.enc]
```

The plugin opens each matching file, checks that it really contains JSON audit records, and sorts them using the timestamps from the first record of each file to construct a list of log files that are subject to use with the log-reading functions.

The plugin cannot include in the sequence files that were renamed manually and do not match the preceding pattern, or that were encrypted with a password no longer available in the keyring.

To read events from the audit log, use these user-defined functions (UDFs):

- `audit_log_read_bookmark()` returns a JSON string representing a bookmark for the most recently written audit log event. This bookmark is suitable for passing to `audit_log_read()` to indicate to that function where to begin reading. Example bookmark:

  ```
  { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 21:03:44", "id": 0 }
  ```

- `audit_log_read()` reads events from the audit log and returns a JSON string containing an array of audit events.
Example `audit_log_read()` invocation using the current bookmark:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark());
+-----------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark())            |
+-----------------------------------------------------+
| [ {"timestamp":"2018-01-15 22:41:24","id":0,"class":"connection", ... |  
+-----------------------------------------------------+
```

Each event in the `audit_log_read()` return value is a JSON hash, except that the last array element may be a JSON null value to indicate no following events are available to read. For example:

```
[
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 22:08:08", "id": 10,
    "class": "general", "event": "status",
    ...
  },
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 22:08:08", "id": 11,
    "class": "connection", "event": "disconnect",
    ...
  },
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:39:33", "id": 0,
    "class": "connection", "event": "connect",
    ...
  },
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:39:33", "id": 1,
    "class": "general", "event": "status",
    ...
  },
  {
    "timestamp": "2018-01-15 13:39:33", "id": 2,
    "class": "connection", "event": "disconnect",
    ...
  },
  null
]
```

Use `audit_log_read()` like this:

- For the first call to `audit_log_read()` within a session, pass a bookmark indicating where to begin reading.

- If the final value of the returned array is not a JSON null value, there are more events following those just read and `audit_log_read()` can be called without or with a bookmark argument. Without an argument, reading continues with the next unread event. With a bookmark argument, reading continues from the bookmark.

- If the final value of the returned array is a JSON null value, there are no more events left to be read and the next call to `audit_log_read()` must include a bookmark argument.

A bookmark is a JSON hash that indicates where and how much to read. The following items are significant in the bookmark value (other items are ignored):

- `timestamp, id`: The location within the audit log of the first event to read. Both items must be present to completely specify a position.

- `max_array_length`: The maximum number of events to read from the log. If omitted, the default is to read to the end of the log or until the read buffer is full, whichever comes first.

The result returned from either log-reading function is a binary string. To use the string with functions that require a nonbinary string (such as the functions that manipulate JSON values), convert it to utf8mb4. Suppose that a bookmark has this value:
Calling `audit_log_read()` with that bookmark can return multiple events. To set a limit on the number of events read by `audit_log_read()`, convert the bookmark to `utf8mb4`, then add to it a `max_array_length` item with a value of 1. For example, using the preceding bookmark, convert and modify it as follows:

```
mysql> SET @mark = CONVERT(@mark USING utf8mb4);
mysql> SET @mark := JSON_SET(@mark, '$.max_array_length', 1);
mysql> SELECT @mark;
```

The modified bookmark, when passed to `audit_log_read()`, produces a result of a single audit record.

To set a limit on the number of bytes that `audit_log_read()` reads, set the `audit_log_read_buffer_size` system variable. As of MySQL 5.7.23, this variable has a default of 32KB and can be set at runtime. Each client should set its session value of `audit_log_read_buffer_size` appropriately for its use of `audit_log_read()`. Prior to MySQL 5.7.23, `audit_log_read_buffer_size` has a default of 1MB, affects all clients, and can be changed only at server startup.

For additional information about audit log-reading functions, see Audit Log Functions.

### 6.5.6 Audit Log Filtering

**Note**

This section describes how audit log filtering works as of MySQL 5.7.13 if the audit log plugin and the accompanying audit tables and UDFs are installed. If the plugin is installed but not the accompanying audit tables and UDFs, the plugin operates in legacy filtering mode, described in Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”. Legacy mode is filtering behavior as it was prior to MySQL 5.7.13; that is, before the introduction of rule-based filtering.

The audit log plugin has the capability of controlling logging of audited events by filtering them:

- Audited events can be filtered using these characteristics:
  - User account
  - Audit event class
  - Audit event subclass
  - Value of event fields such as those that indicate operation status or SQL statement executed

- Audit filtering is rule based:
  - A filter definition creates a set of auditing rules. Definitions can be configured to include or exclude events for logging based on the characteristics just described.
  - As of MySQL 5.7.20, filter rules have the capability of blocking (aborting) execution of qualifying events, in addition to existing capabilities for event logging.
Audit Log Filtering

- Multiple filters can be defined, and any given filter can be assigned to any number of user accounts.

- It is possible to define a default filter to use with any user account that has no explicitly assigned filter.

- Audit filters can be defined, displayed, and modified using an SQL interface based on user-defined functions (UDFs).

- Audit filter definitions are stored in the tables in the `mysql` system database.

- Within a given session, the value of the read-only `audit_log_filter_id` system variable indicates whether a filter has been assigned to the session.

**Note**

By default, rule-based audit log filtering logs no auditable events for any users. To log all auditable events for all users, use the following statements, which create a simple filter to enable logging and assign it to the default account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_all', '{ "filter": { "log": true } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('%', 'log_all');
```

The filter assigned to `%` is used for connections from any account that has no explicitly assigned filter (which initially is true for all accounts).

The following list briefly summarizes the UDFs that implement the SQL interface for audit filtering control:

- `audit_log_filter_set_filter()`: Define a filter
- `audit_log_filter_remove_filter()`: Remove a filter
- `audit_log_filter_set_user()`: Start filtering a user account
- `audit_log_filter_remove_user()`: Stop filtering a user account
- `audit_log_filter_flush()`: Flush manual changes to the filter tables to affect ongoing filtering

For usage examples and complete details about the filtering functions, see Using Audit Log Filtering Functions, and Audit Log Functions.

Audit log filtering functions are subject to these constraints:

- To use any filtering function, the `audit_log` plugin must be enabled or an error occurs. In addition, the audit tables must exist or an error occurs. To install the `audit_log` plugin and its accompanying UDFs and tables, see Section 6.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”.

- To use any filtering function, a user must possess the `SUPER` privilege or an error occurs. To grant the `SUPER` privilege to a user account, use this statement:

  ```sql
  GRANT SUPER ON *.* TO user;
  ```

  Alternatively, should you prefer to avoid granting the `SUPER` privilege while still permitting users to access specific filtering functions, “wrapper” stored programs can be defined. This technique is described in the context of keyring UDFs in Using General-Purpose Keyring Functions; it can be adapted for use with filtering UDFs.

- The `audit_log` plugin operates in legacy mode if it is installed but the accompanying audit tables and functions are not created. The plugin writes these messages to the error log at server startup:
In legacy mode, filtering can be done based only on event account or status. For details, see Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

- **Using Audit Log Filtering Functions**

**Using Audit Log Filtering Functions**

Before using the audit log user-defined functions (UDFs), install them according to the instructions provided in Section 6.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”. The `SUPER` privilege is required to use any of these functions.

The audit log filtering functions enable filtering control by providing an interface to create, modify, and remove filter definitions and assign filters to user accounts.

Filter definitions are `JSON` values. For information about using `JSON` data in MySQL, see The JSON Data Type. This section shows some simple filter definitions. For more information about filter definitions, see Section 6.5.7, “Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions”.

When a connection arrives, the audit log plugin determines which filter to use for the new session by searching for the user account name in the current filter assignments:

- If a filter is assigned to the user, the audit log uses that filter.
- Otherwise, if no user-specific filter assignment exists, but there is a filter assigned to the default account (`%`), the audit log uses the default filter.
- Otherwise, the audit log selects no audit events from the session for processing.

If a change-user operation occurs during a session (see `mysql_change_user()`), filter assignment for the session is updated using the same rules but for the new user.

By default, no accounts have a filter assigned, so no processing of auditable events occurs for any account.

Suppose that instead you want the default to be to log only connection-related activity (for example, to see connect, change-user, and disconnect events, but not the SQL statements users execute while connected). To achieve this, define a filter (shown here named `log_conn_events`) that enables logging only of events in the `connection` class, and assign that filter to the default account, represented by the `%` account name:

```sql
SET @f = '{ "filter": { "class": { "name": "connection" } } }';
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_conn_events', @f);
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('%', 'log_conn_events');
```

Now the audit log uses this default account filter for connections from any account that has no explicitly defined filter.

To assign a filter explicitly to a particular user account or accounts, define the filter, then assign it to the relevant accounts:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_all', '{ "log": true }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'log_all');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user2@localhost', 'log_all');
```

Now full logging is enabled for `user1@localhost` and `user2@localhost`. Connections from other accounts continue to be filtered using the default account filter.

To disassociate a user account from its current filter, either unassign the filter or assign a different filter:
• To unassign the filter from the user account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_user('user1@localhost');
```

Filtering of current sessions for the account remains unaffected. Subsequent connections from the account are filtered using the default account filter if there is one, and are not logged otherwise.

• To assign a different filter to the user account:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('log_nothing', '{ "filter": { "log": false } }');
SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'log_nothing');
```

Filtering of current sessions for the account remains unaffected. Subsequent connections from the account are filtered using the new filter. For the filter shown here, that means no logging for new connections from `user1@localhost`.

For audit log filtering, user name and host name comparisons are case-sensitive. This differs from comparisons for privilege checking, for which host name comparisons are not case-sensitive.

To remove a filter, do this:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_filter('log_nothing');
```

Removing a filter also unassigns it from any users to whom it has been assigned, including any current sessions for those users.

The filtering UDFs just described affect audit filtering immediately and update the audit log tables in the `mysql` system database that store filters and user accounts (see Audit Log Tables). It is also possible to modify the audit log tables directly using statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`, but such changes do not affect filtering immediately. To flush your changes and make them operational, call `audit_log_filter_flush()`:

```sql
SELECT audit_log_filter_flush();
```

**Warning**

`audit_log_filter_flush()` should be used only after modifying the audit tables directly, to force reloading all filters. Otherwise, this function should be avoided. It is, in effect, a simplified version of unloading and reloading the `audit_log` plugin with `UNINSTALL PLUGIN` plus `INSTALL PLUGIN`.

`audit_log_filter_flush()` affects all current sessions and detaches them from their previous filters. Current sessions are no longer logged unless they disconnect and reconnect, or execute a change-user operation.

To determine whether a filter has been assigned to the current session, check the session value of the read-only `audit_log_filter_id` system variable. If the value is 0, no filter is assigned. A nonzero value indicates the internally maintained ID of the assigned filter:

```sql
mysql> SELECT @@audit_log_filter_id;
+-----------------------+
<p>| @@audit_log_filter_id |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
```

### 6.5.7 Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions

Filter definitions are JSON values. For information about using JSON data in MySQL, see The JSON Data Type.
Filter definitions have this form, where actions indicates how filtering takes place:

```
{ "filter": actions }
```

The following discussion describes permitted constructs in filter definitions.

- **Logging All Events**
- **Logging Specific Event Classes**
- **Logging Specific Event Subclasses**
- **Inclusive and Exclusive Logging**
- **Testing Event Field Values**
- **Blocking Execution of Specific Events**
- **Logical Operators**
- **Referencing Predefined Variables**
- **Referencing Predefined Functions**
- **Replacing a User Filter**

### Logging All Events

To explicitly enable or disable logging of all events, use a log element in the filter:

```
{ "filter": { "log": true } }
```

The log value can be either true or false.

The preceding filter enables logging of all events. It is equivalent to:

```
{ "filter": { } }
```

Logging behavior depends on the log value and whether class or event items are specified:

- With log specified, its given value is used.
- Without log specified, logging is true if no class or event item is specified, and false otherwise (in which case, class or event can include their own log item).

### Logging Specific Event Classes

To log events of a specific class, use a class element in the filter, with its name field denoting the name of the class to log:

```
{ "filter": { "class": { "name": "connection" } } }
```

The name value can be connection, general, or table_access to log connection, general, or table-access events, respectively.
Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions

The preceding filter enables logging of events in the `connection` class. It is equivalent to the following filter with `log` items made explicit:

```json
{  
  "filter": {  
    "log": false,  
    "class": {  
      "log": true,  
      "name": "connection"  
    }  
  } 
}
```

To enable logging of multiple classes, define the `class` value as a JSON array element that names the classes:

```json
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": [  
      { "name": "connection" },  
      { "name": "general" },  
      { "name": "table_access" }  
    ]  
  } 
}
```

**Note**

When multiple instances of a given item appear at the same level within a filter definition, the item values can be combined into a single instance of that item within an array value. The preceding definition can be written like this:

```json
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": {  
      "name": [ "connection", "general", "table_access" ]  
    }  
  } 
}
```

Logging Specific Event Subclasses

To select specific event subclasses, use an `event` item containing a `name` item that names the subclasses. The default action for events selected by an `event` item is to log them. For example, this filter enables logging for the named event subclasses:

```json
{  
  "filter": {  
    "class": [  
      { "name": "connection",  
        "event": [  
          { "name": "connect" },  
          { "name": "disconnect" }  
        ]  
      },  
      { "name": "general" },  
      { "name": "table_access",  
        "event": [  
          { "name": "insert" },  
          { "name": "delete" },  
          { "name": "update" }  
        ]  
      }  
    ]  
  } 
}
```
The `event` item can also contain explicit `log` items to indicate whether to log qualifying events. This `event` item selects multiple events and explicitly indicates logging behavior for them:

```
"event": [  
    { "name": "read", "log": false },  
    { "name": "insert", "log": true },  
    { "name": "delete", "log": true },  
    { "name": "update", "log": true }  
]
```

As of MySQL 5.7.20, the `event` item can also indicate whether to block qualifying events, if it contains an `abort` item. For details, see Blocking Execution of Specific Events.

Table 6.18, “Event Class and Subclass Combinations” describes the permitted subclass values for each event class.

Table 6.18 Event Class and Subclass Combinations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Class</th>
<th>Event Subclass</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>connect</td>
<td>Connection initiation (successful or unsuccessful)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>change_user</td>
<td>User re-authentication with different user/password during session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>disconnect</td>
<td>Connection termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>status</td>
<td>General operation information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>Table read statements, such as <code>SELECT</code> or <code>INSERT INTO ... SELECT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Table delete statements, such as <code>DELETE</code> or <code>TRUNCATE TABLE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>insert</td>
<td>Table insert statements, such as <code>INSERT</code> or <code>REPLACE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>update</td>
<td>Table update statements, such as <code>UPDATE</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.19, “Log and Abort Characteristics Per Event Class and Subclass Combination” describes for each event subclass whether it can be logged or aborted.

Table 6.19 Log and Abort Characteristics Per Event Class and Subclass Combination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Class</th>
<th>Event Subclass</th>
<th>Can be Logged</th>
<th>Can be Aborted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>connect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>change_user</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection</td>
<td>disconnect</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>general</td>
<td>status</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>delete</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>insert</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>table_access</td>
<td>update</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Inclusive and Exclusive Logging

A filter can be defined in inclusive or exclusive mode:

- Inclusive mode logs only explicitly specified items.
Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions

- Exclusive mode logs everything but explicitly specified items.

To perform inclusive logging, disable logging globally and enable logging for specific classes. This filter logs `connect` and `disconnect` events in the `connection` class, and events in the `general` class:

```
{
  "filter": {
    "log": false,
    "class": [
      {
        "name": "connection",
        "event": [
          { "name": "connect", "log": true },
          { "name": "disconnect", "log": true }
        ]
      },
      { "name": "general", "log": true }
    ]
  }
}
```

To perform exclusive logging, enable logging globally and disable logging for specific classes. This filter logs everything except events in the `general` class:

```
{
  "filter": {
    "log": true,
    "class": {
      "name": "general", "log": false
    }
  }
}
```

This filter logs `change_user` events in the `connection` class, and `table_access` events:

```
{
  "filter": {
    "log": true,
    "class": [
      {
        "name": "connection",
        "event": [
          { "name": "connect", "log": false },
          { "name": "disconnect", "log": false }
        ]
      },
      { "name": "general", "log": false }
    ]
  }
}
```

Testing Event Field Values

To enable logging based on specific event field values, specify a `field` item within the `log` item that indicates the field name and its expected value:

```
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "general",
      "event": {
        "name": "status",
        "log": {
          "field": { "name": "general_command.str", "value": "Query" }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```
Each event contains event class-specific fields that can be accessed from within a filter to perform custom filtering.

A connection event indicates when a connection-related activity occurs during a session, such as a user connecting to or disconnecting from the server. Table 6.20, “Connection Event Fields” indicates the permitted fields for connection events.

Table 6.20 Connection Event Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>status</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Event status:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0: OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Otherwise: Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection_id</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connection ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>User name specified during authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>User name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priv_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Authenticated user name (account user name)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priv_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Authenticated user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>External user name (provided by third-party authentication plugin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>External user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_user.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Proxy user name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proxy_user.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Proxy user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Connected user host</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>host.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connected user host length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Connected user IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ip.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connected user IP address length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database.str</td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Database name specified at connect time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>database.length</td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Database name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connection_type</td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Connection type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::undefined&quot;: Undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::tcp/ip&quot;: TCP/IP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::socket&quot;: Socket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::named_pipe&quot;: Named pipe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::ssl&quot;: TCP/IP with encryption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>or &quot;::shared_memory&quot;: Shared memory</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

A general event indicates the status code of an operation and its details. Table 6.21, “General Event Fields” indicates the permitted fields for general events.
## Writing Audit Log Filter Definitions

### Table 6.21 General Event Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>general_error_code</code></td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>Event status: 0: OK, Otherwise: Failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_thread_id</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connection/thread ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_user.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>User name specified during authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_user.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>User name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_command.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Command name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_command.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Command name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_query.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>SQL statement text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_query.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>SQL statement text length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_host.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Host name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_host.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Host name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_sql_command.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>SQL command type name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_sql_command.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>SQL command type name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_external_user.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>External user name (provided by third-party authentication plugin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_external_user.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>External user name length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_ip.str</code></td>
<td>string</td>
<td>Connected user IP address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>general_ip.length</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Connection user IP address length</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*general_command.str* indicates a command name: Query, Execute, Quit, or Change user.

A general event with the `general_command.str` field set to Query or Execute contains `general_sql_command.str` set to a value that specifies the type of SQL command: alter_db, alter_db_upgrade, admin_commands, and so forth. These values can be seen as the last components of the Performance Schema instruments displayed by this statement:

```
mysql> SELECT NAME FROM performance_schema.setup_instruments
WHERE NAME LIKE 'statement/sql/%' ORDER BY NAME;
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NAME</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_db</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_db_upgrade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_instance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>statement/sql/alter_server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A table-access event provides information about specific table accesses. Table 6.22, "Table-Access Event Fields" indicates the permitted fields for table-access events.

### Table 6.22 Table-Access Event Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field Name</th>
<th>Field Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>connection_id</code></td>
<td>unsigned integer</td>
<td>Event connection ID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sql_command_id</code></td>
<td>integer</td>
<td>SQL command ID</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following list shows which statements produce which table-access events:

- **read** event:
  - SELECT
  - INSERT ... SELECT (for tables referenced in SELECT clause)
  - REPLACE ... SELECT (for tables referenced in SELECT clause)
  - UPDATE ... WHERE (for tables referenced in WHERE clause)
  - HANDLER ... READ

- **delete** event:
  - DELETE
  - TRUNCATE TABLE

- **insert** event:
  - INSERT
  - INSERT ... SELECT (for table referenced in INSERT clause)
  - REPLACE
  - REPLACE ... SELECT (for table referenced in REPLACE clause)
  - LOAD DATA
  - LOAD XML

- **update** event:
  - UPDATE
  - UPDATE ... WHERE (for tables referenced in UPDATE clause)

### Blocking Execution of Specific Events

As of MySQL 5.7.20, **event** items can include an **abort** item that indicates whether to prevent qualifying events from executing. For example, **abort** enables rules to be written that block execution of specific SQL statements.

The **abort** item must appear within an **event** item. For example:

```json
"event": {
  "name": "qualifying event subclass names
  "abort": "condition"
}
```
For event subclasses selected by the name item, the abort action is true or false, depending on condition evaluation. If the condition evaluates to true, the event is blocked. Otherwise, the event continues executing.

The condition specification can be as simple as true or false, or it can be more complex such that evaluation depends on event characteristics.

This filter blocks INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE statements:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "table_access",
      "event": {
        "name": ["insert", "update", "delete"],
        "abort": true
      }
    }
  }
}
```

This more complex filter blocks the same statements, but only for a specific table finances.bank_account:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "table_access",
      "event": {
        "name": ["insert", "update", "delete"],
        "abort": {
          "and": [
            { "field": { "name": "table_database.str", "value": "finances" } },
            { "field": { "name": "table_name.str", "value": "bank_account" } }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Statements matched and blocked by the filter return an error to the client:

```
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was aborted by an audit log filter
```

Not all events can be blocked (see Table 6.19, “Log and Abort Characteristics Per Event Class and Subclass Combination”). For an event that cannot, the audit log writes a warning to the error log rather than blocking it.

For attempts to define a filter in which the abort item appears elsewhere than in an event item, an error occurs.

**Logical Operators**

Logical operators (and, or, not) can be used in log items. This permits construction of more advanced filtering configurations:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "general",
      "event": {
        "name": "status",
        "log": {
          "or": [...
```

Referencing Predefined Variables

To refer to a predefined variable in a log condition, use a variable item, which tests equality against a given value:

```json
{  "filter": {    "class": {      "name": "general",      "event": {        "name": "status",        "log": {          "variable": {            "name": "audit_log_connection_policy_value", "value": "::none"          }        }      }    }  }
}
```

Each predefined variable corresponds to a system variable. By writing a filter that tests a predefined variable, you can modify filter operation by setting the corresponding system variable, without having to redefine the filter. For example, by writing a filter that tests the value of the `audit_log_connection_policy_value` predefined variable, you can modify filter operation by changing the value of the `audit_log_connection_policy` system variable.

The `audit_log_xxx_policy` system variables are used for the legacy mode audit log (see Section 6.5.8, "Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering"). With rule-based audit log filtering, those variables remain visible (for example, using `SHOW VARIABLES`), but changes to them have no effect unless you write filters containing constructs that refer to them.

The following list describes the permitted predefined variables for variable items:

- `audit_log_connection_policy_value`

  This variable corresponds to the value of the `audit_log_connection_policy` system variable. The value is an unsigned integer. Table 6.23, "audit_log_connection_policy_value Values" shows the permitted values and the corresponding `audit_log_connection_policy` values.

Table 6.23 audit_log_connection_policy_value Values

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Corresponding audit_log_connection_policy Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or &quot;::none&quot;</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or &quot;::errors&quot;</td>
<td>ERRORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or &quot;::all&quot;</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

- **audit_log_policy_value**

  This variable corresponds to the value of the `audit_log_policy` system variable. The value is an unsigned integer. Table 6.24, "audit_log_policy_value Values" shows the permitted values and the corresponding `audit_log_policy` values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Corresponding audit_log_policy Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or &quot;::none&quot;</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or &quot;::logins&quot;</td>
<td>LOGINS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or &quot;::all&quot;</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 or &quot;::queries&quot;</td>
<td>QUERIES</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

- **audit_log_statement_policy_value**

  This variable corresponds to the value of the `audit_log_statement_policy` system variable. The value is an unsigned integer. Table 6.25, "audit_log_statement_policy_value Values" shows the permitted values and the corresponding `audit_log_statement_policy` values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Corresponding audit_log_statement_policy Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 or &quot;::none&quot;</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 or &quot;::errors&quot;</td>
<td>ERRORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 or &quot;::all&quot;</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The "::xxx" values are symbolic pseudo-constants that may be given instead of the literal numeric values. They must be quoted as strings and are case-sensitive.

### Referencing Predefined Functions

To refer to a predefined function in a log condition, use a `function` item, which takes name and args values to specify the function name and its arguments, respectively:

```json
{
  "filter": {
    "class": {
      "name": "general",
      "event": {
        "name": "status",
        "log": {
          "function": {
            "name": "find_in_include_list",
            "args": [ { "string": [ { "field": "user.str" }, { "string": "@"}, { "field": "host.str" } ] }, { "field": "host.str" } ] }
          } }
      } }
  } }
```
The function as specified in the name item should be the function name only, without parentheses or the argument list. Arguments in the args item, if there is one, must be given in the order listed in the function description. Arguments can refer to predefined variables, event fields, or string or numeric constants.

The preceding filter determines whether to log general class status events depending on whether the current user is found in the audit_log_include_accounts system variable. That user is constructed using fields in the event.

The following list describes the permitted predefined functions for function items:

- **audit_log_exclude_accounts_is_null()**
  
  Checks whether the audit_log_exclude_accounts system variable is NULL. This function can be helpful when defining filters that correspond to the legacy audit log implementation.

  Arguments:
  
  None.

- **audit_log_include_accounts_is_null()**
  
  Checks whether the audit_log_include_accounts system variable is NULL. This function can be helpful when defining filters that correspond to the legacy audit log implementation.

  Arguments:
  
  None.

- **debug_sleep(millisec)**
  
  Sleeps for the given number of milliseconds. This function is used during performance measurement. debug_sleep() is available for debug builds only.

  Arguments:
  
  - **millisec**: An unsigned integer that specifies the number of milliseconds to sleep.

- **find_in_exclude_list(account)**
  
  Checks whether an account string exists in the audit log exclude list (the value of the audit_log_exclude_accounts system variable).

  Arguments:
  
  - **account**: A string that specifies the user account name.

- **find_in_include_list(account)**
  
  Checks whether an account string exists in the audit log include list (the value of the audit_log_include_accounts system variable).

  Arguments:
  
  - **account**: A string that specifies the user account name.

- **string_find(text, substr)**
  
  Checks whether the substr value is contained in the text value. This search is case-sensitive.

  Arguments:
• **text**: The text string to search.

• **substr**: The substring to search for in **text**.

**Replacing a User Filter**

In some cases, the filter definition can be changed dynamically. To do this, define a **filter** configuration within an existing **filter**. For example:

```json
{  
  "filter": {  
    "id": "main",  
    "class": {  
      "name": "table_access",  
      "event": {  
        "name": [ "update", "delete" ],  
        "log": false,  
        "filter": {  
          "class": {  
            "name": "general",  
            "event": {  
              "name": "status",  
              "filter": { "ref": "main" } 
            } 
          },  
          "activate": {  
            "or": [  
              { "field": { "name": "table_name.str", "value": "temp_1" } },  
              { "field": { "name": "table_name.str", "value": "temp_2" } } 
            ] 
          } 
        } 
      } 
    } 
  } 
}
```

A new filter is activated when the **activate** element within a subfilter evaluates to **true**. Using **activate** in a top-level **filter** is not permitted.

A new filter can be replaced with the original one by using a **ref** item inside the subfilter to refer to the original filter **id**.

The filter shown operates like this:

• The **main** filter waits for **table_access** events, either **update** or **delete**.

• If the **update** or **delete** **table_access** event occurs on the **temp_1** or **temp_2** table, the filter is replaced with the internal one (without an **id**, since there is no need to refer to it explicitly).

• If the end of the command is signalled (**general/status** event), an entry is written to the audit log file and the filter is replaced with the **main** filter.

The filter is useful to log statements that update or delete anything from the **temp_1** or **temp_2** tables, such as this one:

```sql
UPDATE temp_1, temp_3 SET temp_1.a=21, temp_3.a=23;
```

The statement generates multiple **table_access** events, but the audit log file will contain only **general/status** entries.

**Note**

Any **id** values used in the definition are evaluated with respect only to that definition. They have nothing to do with the value of the **audit_log_filter_id** system variable.
6.5.8 Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering

Note

This section describes legacy audit log filtering, which applies under either of these circumstances:

- Before MySQL 5.7.13, that is, prior to the introduction of rule-based audit log filtering described in Section 6.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.
- As of MySQL 5.7.13, if the audit_log plugin is installed but not the accompanying audit tables and UDFs needed for rule-based filtering.

The audit log plugin can filter audited events. This enables you to control whether audited events are written to the audit log file based on the account from which events originate or event status. Status filtering occurs separately for connection events and statement events.

- Event Filtering by Account
- Event Filtering by Status

Event Filtering by Account

To filter audited events based on the originating account, set one of these system variables at server startup or runtime:

- `audit_log_include_accounts`: The accounts to include in audit logging. If this variable is set, only these accounts are audited.
- `audit_log_exclude_accounts`: The accounts to exclude from audit logging. If this variable is set, all but these accounts are audited.

The value for either variable can be `NULL` or a string containing one or more comma-separated account names, each in `user_name@host_name` format. By default, both variables are `NULL`, in which case, no account filtering is done and auditing occurs for all accounts.

Modifications to `audit_log_include_accounts` or `audit_log_exclude_accounts` affect only connections created subsequent to the modification, not existing connections.

Example: To enable audit logging only for the `user1` and `user2` local host account accounts, set the `audit_log_include_accounts` system variable like this:

```sql
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = 'user1@localhost,user2@localhost';
```

Only one of `audit_log_include_accounts` or `audit_log_exclude_accounts` can be non-`NULL` at a time:

- If you set `audit_log_include_accounts`, the server sets `audit_log_exclude_accounts` to `NULL`.
- If you attempt to set `audit_log_exclude_accounts`, an error occurs unless `audit_log_include_accounts` is `NULL`. In this case, you must first clear `audit_log_include_accounts` by setting it to `NULL`.

```sql
-- This sets audit_log_exclude_accounts to NULL
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = 'value';
-- This fails because audit_log_include_accounts is not NULL
SET GLOBAL audit_log_exclude_accounts = 'value';
-- To set audit_log_exclude_accounts, first set audit_log_include_accounts to NULL
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = NULL;
SET GLOBAL audit_log_exclude_accounts = 'value';
```
If you inspect the value of either variable, be aware that `SHOW VARIABLES` displays `NULL` as an empty string. To avoid this, use `SELECT` instead:

```sql
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'audit_log_include_accounts';
+----------------------------+-------+
| Variable_name              | Value |
+----------------------------+-------+
| audit_log_include_accounts |       |
+----------------------------+-------+
mysql>

mysql> SELECT @@audit_log_include_accounts;
+------------------------------+
| @@audit_log_include_accounts |
+------------------------------+
| NULL                         |
+------------------------------+
```

If a user name or host name requires quoting because it contains a comma, space, or other special character, quote it using single quotes. If the variable value itself is quoted with single quotes, double each inner single quote or escape it with a backslash. The following statements each enable audit logging for the local `root` account and are equivalent, even though the quoting styles differ:

```
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = 'root@localhost';
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = '''root''@''localhost''';
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = '\root\@\localhost'';
SET GLOBAL audit_log_include_accounts = '"root"@"localhost"';
```

The last statement will not work if the `ANSI_QUOTES` SQL mode is enabled because in that mode double quotes signify identifier quoting, not string quoting.

## Event Filtering by Status

To filter audited events based on status, set the following system variables at server startup or runtime. These variables apply only for legacy audit log filtering. For JSON audit log filtering, different status variables apply; see Audit Log Options and Variables.

- `audit_log_connection_policy`: Logging policy for connection events
- `audit_log_statement_policy`: Logging policy for statement events

Each variable takes a value of `ALL` (log all associated events; this is the default), `ERRORS` (log only failed events), or `NONE` (do not log events). For example, to log all statement events but only failed connection events, use these settings:

```sql
SET GLOBAL audit_log_statement_policy = ALL;
SET GLOBAL audit_log_connection_policy = ERRORS;
```

Another policy system variable, `audit_log_policy`, is available but does not afford as much control as `audit_log_connection_policy` and `audit_log_statement_policy`. It can be set only at server startup. At runtime, it is a read-only variable. It takes a value of `ALL` (log all events; this is the default), `LOGINS` (log connection events), `QUERIES` (log statement events), or `NONE` (do not log events). For any of those values, the audit log plugin logs all selected events without distinction as to success or failure. Use of `audit_log_policy` at startup works as follows:

- If you do not set `audit_log_policy` or set it to its default of `ALL`, any explicit settings for `audit_log_connection_policy` or `audit_log_statement_policy` apply as specified. If not specified, they default to `ALL`.
- If you set `audit_log_policy` to a non-`ALL` value, that value takes precedence over and is used to set `audit_log_connection_policy` or `audit_log_statement_policy`, as indicated in the following table. If you also set either of those variables to a value other than their default of `ALL`, the server writes a message to the error log to indicate that their values are being overridden.
### 6.5.9 Audit Log Reference

The following discussion serves as a reference to MySQL Enterprise Audit components:

- **Audit Log Tables**
- **Audit Log Functions**
- **Audit Log Option and Variable Reference**
- **Audit Log Options and Variables**
- **Audit Log Status Variables**

To install the audit log tables and functions, use the instructions provided in Section 6.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”. Unless those components are installed, the `audit_log` plugin operates in legacy mode. See Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

**Audit Log Tables**

MySQL Enterprise Audit uses tables in the `mysql` system database for persistent storage of filter and user account data. The tables can be accessed only by users with privileges for that database. The tables use the InnoDB storage engine (MyISAM prior to MySQL 5.7.21).

If these tables are missing, the `audit_log` plugin operates in legacy mode. See Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”.

The `audit_log_filter` table stores filter definitions. The table has these columns:

- **NAME**
  - The filter name.
- **FILTER**
  - The filter definition associated with the filter name. Definitions are stored as JSON values.

The `audit_log_user` table stores user account information. The table has these columns:

- **USER**
  - The user name part of an account. For an account `user1@localhost`, the USER part is `user1`.
- **HOST**
  - The host name part of an account. For an account `user1@localhost`, the HOST part is `localhost`.
- **FILTERNAME**
  - The name of the filter assigned to the account. The filter name associates the account with a filter defined in the `audit_log_filter` table.
Audit Log Functions

This section describes, for each audit log user-defined function (UDF), its purpose, calling sequence, and return value. For information about the conditions under which these UDFs can be invoked, see Section 6.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.

Each audit log UDF returns a string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. OK indicates success. ERROR: message indicates failure.

These audit log UDFs are available:

- **audit_log_encryption_password_get()**
  
  Retrieves the current audit log encryption password as a binary string. The password is fetched from the MySQL keyring, which must be enabled or an error occurs. Any keyring plugin can be used; for instructions, see Section 6.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

  For additional information about audit log encryption, see Audit Log File Encryption.

  Arguments:
  
  None.

  Return value:
  
  The password string for success (up to 766 bytes), or NULL and an error for failure.

  Example:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_encryption_password_get();
+-------------------------------------+
| audit_log_encryption_password_get() |
| secret                              |
+-------------------------------------+
```

- **audit_log_encryption_password_set(password)**
  
  Sets the audit log encryption password to the argument, stores the password in the MySQL keyring. If encryption is enabled, the function performs a log file rotation operation that renames the current log file, and begins a new log file encrypted with the password. The keyring must be enabled or an error occurs. Any keyring plugin can be used; for instructions, see Section 6.4, “The MySQL Keyring”.

  For additional information about audit log encryption, see Audit Log File Encryption.

  Arguments:
  
  password: The password string. The maximum permitted length is 766 bytes.

  Return value:
  
  1 for success, 0 for failure.

  Example:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_encryption_password_set(password);
+---------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_encryption_password_set(password) |
| 1                                           |
+---------------------------------------------+
• **audit_log_filter_flush()**

Calling any of the other filtering UDFs affects operational audit log filtering immediately and updates the audit log tables. If instead you modify the contents of those tables directly using statements such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `DELETE`, the changes do not affect filtering immediately. To flush your changes and make them operational, call `audit_log_filter_flush()`.

**Warning**

`audit_log_filter_flush()` should be used only after modifying the audit tables directly, to force reloading all filters. Otherwise, this function should be avoided. It is, in effect, a simplified version of unloading and reloading the `audit_log` plugin with `UNINSTALL PLUGIN` plus `INSTALL PLUGIN`.

`audit_log_filter_flush()` affects all current sessions and detaches them from their previous filters. Current sessions are no longer logged unless they disconnect and reconnect, or execute a change-user operation.

If this function fails, an error message is returned and the audit log is disabled until the next successful call to `audit_log_filter_flush()`.

Arguments:

None.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_flush();
+--------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_flush() |
| OK                       |
+--------------------------+
```

• **audit_log_filter_remove_filter(filter_name)**

Given a filter name, removes the filter from the current set of filters. It is not an error for the filter not to exist.

If a removed filter is assigned to any user accounts, those users stop being filtered (they are removed from the `audit_log_user` table). Termination of filtering includes any current sessions for those users: They are detached from the filter and no longer logged.

Arguments:

• **filter_name**: A string that specifies the filter name.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_filter('SomeFilter');
```
• `audit_log_filter_remove_user(user_name)`

Given a user account name, cause the user to be no longer assigned to a filter. It is not an error if the user has no filter assigned. Filtering of current sessions for the user remains unaffected. New connections for the user are filtered using the default account filter if there is one, and are not logged otherwise.

If the name is %, the function removes the default account filter that is used for any user account that has no explicitly assigned filter.

Arguments:

• `user_name`: The user account name as a string in `user_name@host_name` format, or % to represent the default account.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_remove_user('user1@localhost');
+-------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_remove_user('user1@localhost') |
+-------------------------------------------------+
| OK                                              |
+-------------------------------------------------+
```

• `audit_log_filter_set_filter(filter_name, definition)`

Given a filter name and definition, adds the filter to the current set of filters. If the filter already exists and is used by any current sessions, those sessions are detached from the filter and are no longer logged. This occurs because the new filter definition has a new filter ID that differs from its previous ID.

Arguments:

• `filter_name`: A string that specifies the filter name.
• `definition`: A JSON value that specifies the filter definition.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. **OK** indicates success. **ERROR: message** indicates failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SET @f = '{ "filter": { "log": false } }';
mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_set_filter('SomeFilter', @f);
+-----------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_filter_set_filter('SomeFilter', @f) |
+-----------------------------------------------+
| OK                                            |
+-----------------------------------------------+
```
- **`audit_log_filter_set_user(user_name, filter_name)`**

  Given a user account name and a filter name, assigns the filter to the user. A user can be assigned only one filter, so if the user was already assigned a filter, the assignment is replaced. Filtering of current sessions for the user remains unaffected. New connections are filtered using the new filter.

  As a special case, the name `%` represents the default account. The filter is used for connections from any user account that has no explicitly assigned filter.

  **Arguments:**
  - `user_name`: The user account name as a string in `user_name@host_name` format, or `%` to represent the default account.
  - `filter_name`: A string that specifies the filter name.

  **Return value:**
  A string that indicates whether the operation succeeded. `OK` indicates success. `ERROR: message` indicates failure.

  **Example:**
  ```sql
  mysql> SELECT audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'SomeFilter');
  +------------------------------------------------------------+
  | audit_log_filter_set_user('user1@localhost', 'SomeFilter') |
  +------------------------------------------------------------+
  | OK                                                         |
  +------------------------------------------------------------+
  ```

- **`audit_log_read([arg])`**

  Reads events from the audit log and returns a binary JSON string containing an array of audit events. If the audit log format is not JSON, an error occurs.

  Each event in the return value is a JSON hash, except that the last array element may be a JSON `null` value to indicate no following events are available to read.

  For the first call to `audit_log_read()` within a session, pass a bookmark indicating where to begin reading. If the final value of the returned array is not a JSON `null` value, there are more events following those just read and `audit_log_read()` can be called without or with a bookmark argument. Without an argument, reading continues with the next unread event. With a bookmark argument, reading continues from the bookmark.

  If the final value of the returned array is a JSON `null` value, there are no more events left to be read and the next call to `audit_log_read()` must include a bookmark argument.

  To obtain a bookmark for the most recently written event, call `audit_log_read_bookmark()`.

  For additional information about audit log-reading functions, see [Audit Log File Reading](#).

  **Arguments:**
  - `arg`: An optional bookmark, represented as a string containing a JSON hash that indicates where and how much to read. The following items are significant in the `arg` value (other items are ignored):
    - `timestamp`, `id`: The location within the audit log of the first event to read. Both items must be present to completely specify a position.
    - `max_array_length`: The maximum number of events to read from the log. If omitted, the default is to read to the end of the log or until the read buffer is full, whichever comes first.
Return value:

A binary JSON string containing an array of audit events for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark());
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_read(audit_log_read_bookmark())                             |
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| [ {"timestamp":"2018-01-15 22:41:24","id":0,"class":"connection", ... |
+-----------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

- **audit_log_read_bookmark()**

Returns a binary JSON string representing a bookmark for the most recently written audit log event. If the audit log format is not JSON, an error occurs.

The bookmark is a JSON hash with `timestamp` and `id` items indicating the event position within the audit log. It is suitable for passing to `audit_log_read()` to indicate to that function where to begin reading.

For additional information about audit log-reading functions, see Audit Log File Reading.

Arguments:

None.

Return value:

A binary JSON string containing a bookmark for success, or NULL and an error for failure.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT audit_log_read_bookmark();
+-------------------------------------------------+
| audit_log_read_bookmark()                       |
+-------------------------------------------------+
| { "timestamp": "2018-01-15 21:03:44", "id": 0 } |
+-------------------------------------------------+
```

Audit Log Option and Variable Reference

**Table 6.26 Audit Log Option and Variable Reference**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dyn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit-log</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_buffer_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_compression</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_connection_policy</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_current_session</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Audit log_current_size</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_current_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Audit log_current_size</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_encryption</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_event_max_drop_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Audit_log_event_max_drop_size</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Audit_log_events</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events_filtered</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Audit_log_events_filtered</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events_lost</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Audit_log_events_lost</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Audit Log Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Cmd-Line</th>
<th>Option File</th>
<th>System Var</th>
<th>Status Var</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Var Scope</th>
<th>Dynamic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_events_written</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_exclude_accounts</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_file</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_filter_id</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>No</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_flush</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_format</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_include_accounts</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_policy</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_read_buffer</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_rotate_on_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_statement_policy</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_strategy</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_total_size</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Audit_log_write_waits</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Audit Log Options and Variables

This section describes the command options and system variables that configure operation of MySQL Enterprise Audit. If values specified at startup time are incorrect, the `audit_log` plugin may fail to initialize properly and the server does not load it. In this case, the server may also produce error messages for other audit log settings because it will not recognize them.

To configure activation of the audit log plugin, use this option:

- `--audit-log[=value]`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log[=value]</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ON, OFF, FORCE, FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This option controls how the server loads the `audit_log` plugin at startup. It is available only if the plugin has been previously registered with `INSTALL PLUGIN` or is loaded with `--plugin-load` or `--plugin-load-add`. See Section 6.5.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Audit”.

The option value should be one of those available for plugin-loading options, as described in `Installing and Uninstalling Plugins`. For example, `--audit-log=FORCE_PLUS_PERMANENT` tells the server to load the plugin and prevent it from being removed while the server is running.

If the audit log plugin is enabled, it exposes several system variables that permit control over logging:

```sql
mysql> SHOW VARIABLES LIKE 'audit_log%';
+---------------------------------+----------+
| Variable                        | Value    |
+---------------------------------+----------+
```

---

272
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable_name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_buffer_size</td>
<td>1048576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_connection_policy</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_current_session</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_exclude_accounts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_file</td>
<td>audit.log</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_filter_id</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_flush</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_format</td>
<td>NEW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_include_accounts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_policy</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_rotate_on_size</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_statement_policy</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit_log_strategy</td>
<td>ASYNCHRONOUS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

You can set any of these variables at server startup, and some of them at runtime. Those that are available only for legacy mode audit log filtering are so noted.

- **audit_log_buffer_size**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--audit-log-buffer-size=#</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>audit_log_buffer_size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>1048576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Value</td>
<td>4096</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value (64-bit platforms)</td>
<td>18446744073709547520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Value (32-bit platforms)</td>
<td>4294967295</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the audit log plugin writes events to the log asynchronously, it uses a buffer to store event contents prior to writing them. This variable controls the size of that buffer, in bytes. The server adjusts the value to a multiple of 4096. The plugin uses a single buffer, which it allocates when it initializes and removes when it terminates. The plugin allocates this buffer only if logging is asynchronous.

- **audit_log_compression**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>--audit-log-compression=value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td>audit_log_compression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>NONE, GZIP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The type of compression for the audit log file. Permitted values are NONE (no compression; the default) and GZIP (GNU Zip compression). For more information, see Audit Log File Compression.

- **audit_log_connection_policy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-connection-policy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_connection_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ALL, ERRORS, NONE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”).

The policy controlling how the audit log plugin writes connection events to its log file. The following table shows the permitted values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Log all connection events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERRORS</td>
<td>Log only failed connection events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>Do not log connection events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

At server startup, any explicit value given for `audit_log_connection_policy` may be overridden if `audit_log_policy` is also specified, as described in Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”.

- **audit_log_current_session**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_current_session</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global, Session</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>depends on filtering policy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Whether audit logging is enabled for the current session. The session value of this variable is read only. It is set when the session begins based on the values of the `audit_log_include_accounts` and `audit_log_exclude_accounts` system variables. The audit log plugin uses the session
value to determine whether to audit events for the session. (There is a global value, but the plugin
does not use it.)

- **audit_log_encryption**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-encryption=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_encryption</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>NONE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td><code>NONE</code>, <code>AES</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The type of encryption for the audit log file. Permitted values are `NONE` (no encryption; the default) and `AES` (AES-256-CBC cipher encryption). For more information, see [Audit Log File Encryption](#).

- **audit_log_exclude_accounts**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-exclude-accounts=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_exclude_accounts</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>String</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>NULL</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
---
This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”).

The accounts for which events should not be logged. The value should be `NULL` or a string containing a list of one or more comma-separated account names. For more information, see Section 6.5.6, “Audit Log Filtering”.

Modifications to `audit_log_exclude_accounts` affect only connections created subsequent to the modification, not existing connections.

- **audit_log_file**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-file=file_name</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_file</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The base name and suffix of the file to which the audit log plugin writes events. The default value is `audit.log`, regardless of logging format. To have the name suffix correspond to the format, set the name explicitly, choosing a different suffix (for example, `audit.xml` for XML format, `audit.json` for JSON format).

If the value of `audit_log_file` is a relative path name, the plugin interprets it relative to the data directory. If the value is a full path name, the plugin uses the value as is. A full path name may be useful if it is desirable to locate audit files on a separate file system or directory. For security reasons, write the audit log file to a directory accessible only to the MySQL server and to users with a legitimate reason to view the log.

For details about how the audit log plugin interprets the `audit_log_file` value and the rules for file renaming that occurs at plugin initialization and termination, see Audit Log File Name.

As of MySQL 5.7.21, the audit log plugin uses the directory containing the audit log file (determined from the `audit_log_file` value) as the location to search for readable audit log files. From these log files and the current file, the plugin constructs a list of the ones that are subject to use with the audit log bookmarking and reading functions. See Audit Log File Reading.

- **audit_log_filter_id**

- **audit_log_flush**

- **audit_log_format**
### Command-Line Format

**--audit-log-format=value**

#### Introduced

5.7.9

#### System Variable

**audit_log_format**

#### Scope

Global

#### Dynamic

No

#### Type

Enumeration

#### Default Value

NEW

#### Valid Values (>= 5.7.21)

OLD

NEW

JSON

#### Valid Values (>= 5.7.9, <= 5.7.20)

OLD

NEW

The audit log file format. Permitted values are **OLD** (old-style XML), **NEW** (new-style XML; the default), and (as of MySQL 5.7.21) **JSON**. For details about each format, see Section 6.5.4, "Audit Log File Formats".

**Note**

For information about issues to consider when changing the log format, see Audit Log File Format.

- **audit_log_include_accounts**

### Command-Line Format

**--audit-log-include-accounts=value**

#### Introduced

5.7.9

#### System Variable

**audit_log_include_accounts**

#### Scope

Global

#### Dynamic

Yes

#### Type

String

#### Default Value

NULL

**Note**

This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 6.5.8, "Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering").

The accounts for which events should be logged. The value should be **NULL** or a string containing a list of one or more comma-separated account names. For more information, see Section 6.5.6, "Audit Log Filtering".

Modifications to **audit_log_include_accounts** affect only connections created subsequent to the modification, not existing connections.

- **audit_log_policy**
The policy controlling how the audit log plugin writes events to its log file. The following table shows the permitted values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Log all events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOGINS</td>
<td>Log only login events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUERIES</td>
<td>Log only query events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>Log nothing (disable the audit stream)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`audit_log_policy` can be set only at server startup. At runtime, it is a read-only variable. Two other system variables, `audit_log_connection_policy` and `audit_log_statement_policy`, provide finer control over logging policy and can be set either at startup or at runtime. If you use `audit_log_policy` at startup instead of the other two variables, the server uses its value to set those variables. For more information about the policy variables and their interaction, see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”.

- `audit_log_read_buffer_size`
The buffer size for reading from the audit log file, in bytes. The `audit_log_read()` function reads no more than this many bytes. Log file reading is supported only for JSON log format. For more information, see Audit Log File Reading.

As of MySQL 5.7.23, this variable has a default of 32KB and can be set at runtime. Each client should set its session value of `audit_log_read_buffer_size` appropriately for its use of `audit_log_read()`. Prior to MySQL 5.7.23, `audit_log_read_buffer_size` has a default of 1MB, affects all clients, and can be changed only at server startup.

- `audit_log_rotate_on_size`

If the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value is 0, the audit log plugin does not perform automatic log file rotation. Instead, use `audit_log_flush` to close and reopen the log on demand. In this case, manually rename the file externally to the server before flushing it.

If the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value is greater than 0, automatic size-based log file rotation occurs. Whenever a write to the log file causes its size to exceed the `audit_log_rotate_on_size` value, the audit log plugin closes the current log file, renames it, and opens a new log file.

For more information about audit log file rotation, see Audit Log File Space Management and Name Rotation.

If you set this variable to a value that is not a multiple of 4096, it is truncated to the nearest multiple. (Thus, setting it to a value less than 4096 has the effect of setting it to 0 and no rotation occurs, except manually.)

- `audit_log_statement_policy`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-statement-policy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_statement_policy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td><code>ALL</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Audit Log Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ALL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ERRORS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NONE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Note
This variable applies only to legacy mode audit log filtering (see Section 6.5.8, “Legacy Mode Audit Log Filtering”).

The policy controlling how the audit log plugin writes statement events to its log file. The following table shows the permitted values.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALL</td>
<td>Log all statement events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERRORS</td>
<td>Log only failed statement events</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>Do not log statement events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Note
At server startup, any explicit value given for `audit_log_statement_policy` may be overridden if `audit_log_policy` is also specified, as described in Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”.

- `audit_log_strategy`

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td><code>--audit-log-strategy=value</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>audit_log_strategy</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Enumeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ASYNCHRONOUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Values</td>
<td>ASYNCHRONOUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PERFORMANCE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SEMISYNCHRONOUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYNCHRONOUS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The logging method used by the audit log plugin. These strategy values are permitted:

- **ASYNCHRONOUS**: Log asynchronously. Wait for space in the output buffer.
- **PERFORMANCE**: Log asynchronously. Drop requests for which there is insufficient space in the output buffer.
- **SEMISYNCHRONOUS**: Log synchronously. Permit caching by the operating system.
- **SYNCHRONOUS**: Log synchronously. Call `sync()` after each request.
Audit Log Status Variables

If the audit log plugin is enabled, it exposes several status variables that provide operational information. These variables are available for legacy mode audit filtering and JSON mode audit filtering.

- **Audit_log_current_size**
  
The size of the current audit log file. The value increases when an event is written to the log and is reset to 0 when the log is rotated.

- **Audit_log_event_max_drop_size**
  
The size of the largest dropped event in performance logging mode. For a description of logging modes, see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”.

- **Audit_log_events**
  
The number of events handled by the audit log plugin, whether or not they were written to the log based on filtering policy (see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”).

- **Audit_log_events_filtered**
  
The number of events handled by the audit log plugin that were filtered (not written to the log) based on filtering policy (see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”).

- **Audit_log_events_lost**
  
The number of events lost in performance logging mode because an event was larger than the available audit log buffer space. This value may be useful for assessing how to set `audit_log_buffer_size` to size the buffer for performance mode. For a description of logging modes, see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”.

- **Audit_log_events_written**
  
The number of events written to the audit log.

- **Audit_log_total_size**
  
The total size of events written to all audit log files. Unlike `Audit_log_current_size`, the value of `Audit_log_total_size` increases even when the log is rotated.

- **Audit_log_write_waits**
  
The number of times an event had to wait for space in the audit log buffer in asynchronous logging mode. For a description of logging modes, see Section 6.5.5, “Audit Log Logging Configuration”.

### 6.5.10 Audit Log Restrictions

MySQL Enterprise Audit is subject to these general restrictions:

- Only SQL statements are logged. Changes made by no-SQL APIs, such as memcached, Node.JS, and the NDB API, are not logged.

- Only top-level statements are logged, not statements within stored programs such as triggers or stored procedures.

- Contents of files referenced by statements such as `LOAD DATA` are not logged.

- Prior to MySQL 5.7.21, MySQL Enterprise Audit uses `MyISAM` tables in the `mysql` system database. Group Replication does not support `MyISAM` tables. Consequently, MySQL Enterprise Audit and Group Replication cannot be used together.
NDB Cluster. It is possible to use MySQL Enterprise Audit with MySQL NDB Cluster, subject to the following conditions:

- All changes to be logged must be done using the SQL interface. Changes using no-SQL interfaces, such as those provided by the NDB API, memcached, or ClusterJ, are not logged.
- The plugin must be installed on each MySQL server that is used to execute SQL on the cluster.
- Audit plugin data must be aggregated amongst all MySQL servers used with the cluster. This aggregation is the responsibility of the application or user.

### 6.6 MySQL Enterprise Firewall

**Note**

MySQL Enterprise Firewall is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, see [https://www.mysql.com/products/](https://www.mysql.com/products/).

MySQL Enterprise Edition includes MySQL Enterprise Firewall, an application-level firewall that enables database administrators to permit or deny SQL statement execution based on matching against whitelists of accepted statement patterns. This helps harden MySQL Server against attacks such as SQL injection or attempts to exploit applications by using them outside of their legitimate query workload characteristics.

Each MySQL account registered with the firewall has its own statement whitelist, enabling protection to be tailored per account. For a given account, the firewall can operate in recording, protecting, or detecting mode, for training in the accepted statement patterns, active protection against unacceptable statements, or passive detection of unacceptable statements. The diagram illustrates how the firewall processes incoming statements in each mode.

**Figure 6.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Operation**

![MySQL Enterprise Firewall Diagram](image)

The following sections describe the components of MySQL Enterprise Firewall, discuss how to install and use it, and provide reference information for its components.
### 6.6.1 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components

MySQL Enterprise Firewall is based on a plugin library that implements these components:

- A server-side plugin named `MYSQL_FIREWALL` examines SQL statements before they execute and, based on its in-memory cache, renders a decision whether to execute or reject each statement.

- Server-side plugins named `MYSQL_FIREWALL_USERS` and `MYSQL_FIREWALL_WHITELIST` implement `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` tables that provide views into the firewall data cache.

- System tables named `firewall_users` and `firewall_whitelist` in the `mysql` database provide persistent storage of firewall data.

- Stored procedures named `sp_set_firewall_mode()` and `sp_reload_firewall_rules()` perform tasks such as registering MySQL accounts with the firewall, establishing their operational mode, and managing transfer of firewall data between the cache and the underlying system tables.

- A set of user-defined functions provides an SQL-level API for lower-level tasks such as synchronizing the cache with the underlying system tables.

- System variables enable firewall configuration and status variables provide runtime operational information.

### 6.6.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall

MySQL Enterprise Firewall installation is a one-time operation that installs the components described in Section 6.6.1, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Components”. Installation can be performed using a graphical interface or manually:

- On Windows, MySQL Installer includes an option to enable MySQL Enterprise Firewall for you.

- MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher can install MySQL Enterprise Firewall, enable or disable an installed firewall, or uninstall the firewall.

- Manual MySQL Enterprise Firewall installation involves running a script located in the `share` directory of your MySQL installation.

---

**Important**

Read this entire section before following its instructions. Parts of the procedure differ depending on your environment.

**Note**

If installed, MySQL Enterprise Firewall involves some minimal overhead even when disabled. To avoid this overhead, do not install the firewall unless you plan to use it.

**Note**

MySQL Enterprise Firewall does not work together with the query cache. If the query cache is enabled, disable it before installing the firewall (see Query Cache Configuration).

For usage instructions, see Section 6.6.3, “Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall”. For reference information, see Section 6.6.4, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference”.

- Installing MySQL Enterprise Firewall
- Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall
Installing MySQL Enterprise Firewall

If MySQL Enterprise Firewall is already installed from an older version of MySQL, uninstall it using the instructions given later in this section and then restart your server before installing the current version. In this case, it is also necessary to register your configuration again.

On Windows, you can use MySQL Installer to install MySQL Enterprise Firewall, as shown in Figure 6.2, “MySQL Enterprise Firewall Installation on Windows”. Check the Enable Enterprise Firewall checkbox. (Open Firewall port for network access has a different purpose. It refers to Windows Firewall and controls whether Windows blocks the TCP/IP port on which the MySQL server listens for client connections.)

Figure 6.2 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Installation on Windows

To install MySQL Enterprise Firewall using MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher, see MySQL Enterprise Firewall Interface.

To install MySQL Enterprise Firewall manually, look in the share directory of your MySQL installation and choose the script that is appropriate for your platform. The available scripts differ in the suffix used to refer to the plugin library file:

- `win_install_firewall.sql`: Choose this script for Windows systems that use .dll as the file name suffix.
- `linux_install_firewall.sql`: Choose this script for Linux and similar systems that use .so as the file name suffix.

The installation script creates stored procedures in the default database, so choose a database to use. Then run the script as follows, naming the chosen database on the command line. The example here
uses the **mysql** database and the Linux installation script. Make the appropriate substitutions for your system.

```shell
mysqldump -u root -p mysql < linux_install_firewall.sql
Enter password: (enter root password here)
```

**Note**

As of MySQL 5.7.21, for a new installation of MySQL Enterprise Firewall, **InnoDB** is used instead of **MyISAM** for the firewall tables. For upgrades to 5.7.21 or higher of an installation for which MySQL Enterprise Firewall is already installed, it is recommended that you alter the firewall tables to use **InnoDB**:

```sql
ALTER TABLE mysql.firewall_users ENGINE=InnoDB;
ALTER TABLE mysql.firewall_whitelist ENGINE=InnoDB;
```

**Note**

To use MySQL Enterprise Firewall in the context of master/slave replication, Group Replication, or InnoDB cluster, you must use MySQL 5.7.21 or higher, and ensure that the firewall tables use **InnoDB** as just described. Then you must prepare the slave or secondary nodes prior to running the installation script on the master or primary node. This is necessary because the **INSTALL PLUGIN** statements in the script are not replicated.

1. On each slave or secondary node, extract the **INSTALL PLUGIN** statements from the installation script and execute them manually.
2. On the master or primary node, run the installation script as described previously.

Installing MySQL Enterprise Firewall either using a graphical interface or manually should enable the firewall. To verify that, connect to the server and execute this statement:

```sql
SHOW GLOBAL VARIABLES LIKE 'mysql_firewall_mode';
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable_name</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mysql_firewall_mode</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the plugin failed to initialize, check the server error log for diagnostic messages.

### Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall

MySQL Enterprise Firewall can be uninstalled using MySQL Workbench or manually.

To uninstall MySQL Enterprise Firewall using MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher, see [MySQL Enterprise Firewall Interface](#).

To uninstall MySQL Enterprise Firewall manually, execute the following statements. It is assumed that the stored procedures were created in the **mysql** database. Adjust the **DROP PROCEDURE** statements appropriately if the procedures were created in a different database:

```sql
DROP TABLE mysql.firewall_whitelist;
DROP TABLE mysql.firewall_users;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_firewall;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_firewall_whitelist;
UNINSTALL PLUGIN mysql_firewall_users;
```
6.6.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall

Before using MySQL Enterprise Firewall, install it according to the instructions provided in Section 6.6.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall”. Also, MySQL Enterprise Firewall does not work together with the query cache; disable the query cache if it is enabled (see Query Cache Configuration).

This section describes how to configure MySQL Enterprise Firewall using SQL statements. Alternatively, MySQL Workbench 6.3.4 or higher provides a graphical interface for firewall control. See MySQL Enterprise Firewall Interface.

To enable or disable the firewall, set the `mysql_firewall_mode` system variable. By default, this variable is enabled when the firewall is installed. To control the initial firewall state explicitly, you can set the variable at server startup. For example, to enable the firewall in an option file, use these lines:

```sql
[mysqld]
mysql_firewall_mode=ON
```

It is also possible to disable or enable the firewall at runtime:

```sql
mysql> SET GLOBAL mysql_firewall_mode = OFF;
mysql> SET GLOBAL mysql_firewall_mode = ON;
```

In addition to the global on/off firewall mode, each account registered with the firewall has its own operational mode. For an account in recording mode, the firewall learns an application’s “fingerprint,” that is, the acceptable statement patterns that, taken together, form a whitelist. After training, switch the firewall to protecting mode to harden MySQL against access by statements that deviate from the fingerprint. For additional training, switch the firewall back to recording mode as necessary to update the whitelist with new statement patterns. An intrusion-detection mode is available that writes suspicious statements to the error log but does not deny access.

The firewall maintains whitelist rules on a per-account basis, enabling implementation of protection strategies such as these:

- For an application that has unique protection requirements, configure it to use an account that is not used for any other purpose.
- For applications that are related and share protection requirements, configure them as a group to use the same account.

Firewall operation is based on conversion of SQL statements to normalized digest form. Firewall digests are like the statement digests used by the Performance Schema (see Performance Schema Statement Digests). However, unlike the Performance Schema, the relevant digest-related system variable is `max_digest_length`.

For a connection from a registered account, the firewall converts each incoming statement to normalized form and processes it according to the account mode:

- In recording mode, the firewall adds the normalized statement to the account whitelist rules.
- In protecting mode, the firewall compares the normalized statement to the account whitelist rules. If there is a match, the statement passes and the server continues to process it. Otherwise, the server
rejects the statement and returns an error to the client. The firewall also writes the rejected statement to the error log if the `mysql_firewall_trace` system variable is enabled.

- In detecting mode, the firewall matches statements as in protecting mode, but writes nonmatching statements to the error log without denying access.

Accounts that have a mode of `OFF` or are not registered with the firewall are ignored by it.

To protect an account using MySQL Enterprise Firewall, follow these steps:

1. Register the account and put it in recording mode.
2. Connect to the MySQL server using the registered account and execute statements to be learned. This establishes the account’s whitelist of accepted statements.
3. Switch the registered account to protecting mode.

The following example shows how to register an account with the firewall, use the firewall to learn acceptable statements for that account, and protect the account against execution of unacceptable statements. The example account, `'fwuser'@'localhost'`, is for use by an application that accesses tables in the `sakila` database. (This database is available at https://dev.mysql.com/doc/index-other.html.)

```
1. If necessary, create the account to be protected (choose an appropriate password) and grant it privileges for the `sakila` database:
   mysql> CREATE USER 'fwuser'@'localhost' IDENTIFIED BY 'fWp83sw0rd';
   mysql> GRANT ALL ON sakila.* TO 'fwuser'@'localhost';

2. Use the `sp_set_firewall_mode()` stored procedure to register the account with the firewall and place it in recording mode (if the procedure is located in a database other than `mysql`, adjust the statement accordingly):
   mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING');
```

```
During the course of its execution, the stored procedure invokes firewall user-defined functions, which may produce output of their own.
```

```
3. Using the registered account, connect to the server, then execute some statements that are legitimate for it:
   mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 1;
   mysql> UPDATE rental SET return_date = NOW() WHERE rental_id = 1;
   mysql> SELECT get_customer_balance(1, NOW());
```

The firewall converts the statements to digest form and records them in the account whitelist.
Using MySQL Enterprise Firewall

Note

Until the account executes statements in recording mode, its whitelist is empty, which is equivalent to “deny all.” If switched to protecting mode, the account will be effectively prohibited from executing statements.

4. At this point, the user and whitelist information is cached and can be seen in the firewall
INFORMATION_SCHEMA tables:

```
mysql> SELECT MODE FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_USERS
       WHERE USERHOST = 'fwuser@localhost';
+-----------+
| MODE      |
+-----------+
| RECORDING |
+-----------+
mysql>
```

```
mysql> SELECT RULE FROM INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_WHITELIST
       WHERE USERHOST = 'fwuser@localhost';
+----------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RULE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SELECT <code>first_name</code> , <code>last_name</code> FROM <code>customer</code> WHERE <code>customer_id</code> = ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT <code>get_customer_balance</code> ( ? , NOW ( ) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPDATE <code>rental</code> SET <code>return_date</code> = NOW ( ) WHERE <code>rental_id</code> = ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SELECT @@<code>version_comment</code> LIMIT ?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+----------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

Note

The `@@version_comment` rule comes from a statement sent automatically by the `mysql` client when you connect to the server as the registered user.

It is important to train the firewall under conditions matching application use. For example, a given MySQL connector might send statements to the server at the beginning of a connection to determine server characteristics and capabilities. If an application normally is used through that connector, train the firewall that way, too. That enables those initial statements to become part of the whitelist for the account associated with the application.

5. Use the stored procedure to switch the registered user to protecting mode:

```
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'PROTECTING');
```

Important

Switching the account out of RECORDING mode synchronizes its firewall cache data to the underlying `mysql` system database tables for persistent storage. If you do not switch the mode for a user who is being recorded, the cached whitelist data is not written to the system tables and will be lost when the server is restarted.

6. Using the registered account, execute some acceptable and unacceptable statements. The firewall matches each one against the account whitelist and accepts or rejects it.

This statement is not identical to a training statement but produces the same normalized statement as one of them, so the firewall accepts it:

```
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer WHERE customer_id = '48';
+------------+-----------+
| first_name | last_name |
|------------+-----------|
| ANN        | EVANS     |
```
These statements do not match anything in the whitelist and each results in an error:

```sql
mysql> SELECT first_name, last_name FROM customer WHERE customer_id = 1 OR TRUE;
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was blocked by Firewall
```

```sql
mysql> SHOW TABLES LIKE 'customer%';
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was blocked by Firewall
```

```sql
mysql> TRUNCATE TABLE mysql.slow_log;
ERROR 1045 (28000): Statement was blocked by Firewall
```

The firewall also writes the rejected statements to the error log if the `mysql_firewall_trace` system variable is enabled. For example:

```sql
[Note] Plugin MYSQL_FIREWALL reported:
'ACCESS DENIED for fwuser@localhost. Reason: No match in whitelist.
Statement: TRUNCATE TABLE `mysql` . `slow_log` '
```

You can use these log messages in your efforts to identify the source of attacks.

7. You can log nonmatching statements as suspicious without denying access. To do this, put the account in intrusion-detecting mode:

```sql
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'DETECTING');
```

8. Using the registered account, connect to the server, then execute a statement that does not match the whitelist:

```sql
mysql> SHOW TABLES LIKE 'customer%';
+------------------------------+
| Tables_in_sakila (customer%) |
+------------------------------+
| customer                     |
| customer_list                |
+------------------------------+
```

In detecting mode, the firewall permits the nonmatching statement to execute but writes a message to the error log:

```sql
[Note] Plugin MYSQL_FIREWALL reported:
'SUSPICIOUS STATEMENT from 'fwuser@localhost'. Reason: No match in whitelist.
Statement: SHOW TABLES LIKE ? '
```

**Note**

Detection mode writes messages as Notes, which are information messages. To ensure that such messages appear in the error log and are not discarded, make sure that the `log_error_verbosity` system variable is set to a value of 3.

9. To assess firewall activity, examine its status variables:

```sql
mysql> SHOW GLOBAL STATUS LIKE 'Firewall%';
+--------------------+-------+
| Variable_name      | Value |
+--------------------+-------+
| Firewall_access_denied | 3     |
| Firewall_access_granted  | 4     |
| Firewall_access_suspicious   | 1     |
| Firewall_cached_entries | 4     |
+--------------------+-------+
The variables indicate the number of statements rejected, accepted, logged as suspicious, and added to the cache, respectively. The `Firewall_access_granted` count is 4 because of the `@@version_comment` statement sent by the `mysql` client each of the three time you used it to connect as the registered user, plus the `SHOW TABLES` statement that was not blocked in `DETECTING` mode.

Should additional training for an account be necessary, switch it to recording mode again, then back to protecting mode after executing statements to be added to the whitelist.

### 6.6.4 MySQL Enterprise Firewall Reference

The following discussion serves as a reference to MySQL Enterprise Firewall components:

- MySQL Enterprise Firewall Tables
- MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions
- MySQL Enterprise Firewall System Variables
- MySQL Enterprise Firewall Status Variables

#### MySQL Enterprise Firewall Tables

MySQL Enterprise Firewall maintains account and whitelist information. It uses `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` tables to provide views into cached data, and tables in the `mysql` system database to store this data in persistent form. When enabled, the firewall bases its operational decisions on the cached data.

The `INFORMATION_SCHEMA` tables are accessible by anyone. The `mysql` tables can be accessed only by users with privileges for that database.

The `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_USERS` and `mysql.firewall_users` tables list registered firewall accounts and their operational modes. The tables have these columns:

- **USERHOST**
  
  An account registered with the firewall. Each account has the format `user_name@host_name` and represents actual user and host names as authenticated by the server. Patterns and netmasks should not be used when registering users.

- **MODE**
  
  The current firewall operational mode for the account. The permitted mode values are `OFF`, `DETECTING`, `PROTECTING`, `RECORDING`, and `RESET`. For details about their meanings, see the description of `sp_set_firewall_mode()` in MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions.

The `INFORMATION_SCHEMA.MYSQL_FIREWALL_WHITELIST` and `mysql.firewall_whitelist` tables list registered firewall accounts and their whitelists. The tables have these columns:

- **USERHOST**
  
  An account registered with the firewall. The format is the same as for the user account tables.

- **RULE**
  
  A normalized statement indicating an acceptable statement pattern for the account. An account whitelist is the union of its rules.

- **ID**
  
  An integer column that is a primary key for the table. This column was added in MySQL 5.7.23.
MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions

MySQL Enterprise Firewall has stored procedures that perform tasks such as registering MySQL accounts with the firewall, establishing their operational mode, and managing transfer of firewall data between the cache and the underlying system tables. It also has a set of user-defined functions (UDFs) that provides an SQL-level API for lower-level tasks such as synchronizing the cache with the underlying system tables.

Under normal operation, the stored procedures implement the user interface. The UDFs are invoked by the stored procedures, not directly by users.

To invoke a stored procedure when the default database is not the database that contains the procedure, qualify the procedure name with the database name. For example:

```sql
CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('user', 'mode');
```

The following list describes each firewall stored procedure and UDF:

- **sp_reload_firewall_rules(user)**

  This stored procedure uses firewall UDFs to reset a registered account and reload the in-memory rules for it from the rules stored in the `mysql.firewall_whitelist` table. This procedure provides control over firewall operation for individual accounts.

  The `user` argument names the affected account, as a string in `user_name@host_name` format.

  Example:

  ```sql
  CALL mysql.sp_reload_firewall_rules('fwuser@localhost');
  ```

  **Warning**

  This procedure sets the account mode to **RESET**, which clears the account whitelist and sets its mode to **OFF**. If the account mode was not **OFF** prior to the `sp_reload_firewall_rules()` call, use `sp_set_firewall_mode()` to restore its previous mode after reloading the rules. For example, if the account was in **PROTECTING** mode, that is no longer true after calling `sp_reload_firewall_rules()` and you must set it to **PROTECTING** again explicitly.

- **sp_set_firewall_mode(user, mode)**

  This stored procedure registers a MySQL account with the firewall and establishes its operational mode. The procedure also invokes firewall UDFs as necessary to transfer firewall data between the cache and the underlying system tables. This procedure may be called even if the `mysql_firewall_mode` system variable is **OFF**, although setting the mode for an account has no operational effect while the firewall is disabled.

  The `user` argument names the affected account, as a string in `user_name@host_name` format.

  The `mode` is the operational mode for the user, as a string. These mode values are permitted:

  - **OFF**: Disable the firewall for the account.
  - **DETECTING**: Intrusion-detection mode: Write suspicious (nonmatching) statements to the error log but do not deny access.
  - **PROTECTING**: Protect the account by matching incoming statements against the account whitelist.
**RECORDING**: Training mode: Record acceptable statements for the account. Incoming statements that do not immediately fail with a syntax error are recorded to become part of the account whitelist rules.

**RESET**: Clear the account whitelist and set the account mode to **OFF**.

Switching the mode for an account to any mode but **RECORDING** synchronizes the firewall cache data to the underlying **mysql** system database tables for persistent storage. Switching the mode from **OFF** to **RECORDING** reloads the whitelist from the **mysql.firewall_whitelist** table into the cache.

If an account has an empty whitelist, setting its mode to **PROTECTING** produces an error message that is returned in a result set, but not an SQL error:

```sql
mysql> CALL mysql.sp_set_firewall_mode('a@b','PROTECTING');
+----------------------------------------------------------------------+
| set_firewall_mode(arg_userhost, arg_mode)                            |
| ERROR: PROTECTING mode requested for a@b but the whitelist is empty. |
+----------------------------------------------------------------------+
1 row in set (0.02 sec)
Query OK, 0 rows affected (0.02 sec)
```

**mysql_firewall_flush_status()**

This UDF resets several firewall status variables to 0:

- **Firewall_access_denied**
- **Firewall_access_granted**
- **Firewall_access_suspicious**

Example:

```sql
SELECT mysql_firewall_flush_status();
```

**normalize_statement(stmt)**

This UDF normalizes an SQL statement into the digest form used for whitelist rules.

Example:

```sql
SELECT normalize_statement('SELECT * FROM t1 WHERE c1 > 2');
```

**read_firewall_users(user, mode)**

This aggregate UDF updates the firewall user cache through a **SELECT** statement on the **mysql.firewall_users** table.

Example:

```sql
SELECT read_firewall_users('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING')
FROM mysql.firewall_users;
```

**read_firewall_whitelist(user, rule)**

This aggregate UDF updates the recorded statement cache through a **SELECT** statement on the **mysql.firewall_whitelist** table.

Example:
```
SELECT read_firewall_whitelist('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING')
FROM mysql.firewall_whitelist;
```

- **set_firewall_mode**(user, mode)

  This UDF manages the user cache and establishes the user operational mode.

  Example:
  ```
  SELECT set_firewall_mode('fwuser@localhost', 'RECORDING');
  ```

### MySQL Enterprise Firewall System Variables

MySQL Enterprise Firewall supports the following system variables. Use them to configure firewall operation. These variables are unavailable unless the firewall is installed (see Section 6.6.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall”).

- **mysql_firewall_mode**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>`--mysql-firewall-mode=[OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>mysql_firewall_mode</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  Whether MySQL Enterprise Firewall is enabled (the default) or disabled.

- **mysql_firewall_trace**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Property</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-Line Format</td>
<td>`--mysql-firewall-trace=[OFF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduced</td>
<td>5.7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System Variable</td>
<td><code>mysql_firewall_trace</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scope</td>
<td>Global</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Boolean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>OFF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

  Whether the MySQL Enterprise Firewall trace is enabled or disabled (the default). When `mysql_firewall_trace` is enabled, for PROTECTING mode, the firewall writes rejected statements to the error log.

### MySQL Enterprise Firewall Status Variables

MySQL Enterprise Firewall supports the following status variables. Use them to obtain information about firewall operational status. These variables are unavailable unless the firewall is installed (see Section 6.6.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Firewall”). Firewall status variables are set to 0 whenever the `MYSQL_FIREWALL` plugin is installed or the server is started. Many of them are reset to zero by the `mysql_firewall_flush_status()` UDF (see MySQL Enterprise Firewall Procedures and Functions).
MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

- **Firewall_access_denied**
  The number of statements rejected by MySQL Enterprise Firewall.

- **Firewall_access_granted**
  The number of statements accepted by MySQL Enterprise Firewall.

- **Firewall_access_suspicious**
  The number of statements logged by MySQL Enterprise Firewall as suspicious for users who are in DETECTING mode.

- **Firewall_cached_entries**
  The number of statements recorded by MySQL Enterprise Firewall, including duplicates.

### 6.7 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

**Note**

MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification is an extension included in MySQL Enterprise Edition, a commercial product. To learn more about commercial products, https://www.mysql.com/products/.

As of MySQL 5.7.24, MySQL Enterprise Edition provides data masking and de-identification capabilities:

- Transformation of existing data to mask it and remove identifying characteristics, such as changing all digits of a credit card number but the last four to 'X' characters.

- Generation of random data, such as email addresses and payment card numbers.

The way that applications use these capabilities depends on the purpose for which the data will be used and who will access it:

- Applications that use sensitive data may protect it by performing data masking and permitting use of partially masked data for client identification. Example: A call center may ask for clients to provide their last four Social Security number digits.

- Applications that require properly formatted data, but not necessarily the original data, can synthesize sample data. Example: An application developer who is testing data validators but has no access to original data may synthesize random data with the same format.

Example 1:

Medical research facilities can hold patient data that comprises a mix of personal and medical data. This may include genetic sequences (long strings), test results stored in JSON format, and other data types. Although the data may be used mostly by automated analysis software, access to genome data or test results of particular patients is still possible. In such cases, data masking should be used to render this information not personally identifiable.

Example 2:

A credit card processor company provides a set of services using sensitive data, such as:

- Processing a large number of financial transactions per second.

- Storing a large amount of transaction-related data.

- Protecting transaction-related data with strict requirements for personal data.

- Handling client complaints about transactions using reversible or partially masked data.
A typical transaction may include many types of sensitive information, including:

- Credit card number.
- Transaction type and amount.
- Merchant type.
- Transaction cryptogram (to confirm transaction legitimacy).
- Geolocation of GPS-equipped terminal (for fraud detection).

Those types of information may then be joined within a bank or other card-issuing financial institution with client personal data, such as:

- Full client name (either person or company).
- Address.
- Date of birth.
- Social Security number.
- Email address.
- Phone number.

Various employee roles within both the card processing company and the financial institution require access to that data. Some of these roles may require access only to masked data. Other roles may require access to the original data on a case-to-case basis, which is recorded in audit logs.

Masking and de-identification are core to regulatory compliance, so MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification can help application developers satisfy privacy requirements:

- PCI – DSS: Payment Card Data.
- HIPAA: Privacy of Health Data, Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act (HITECH Act).
- Data Protection Act (UK): Protection of Personal Data.
- FERPA – Student Data, NASD, CA SB1386 and AB 1950, State Data Protection Laws, Basel II.

The following sections describe the components of MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, discuss how to install and use it, and provide reference information for its components.

### 6.7.1 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification Components

MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification is based on a plugin library that implements these components:

- A server-side plugin named `data_masking`.
- A set of user-defined functions (UDFs) provides an SQL-level API for performing masking and de-identification operations. Some of these functions require the `SUPER` privilege.

### 6.7.2 Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification
This section describes how to install or uninstall MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, which is implemented as a plugin library file containing a plugin and user-defined functions (UDFs). For general information about installing or uninstalling plugins and UDFs, see Installing and Uninstalling Plugins, and Installing and Uninstalling User-Defined Functions.

To be usable by the server, the plugin library file must be located in the MySQL plugin directory (the directory named by the `plugin_dir` system variable). If necessary, configure the plugin directory location by setting the value of `plugin_dir` at server startup.

The plugin library file base name is `data_masking`. The file name suffix differs per platform (for example, `.so` for Unix and Unix-like systems, `.dll` for Windows).

To install the MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification plugin and UDFs, use the `INSTALL PLUGIN` and `CREATE FUNCTION` statements (adjust the `.so` suffix for your platform as necessary):

```
INSTALL PLUGIN data_masking SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_blacklist RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_dictionary RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_dictionary_drop RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_dictionary_load RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_range RETURNS INTEGER
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_email RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_pan RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_ssn RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION gen_rnd_us_phone RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_inner RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_outer RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_pan RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_pan_relaxed RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
CREATE FUNCTION mask_ssn RETURNS STRING
  SONAME 'data_masking.so';
```

If the plugin and UDFs are used on a master replication server, install them on all slave servers as well to avoid replication issues.

Once installed as just described, the plugin and UDFs remain installed until uninstalled. To remove them, use the `UNINSTALL PLUGIN` and `DROP FUNCTION` statements:

```
UNINSTALL PLUGIN data_masking;
DROP FUNCTION gen_blacklist;
DROP FUNCTION gen_dictionary;
DROP FUNCTION gen_dictionary_drop;
DROP FUNCTION gen_dictionary_load;
DROP FUNCTION gen_range;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_email;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_pan;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_ssn;
DROP FUNCTION gen_rnd_us_phone;
DROP FUNCTION mask_inner;
DROP FUNCTION mask_outer;
DROP FUNCTION mask_pan;
```
DROP FUNCTION mask_pan_relaxed;
DROP FUNCTION mask_ssn;

6.7.3 Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

Before using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification, install it according to the instructions provided at Section 6.7.2, “Installing or Uninstalling MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification”.

To use MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification in applications, invoke the functions that are appropriate for the operations you wish to perform. For detailed function descriptions, see Section 6.7.4, “MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification User-Defined Function Reference”. This section demonstrates how to use the functions to carry out some representative tasks. It first presents an overview of the available functions, followed by some examples of how the functions might be used in real-world context:

- Masking Data to Remove Identifying Characteristics
- Generating Random Data with Specific Characteristics
- Generating Random Data Using Dictionaries
- Using Masked Data for Customer Identification
- Creating Views that Display Masked Data

Masking Data to Remove Identifying Characteristics

MySQL provides general-purpose masking functions that mask arbitrary strings, and special-purpose masking functions that mask specific types of values.

General-Purpose Masking Functions

`mask_inner()` and `mask_outer()` are general-purpose functions that mask parts of arbitrary strings based on position within the string:

- `mask_inner()` masks the interior of its string argument, leaving the ends unmasked. Other arguments specify the sizes of the unmasked ends.

  ```sql
  mysql> SELECT mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1);
  +--------------------------------------+
  | mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1) |
  +--------------------------------------+
  | This XXXXXXXXg                      |
  +--------------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT mask_inner('This is a string', 1, 5);
  +--------------------------------------+
  | mask_inner('This is a string', 1, 5) |
  +--------------------------------------+
  | TXXXXXXXXXtring                     |
  +--------------------------------------+
  
  • `mask_outer()` does the reverse, masking the ends of its string argument, leaving the interior unmasked. Other arguments specify the sizes of the masked ends.

  ```sql
  mysql> SELECT mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1);
  +--------------------------------------+
  | mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1) |
  +--------------------------------------+
  | XXXXXis a strinX                     |
  +--------------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT mask_outer('This is a string', 1, 5);
  +--------------------------------------+
  ```
Using MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification

| mask_outer('This is a string', 1, 5) |
+--------------------------------------+
| Xhis is a sXXXXX                     |
+--------------------------------------+

By default, mask_inner() and mask_outer() use 'X' as the masking character, but permit an optional masking-character argument:

mysql> SELECT mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1, '*');
+-------------------------------------------+
| mask_inner('This is a string', 5, 1, '*') |
+-------------------------------------------+
| This **********g                          |
+-------------------------------------------+

mysql> SELECT mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1, '#');
+-------------------------------------------+
| mask_outer('This is a string', 5, 1, '#') |
+-------------------------------------------+
| #####is a strin#                          |
+-------------------------------------------+

Special-Purpose Masking Functions

Other masking functions expect a string argument representing a specific type of value and mask it to remove identifying characteristics.

Note

The examples here supply function arguments using the random value generation functions that return the appropriate type of value. For more information about generation functions, see Generating Random Data with Specific Characteristics.

Payment card Primary Account Number masking. 

Masking functions provide strict and relaxed masking of Primary Account Numbers.

• mask_pan() masks all but the last four digits of the number:

mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan());
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+-------------------------+
| XXXXXXXXXXXX2461        |
+-------------------------+

• mask_pan_relaxed() is similar but does not mask the first six digits that indicate the payment card issuer unmasked:

mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan());
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+---------------------------------+
| 770630XXXXXX0807                |
+---------------------------------+

U.S. Social Security number masking. 

mask_ssn() masks all but the last four digits of the number:

mysql> SELECT mask_ssn(gen_rnd_ssn());
+-------------------------+
| mask_ssn(gen_rnd_ssn())   |
+-------------------------+
| XXX-XX-1723             |
Generating Random Data with Specific Characteristics

Several functions generate random values. These values can be used for testing, simulation, and so forth.

`gen_range()` returns a random integer selected from a given range:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_range(1, 10);
+--------------------------+
| gen_range(1, 10)         |
+--------------------------+
|                         |
|                         |
+--------------------------+
```

`gen_rnd_email()` returns a random email address in the `example.com` domain:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_email();
+---------------------------------------------+
| gen_rnd_email()                            |
+---------------------------------------------+
| ayxq.xmkpvvy@example.com                   |
+---------------------------------------------+
```

`gen_rnd_pan()` returns a random payment card Primary Account Number:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_pan();
(The `gen_rnd_pan()` function result is not shown because its return values should be used only for testing purposes, and not for publication. It cannot be guaranteed the number is not assigned to a legitimate payment account.)
```

`gen_rnd_ssn()` returns a random U.S. Social Security number with the first and second parts each chosen from a range not used for legitimate numbers:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_ssn();
+-----------------------------+
| gen_rnd_ssn()               |
+-----------------------------+
| 912-45-1615                 |
+-----------------------------+
```

`gen_rnd_us_phone()` returns a random U.S. phone number in the 555 area code not used for legitimate numbers:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_us_phone();
+-----------------------------+
| gen_rnd_us_phone()          |
+-----------------------------+
| 1-555-747-5627              |
+-----------------------------+
```

Generating Random Data Using Dictionaries

MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification enables dictionaries to be used as sources of random values. To use a dictionary, it must first be loaded from a file and given a name. Each loaded dictionary becomes part of the dictionary registry. Items then can be selected from registered dictionaries and used as random values or as replacements for other values.

A valid dictionary file has these characteristics:
• The file contents are plain text, one term per line.
• Empty lines are ignored.
• The file must contain at least one term.

Suppose that a file named `de_cities.txt` contains these city names in Germany:

Berlin
Munich
Bremen

Also suppose that a file named `us_cities.txt` contains these city names in the United States:

Chicago
Houston
Phoenix
El Paso
Detroit

Assume that the `secure_file_priv` system variable is set to `/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files`. In that case, copy the dictionary files to that directory so that the MySQL server can access them. Then use `gen_dictionary_load()` to load the dictionaries into the dictionary registry and assign them names:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/de_cities.txt', 'DE_Cities');
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/de_cities.txt', 'DE_Cities') |
| Dictionary load success                                                        |
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+

mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/us_cities.txt', 'US_Cities');
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/us_cities.txt', 'US_Cities') |
| Dictionary load success                                                        |
+--------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
```

To select a random term from a dictionary, use `gen_dictionary()`:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary('DE_Cities');
+-----------------------------+
| gen_dictionary('DE_Cities') |
| Berlin                      |
+-----------------------------+

mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary('US_Cities');
+-----------------------------+
| gen_dictionary('US_Cities') |
| Phoenix                     |
+-----------------------------+
```

To select a random term from multiple dictionaries, randomly select one of the dictionaries, then select a term from it:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities'));
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities')) |
| Detroit                                                       |
+---------------------------------------------------------------+

mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities'));
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary(ELT(gen_range(1,2), 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities')) |
| Detroit                                                       |
+---------------------------------------------------------------+
```
The `gen_blacklist()` function enables a term from one dictionary to be replaced by a term from another dictionary, which effects masking by substitution. Its arguments are the term to replace, the dictionary in which the term appears, and the dictionary from which to choose a replacement. For example, to substitute a U.S. city for a German city, or vice versa, use `gen_blacklist()` like this:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('Munich', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities');
+---------------------------------------------------+
<p>| gen_blacklist('Munich', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities') |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Houston</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('El Paso', 'US_Cities', 'DE_Cities');
+----------------------------------------------------+
<p>| gen_blacklist('El Paso', 'US_Cities', 'DE_Cities') |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bremen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
```

If the term to replace is not in the first dictionary, `gen_blacklist()` returns it unchanged:

```sql
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('Moscow', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities');
+---------------------------------------------------+
<p>| gen_blacklist('Moscow', 'DE_Cities', 'US_Cities') |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Moscow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
```

**Using Masked Data for Customer Identification**

At customer-service call centers, one common identity verification technique is to ask customers to provide their last four Social Security number (SSN) digits. For example, a customer might say her name is Joanna Bond and that her last four SSN digits are 0007.

Suppose that a `customer` table containing customer records has these columns:

- `id`: Customer ID number.
- `first_name`: Customer first name.
- `last_name`: Customer last name.
- `ssn`: Customer Social Security number.

The application used by customer-service representatives to check the customer SSN might execute a query like this:

```sql
mysql> SELECT id, ssn
mysql> FROM customer
mysql> WHERE first_name = 'Joanna' AND last_name = 'Bond';
+-----+-------------+
| id  | ssn         |
+-----+-------------+
| 786 | 906-39-0007 |
+-----+-------------+
```

However, that exposes the SSN to the customer-service representative, who has no need to see anything but the last four digits. Instead, the application can use this query to display only the masked SSN:
Now the representative sees only what is necessary, and customer privacy is preserved.

Why was the `CONVERT()` function used for the argument to `mask_ssn()`? Because `mask_ssn()` requires an argument of length 11, and because UDFs treat string arguments as binary strings, with one byte per character. Thus, even though `ssn` is defined as `VARCHAR(11)`, if the `ssn` column has a multibyte character set, it appears to be longer than 11 bytes when passed to a UDF, and an error occurs. Converting the value to a binary string ensures that the UDF sees an argument of length 11.

A similar technique may be needed for other data masking functions when string arguments do not have a single-byte character set.

### Creating Views that Display Masked Data

If masked data from a table is used for multiple queries, it may be convenient to define a view that produces masked data. That way, applications can select from the view without performing masking in individual queries.

For example, a masking view on the `customer` table from the previous section can be defined like this:

```sql
CREATE VIEW masked_customer AS
SELECT id, first_name, last_name, mask_ssn(CONVERT(ssn USING binary)) AS ssn
FROM customer;
```

Then the query to look up a customer becomes simpler but still returns masked data:

```sql
mysql> SELECT id, ssn
FROM masked_customer
WHERE first_name = 'Joanna' AND last_name = 'Bond';
+-----+-------------+
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>id</th>
<th>ssn</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>786</td>
<td>XXX-XX-0007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
+-----+-------------+
```

### 6.7.4 MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification User-Defined Function Reference

The MySQL Enterprise Data Masking and De-Identification plugin library includes several user-defined functions (UDFs), which may be grouped into these categories:

- **Data Masking Functions**
- **Random Data Generation Functions**
- **Random Data Dictionary-Based Functions**

These UDFs treat string arguments as binary strings, which means they are implicitly case sensitive. In addition, string UDF return values are binary strings. If a string return value should be in a different character set, convert it. The following example shows how to convert the result of `gen_rnd_email()` to the `utf8mb4` character set:

```sql
SET @email = CONVERT(gen_rnd_email() USING utf8mb4);
```
It may also be necessary to convert string arguments, as illustrated in Using Masked Data for Customer Identification.

Data Masking Functions

Each function in this section performs a masking operation on its string argument and returns the masked result.

- **mask_inner**(str, margin1, margin2 [, mask_char])

  Masks the interior part of a string, leaving the ends untouched, and returns the result. An optional masking character can be specified.

  Arguments:
  - **str**: The string to mask.
  - **margin1**: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the left end of the string to remain unmasked. If the value is 0, no left end characters remain unmasked.
  - **margin2**: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the right end of the string to remain unmasked. If the value is 0, no right end characters remain unmasked.
  - **mask_char**: (Optional) The single character to use for masking. The default is 'X' if mask_char is not given.

  Because UDF string arguments are treated as binary strings, the masking character must be a single-byte character. Attempts to use a multibyte character produce an error.

  Return value:
  - The masked string, or **NULL** if either margin is negative.
  - If the sum of the margin values is larger than the argument length, no masking occurs and the argument is returned unchanged.

  Example:

  ```
  mysql> SELECT mask_inner('abcdef', 1, 2), mask_inner('abcdef',0, 5);
  +----------------------------+---------------------------+
  | mask_inner('abcdef', 1, 2) | mask_inner('abcdef',0, 5) |
  +----------------------------+---------------------------+
  | aXXXef                     | Xbcdef                    |
  +----------------------------+---------------------------+
  mysql>
  ```

- **mask_outer**(str, margin1, margin2 [, mask_char])

  Masks the left and right ends of a string, leaving the interior unmasked, and returns the result. An optional masking character can be specified.

  Arguments:
  - **str**: The string to mask.
  - **margin1**: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the left end of the string to mask. If the value is 0, no left end characters are masked.
• **margin2**: A nonnegative integer that specifies the number of characters on the right end of the string to mask. If the value is 0, no right end characters are masked.

• **mask_char**: (Optional) The single character to use for masking. The default is 'X' if *mask_char* is not given.

Because UDF string arguments are treated as binary strings, the masking character must be a single-byte character. Attempts to use a multibyte character produce an error.

Return value:

The masked string, or **NULL** if either margin is negative.

If the sum of the margin values is larger than the argument length, the entire argument is masked.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT mask_outer('abcdef', 1, 2), mask_outer('abcdef', 0, 5);
+----------------------------+---------------------------+
| mask_outer('abcdef', 1, 2) | mask_outer('abcdef', 0, 5) |
+----------------------------+---------------------------+
| XbcdXX                     | aXXXXX                    |
+----------------------------+---------------------------+
```

```
mysql> SELECT mask_outer('abcdef', 1, 2, '*'), mask_outer('abcdef', 0, 5, '#');
+---------------------------------+--------------------------------+
| mask_outer('abcdef', 1, 2, '*') | mask_outer('abcdef', 0, 5, '#') |
+---------------------------------+--------------------------------+
| *bcd**                          | a#####                         |
+---------------------------------+--------------------------------+
```

• **mask_pan(str)**

 Masks a payment card Primary Account Number and returns the number with all but the last four digits replaced by 'X' characters.

Arguments:

• **str**: The string to mask. The string must be a suitable length for the Primary Account Number, but is not otherwise checked.

Return value:

The masked payment number as a string. If the argument is shorter than required, it is returned unchanged.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan());
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+-------------------------+
| XXXXXXXXXXXX9102        |
+-------------------------+
```

```
mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19));
+---------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
+---------------------------+
| XXXXXXXXXXXXX8268       |
+---------------------------+
```

```
mysql> SELECT mask_pan('a*Z');
+-----------------+
| mask_pan('a*Z') |
+-----------------+
| a*Z             |
+-----------------+
```
• **mask_pan_relaxed(str)**

Masks a payment card Primary Account Number and returns the number with all but the first six and last four digits replaced by 'X' characters. The first six digits indicate the payment card issuer.

Arguments:

• **str**: The string to mask. The string must be a suitable length for the Primary Account Number, but is not otherwise checked.

Return value:

The masked payment number as a string. If the argument is shorter than required, it is returned unchanged.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan());
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+---------------------------------+
| 551279XXXXXXXX3108              |
+---------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19));
+-----------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
+-----------------------------------+
| 462634XXXXXXXXX6739              |
+-----------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed('a*Z');
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed('a*Z')  |
+-------------------------+
| a*Z                     |
+-------------------------+
```

• **mask_ssn(str)**

Masks a U.S. Social Security number and returns the number with all but the last four digits replaced by 'X' characters.

Arguments:

• **str**: The string to mask. The string must be 11 characters long, but is not otherwise checked.

Return value:

The masked Social Security number as a string, or **NULL** if the argument is not the correct length.

Example:

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_ssn('909-63-6922'), mask_ssn('abcdefghijk');
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
| mask_ssn('909-63-6922') | mask_ssn('abcdefghijk') |
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
| XXX-XX-6922             | XXX-XX-hijk             |
+-------------------------+-------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_ssn('909');
+-----------------+
| mask_ssn('909') |
+-----------------+
| NULL            |
+-----------------+
```
Random Data Generation Functions

The functions in this section generate random values for different types of data. When possible, generated values have characteristics reserved for demonstration or test values, to avoid having them mistaken for legitimate data. For example, `gen_rnd_us_phone()` returns a U.S. phone number that uses the 555 area code, which is not assigned to phone numbers in actual use. Individual function descriptions describe any exceptions to this principle.

- **gen_range(lower, upper)**

  Generates a random number chosen from a specified range.

  **Arguments:**
  - *lower:* An integer that specifies the lower boundary of the range.
  - *upper:* An integer that specifies the upper boundary of the range, which must not be less than the lower boundary.

  **Return value:**
  A random integer in the range from *lower* to *upper*, inclusive, or NULL if the *upper* argument is less than *lower*.

  **Example:**

  ```sql
  mysql> SELECT gen_range(100, 200), gen_range(-1000, -800);
  +---------------------+------------------------+
  | gen_range(100, 200) | gen_range(-1000, -800) |
  |          177        |          -917          |
  +---------------------+------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT gen_range(1, 0);
  +-----------------+
  | gen_range(1, 0) |
  |    NULL        |
  +-----------------+
  ```

- **gen_rnd_email()**

  Generates a random email address in the example.com domain.

  **Arguments:**
  None.

  **Return value:**
  A random email address as a string.

  **Example:**

  ```sql
  mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_email();
  +---------------------------+
  | gen_rnd_email()           |
  | ijocv.mwvhuf@example.com  |
  +---------------------------+
  ```

- **gen_rnd_pan([size])**
Generates a random payment card Primary Account Number. The number passes the Luhn check (an algorithm that performs a checksum verification against a check digit).

**Warning**

Values returned from `gen_rnd_pan()` should be used only for test purposes, and are not suitable for publication. There is no way to guarantee that a given return value is not assigned to a legitimate payment account. Should it be necessary to publish a `gen_rnd_pan()` result, consider masking it with `mask_pan()` or `mask_pan_relaxed()`.

**Arguments:**

- **size**: (Optional) An integer that specifies the size of the result. The default is 16 if `size` is not given. If given, `size` must be an integer in the range from 12 to 19.

**Return value:**

A random payment number as a string, or `NULL` if a `size` argument outside the permitted range is given.

**Example:**

```sql
mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan());
+-------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+-------------------------+
| XXXXXXXXXXXX5805        |
+-------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19));
+---------------------------+
| mask_pan(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
+---------------------------+
| XXXXXXXXXXXXXXX5067       |
+---------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan());
+---------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan()) |
+---------------------------------+
| 398403XXXXXX9547                |
+---------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19));
+-----------------------------------+
| mask_pan_relaxed(gen_rnd_pan(19)) |
+-----------------------------------+
| 578416XXXXXXXX6509               |
+-----------------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_pan(11), gen_rnd_pan(20);
+-----------------+-----------------+
| gen_rnd_pan(11) | gen_rnd_pan(20) |
+-----------------+-----------------+
| NULL            | NULL            |
+-----------------+-----------------+
```

- **gen_rnd_ssn()**

Generates a random U.S. Social Security number in `AAA-BB-CCCC` format. The `AAA` part is greater than 900 and the `BB` part is less than 70, which are characteristics not used for legitimate Social Security numbers.

**Arguments:**

None.
Return value:

A random Social Security number as a string.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_ssn();
+---------------+
| gen_rnd_ssn() |
+---------------+
| 951-26-0058   |
+---------------+
```

• **gen_rnd_us_phone()**

Generates a random U.S. phone number in `1-555-AAA-BBBB` format. The 555 area code is not used for legitimate phone numbers.

Arguments:

None.

Return value:

A random U.S. phone number as a string.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_rnd_us_phone();
+--------------------+
| gen_rnd_us_phone() |
+--------------------+
| 1-555-682-5423     |
+--------------------+
```

**Random Data Dictionary-Based Functions**

The functions in this section manipulate dictionaries of terms and perform generation and masking operations based on them. Some of these functions require the `SUPER` privilege.

When a dictionary is loaded, it becomes part of the dictionary registry and is assigned a name to be used by other dictionary functions. Dictionaries are loaded from plain text files containing one term per line. Empty lines are ignored. To be valid, a dictionary file must contain at least one nonempty line.

• **gen_blacklist(str, dictionary_name, replacement_dictionary_name)**

Replaces a term present in one dictionary with a term from a second dictionary and returns the replacement term. This masks the original term by substitution.

Arguments:

• **str**: A string that indicates the term to replace.

• **dictionary_name**: A string that names the dictionary containing the term to replace.

• **replacement_dictionary_name**: A string that names the dictionary from which to choose the replacement term.

Return value:
A string randomly chosen from \textit{replacement\_dictionary\_name} as a replacement for \textit{str}, or \textit{str} if it does not appear in \textit{dictionary\_name}, or \texttt{NULL} if either dictionary name is not in the dictionary registry.

If the term to replace appears in both dictionaries, it is possible for the return value to be the same term.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen_blacklist('Berlin', 'DE\_Cities', 'US\_Cities');
+---------------------------------------------------+
| gen\_blacklist('Berlin', 'DE\_Cities', 'US\_Cities') |
| Phoenix                                           |
+---------------------------------------------------+
```

- \textbf{\texttt{gen\_dictionary(dictionary\_name)}}

Returns a random term from a dictionary.

Arguments:

- \textit{dictionary\_name}: A string that names the dictionary from which to choose the term.

Return value:

A random term from the dictionary as a string, or \texttt{NULL} if the dictionary name is not in the dictionary registry.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen\_dictionary('mydict');
+--------------------------+
| gen\_dictionary('mydict') |
| My term                  |
+--------------------------+
mysql> SELECT gen\_dictionary('no\_such\_dict');
+--------------------------------+
| gen\_dictionary('no\_such\_dict') |
| NULL                           |
+--------------------------------+
```

- \textbf{\texttt{gen\_dictionary\_drop(dictionary\_name)}}

Removes a dictionary from the dictionary registry.

This function requires the \texttt{SUPER} privilege.

Arguments:

- \textit{dictionary\_name}: A string that names the dictionary to remove from the dictionary registry.

Return value:

A string that indicates whether the drop operation succeeded. \texttt{Dictionary removed} indicates success. \texttt{Dictionary removal error} indicates failure.

Example:

```
mysql> SELECT gen\_dictionary\_drop('mydict');
```
**gen_dictionary_drop**('mydict')

Dictionary removed

mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_drop('no-such-dict');
+--------------------------------------------------+
| gen_dictionary_drop('no-such-dict')               |
| Dictionary removal error                         |
+--------------------------------------------------+

- **gen_dictionary_load**(dictionary_path, dictionary_name)

  Loads a file into the dictionary registry and assigns the dictionary a name to be used with other functions that require a dictionary name argument.

  This function requires the **SUPER** privilege.

  **Important**

  Dictionaries are not persistent. Any dictionary used by applications must be loaded for each server startup.

  Once loaded into the registry, a dictionary is used as is, even if the underlying dictionary file changes. To reload a dictionary, first drop it with **gen_dictionary_drop()**, then load it again with **gen_dictionary_load()**.

  **Arguments:**

  - **dictionary_path**: A string that specifies the path name of the dictionary file.
  - **dictionary_name**: A string that provides a name for the dictionary.

  **Return value:**

  A string that indicates whether the load operation succeeded. **Dictionary load success** indicates success. **Dictionary load error** indicates failure. Dictionary load failure can occur for several reasons, including:

  - A dictionary with the given name is already loaded.
  - The dictionary file is not found.
  - The dictionary file contains no terms.
  - The **secure_file_priv** system variable is set and the dictionary file is not located in the directory named by the variable.

  **Example:**

  ```
  mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/mydict','mydict');
  +--------------------------------------------------+
  | gen_dictionary_load('/usr/local/mysql/mysql-files/mydict','mydict') |
  | Dictionary load success                              |
  +--------------------------------------------------+
  mysql> SELECT gen_dictionary_load('/dev/null','null');
  +--------------------------------------------------+
  | gen_dictionary_load('/dev/null','null')             |
  | Dictionary load error                               |
  +--------------------------------------------------+
  ```
Appendix A MySQL 5.7 FAQ: Security

Questions

• **A.1:** Where can I find documentation that addresses security issues for MySQL?
• **A.2:** What is the default authentication plugin in MySQL 5.7?
• **A.3:** Does MySQL 5.7 have native support for SSL?
• **A.4:** Is SSL support built into MySQL binaries, or must I recompile the binary myself to enable it?
• **A.5:** Does MySQL 5.7 have built-in authentication against LDAP directories?
• **A.6:** Does MySQL 5.7 include support for Roles Based Access Control (RBAC)?

Questions and Answers

A.1: Where can I find documentation that addresses security issues for MySQL?

The best place to start is Chapter 1, *Security*.

Other portions of the MySQL Documentation which you may find useful with regard to specific security concerns include the following:

• Section 2.1, “Security Guidelines”.
• Section 2.3, “Making MySQL Secure Against Attackers”.
• How to Reset the Root Password.
• Section 2.5, “How to Run MySQL as a Normal User”.
• UDF Security Precautions.
• Section 2.4, “Security-Related mysqld Options and Variables”.
• Section 2.6, “Security Issues with LOAD DATA LOCAL”.
• Chapter 3, *Postinstallation Setup and Testing*.
• Chapter 5, *Using Encrypted Connections*.

A.2: What is the default authentication plugin in MySQL 5.7?

The default authentication plugin in MySQL 5.7 is `mysql_native_password`. For information about this plugin, see Section 6.1.1, “Native Pluggable Authentication”. For general information about pluggable authentication and other available authentication plugins, see Section 4.13, “Pluggable Authentication”, and Section 6.1, “Authentication Plugins”.

A.3: Does MySQL 5.7 have native support for SSL?

Most 5.7 binaries have support for SSL connections between the client and server. See Chapter 5, *Using Encrypted Connections*.

You can also tunnel a connection using SSH, if (for example) the client application does not support SSL connections. For an example, see Section 5.5, “Connecting to MySQL Remotely from Windows with SSH”.

A.4: Is SSL support built into MySQL binaries, or must I recompile the binary myself to enable it?
Most 5.7 binaries have SSL enabled for client/server connections that are secured, authenticated, or both. See Chapter 5, Using Encrypted Connections.

**A.5: Does MySQL 5.7 have built-in authentication against LDAP directories?**

The Enterprise edition includes a PAM Authentication Plugin that supports authentication against an LDAP directory.

**A.6: Does MySQL 5.7 include support for Roles Based Access Control (RBAC)?**

Not at this time.